

THE
Military Medley,

CONTAINING

The most necessary Rules and Directions

FOR ATTAINING

A Competent Knowledge of the Art:

To which is added an

EXPLICATION

OF

MILITARY TERMS,

ALPHABETICALLY DIGESTED.

By THOMAS SIMES, Esq;

Captain of the Queen's Royal Regiment of Foot.

D U B L I N:

Printed by S. POWELL in *Dame-Street*,
opposite to *Fownes's Street*.

M,DCC,LXVII.

THE
Military Medley

CONTAINING

The most necessary Rules and Directions

FOR

A Competent Knowledge of the Art:

To which is added an

EXPLICATION

OF

MILITARY TERMS.

ABRIDGED & FULLY DIGESTED.

By THOMAS SIMES, Esq.

Captain of the Queen's Royal Regiment of Foot.

IN U. B. A. W.

Printed by S. P. in 1794.

MDCCLXXIV



TO
EDWARD HARVEY, Esq;
MEMBER OF PARLIAMENT,
ADJUTANT - GENERAL OF ENGLAND,
COLONEL of the Third Regiment of
Horse or Carabineers,
AND
MAJOR-GENERAL of His MAJESTY's
Service.

S I R,

THIS Book, which I have compiled, has been the Employment of my leisure Hours, since the Corps debarked on this Island; if it hath any Merit, it must not be attributed to any little Performances of mine, but to the

several Military Treatises from which the subsequent Sheets have been chiefly collected.

If, therefore, this Undertaking should happily meet your favourable Approbation, or, by so excellent a Judge as you, Sir, be deemed any way instructive to the young Gentlemen of the Army, it will afford the highest Satisfaction to,

S I R,

Your most obedient,

And very humble Servant,

ISLE OF MAN,

Jan. 3, 1766.

THOMAS SIMES.

TO THE
OFFICERS
OF THE
ARMY.

GENTLEMEN,

AFTER the many Military Books, which have been published, and well received, I cannot but be sensible, that an Attempt to encrease their Number must be condemned, should it not be executed with Judgment and Accuracy : I have therefore the strongest Reliance on the Candour of my Brother Officers, who, I flatter myself, will generously excuse whatever Defects may appear in this Work, especially when they consider, that I do not address them as an AUTHOR, ambitious of literary Fame, but as a SOLDIER, only solicitous to gain their Favour and kind Protection, to a Publication solely calculated for the Benefit of a most humane and impor-

tant Charity, established by the **HIBERNIAN SOCIETY**, for the maintaining, educating, and apprenticing, the Orphans and Children of Soldiers only, an Account of which noble Institution, as published by Order of the Governors and Guardians of said Charity, I shall here annex for the Satisfaction of the Reader.

The **MILITARY MEDLEY**, composed with such a Variety of Plans, Orders, Forms, Regulations, &c. &c. cannot pretend to absolute Perfection : If it prove acceptable to the Gentlemen of the Army, I shall deem myself happy, and amply rewarded.

DUBLIN

DUBLIN CASTLE,

MAY 27, 1765.

At a Meeting this Day of the Governors and Guardians of the Hibernian Society, for maintaining, educating and apprenticing, the Orphans and Children of Soldiers only, An Account of this Institution having been ordered to be prepared by *William Chaigneau*, Esq; Treasurer, and laid before the Governors, the same was this Day read, and is as follows.

A Short Account of the Hibernian Society for the Use of the Orphans and Children of Soldiers ONLY.

THE relieving the Distressed is the peculiar Privilege of the Opulent of noble Minds. To point out real and proper Objects for their Bounty, must appear as the highest Mark of our Respect to them, and of our just Esteem for their *Virtues* and *Humanity*.—In this Light, the Governors have the Honour of laying before their Fellow-subjects a short Account of an Institution calculated to *preserve* numberless Children of His Majesty's *brave* and *faithful* *Soldiers*.

The wretched Condition that the Children of Soldiers were, commonly, reduced to, touched the compassionate Hearts of some Gentlemen. On a reason-

nable Calculation, they were persuaded that not fewer than *fifteen hundred* of them were in the utmost Indigence, and that one Half of the Number were unhappy miserable *Orphans*. — They had but too great Reason to believe, that many innocent Children, from the Poverty and Distress of their Parents, *perished* in their Infancy, or were, otherwise, totally lost to the Community, especially on the Embarkation of Regiments to *America*; and that the Survivors were, too frequently, uneducated and uninformed in the common Principles of *Religion* or *Morality*, and suffered to grow up in Ignorance and Vice, to the Ruin of themselves, and to the manifest Injury of the Public. — They thought, that the Children of those who *ventured*, or had *lost* their Lives in Defence of their Country, merited every Care and Indulgence that good Subjects could give, and that such an Attention to their Children, could not fail of raising the Spirit of the Soldiery, and of invigorating all their Operations.

Such Thoughts gave rise to this most noble Charity, and private Benefactions enabled them to maintain and educate ten Boys; but when the Scheme was more known, it caught the Attention of the Public, and, by their Bounty, ten Boys more were taken in.

Other Gentlemen soon requested to have a Part in this honourable Work, and in *March* 1765, an annual Subscription took Place amongst themselves, whose Example was instantly followed by many Noblemen, general Officers and good Citizens, so as to be able to provide for twenty more.

It is on just Grounds that the Governors hope for Public Favour and Protection of a *Charity*, which, though in Reason the most deserving our Notice, is almost the *only* one that has, hitherto, escaped our Attention. The Governors doubt not, by their great
Care

Care and Management, to merit both a *private* and *national* Encouragement, as their only Aim is a national Advantage.

The Wisdom of *Great Britain* has always had in View the countenancing and promoting every Measure that might, in Time, make *Ireland* a Protestant Kingdom. The Charter-Schools are a striking Instance of their Goodness, and are of infinite Use.— The recruiting His Majesty's Army of *Ireland* by *British* Subjects, is another Mark of their great Attention to Us, but it has been, with real Grief, observed, that even this prudent Conduct is too often productive of unhappy and unforeseen Consequences, for as Numbers of these *British* Recruits marry Popish Women, their Children are generally bred up in that Superstition. — Thus the real Design is not only perverted, but even made subservient to the Growth of Popery. — To remedy this great Evil, is one of the principal Objects of this Institution.—The Governors mean, not only to rescue unfortunate Children from Perdition, but to rear them up in a due Sense of Religion and Industry, and to give them such Trades and Occupations as may render their Hands of real Use to the Public.

Permit it to be said, that this Charity is peculiarly necessary in *Ireland*, as they have no *Poor Rates* for maintaining helpless Orphans, or the aged Indigent.

Such is the general Idea of this Plan, and the Governors hope, that it will not be thought unworthy of the tender Concern of the Father of a dutiful and loyal People.—Its Uses are so manifest, and so much the common Cause of all His Majesty's Subjects, that too minute an Enumeration of its many happy Consequences, must be unnecessary.

This Institution is, at present, like the Cloud of *Elijah*, no larger than a Man's Hand, but by the Goodness and Bounty of those whom Providence has endowed with Affluence, it may soon spread, and
 shower

shower down innumerable Blessings on the Land, by ripening helpless Infants into good Subjects, able and willing to defend their gracious King, their generous Benefactors and their Country.

It is proposed, as soon as a proper Fund will permit, to enlarge and extend this Plan as much to the Care of the Daughters as the Sons of Soldiers.—For this great and valuable Work, the Governors must apply to, and depend on, the Great and the Good, whose compassionate Hearts cannot suffer the Hands of these Innocents to be lifted up in vain. They cannot hear the Cries of Nature without a *natural* and powerful Effect. The miserable and deplorable Condition of these poor Creatures pleads eloquently to the humane Heart, and to that Monitor they must humbly submit their Cause.

Resolved, *Nemine Contradicente*,

“ That the Thanks of the Governors be given to *William Cbaigneau*, Esq; for the foregoing short State of the Nature and true Intent of this Charity, and that he be requested to print it, at their Expence, and communicate it to the Public, in the most extensive Manner.”

Signed by Order,

SAMUEL BURROWES, Secretary.

Subscriptions and Benefactions will be received, in London, by *Arnold Nesbitt*, Esq; *Bishopsgate-street*; *Bartbolomew Burton*, Esq; *Coleman's Street*; *John Puget*, Esq; Messrs. *Knox and Mercer*, *Crosby-square*; Messrs. *Allen and Marlar*, *Ironmonger-lane*; Messrs. *Drummond and Company*, *Charing-cross*; and Messrs. *Backwell and Company*, *Pall-mall*; and, in *Dublin*, by all the Bankers and Governors.

CON-

CONTENTS.

A

	Page.
A B S E N C E, Regulations for Officers' Leave of,	157
Absence, Form of Leave of, for Officers in <i>America</i> ,	211
in Time of War,	211
Advice to a young Officer, commanding a Corps,	145
with a Scheme worthy of Attention,	145
Affidavit, Form of, for receiving <i>British</i> Half-pay,	217
Agreement, Articles of,	179
Aids-de-Camp,	144
Alarms, false, of the Enemy, Manœuvres to be opposed to them,	89
Allowance of Forage in <i>Germany</i> and <i>Flanders</i> , during the War there,	214
— weekly, in <i>America</i> , of Provisions for one Person,	216
— of Straw and Fuel in <i>Ireland</i> , for each Tent,	ib.
Ambuscades,	106
Arms, Position of a Soldier under,	159
Armies, Measures for the Junction of two, from the Tactick of M. <i>Bardet de Villeneuve</i> ,	79
Army, of the Staff of it,	140
— Qualifications requisite for the Commander in Chief thereof,	68
— how to retreat, when invested by another, by M. <i>Bardet de Villeneuve</i> ,	80
Assault,	

	<i>Page.</i>
Assault, Preparations generally made for it against a considerable Out-work, or Body of a Place,	55
—— of the Covert-way, Sword in Hand,	119
Attack, how to prepare for it,	128
Attestation, Form of,	207

B.

Barrack, Order for deducting any Damage done to its Furniture,	290
—— how to defend it,	117
Battalions, Roster for detaching them,	241
Battle, common Order of, or general Disposition, ordered by the King of <i>Prussia</i> , after the Battle of <i>Molwitz</i> , and to be inviolably observed by all his Officers,	75
—— how to change the Order of, on a Plain, by the <i>Chevalier Folard</i> ,	78
Brevets,	178
Bridges of Communication,	126

C.

Camp for a Battalion of Foot, nine Companies, with two Field-pieces,	124
—— Method of going and receiving the Rounds in it,	170
Capitulations,	60
Captain, Part of his Duty,	148
Cautions and Directions to young Officers,	238
Ceremony, funeral,	202
Certificate, Copy of, which each Soldier is to produce on joining his Corps,	288
—— Form of, to receive <i>Irish</i> Half-pay,	292
—— Form of a Baggage-one,	<i>ib.</i>
Command, Points of,	179
Commissions, Lord <i>Barrington's</i> Letter about the Disposal thereof,	302
Company,	

	Page.
Company, of Foot, Return of the Casualties of,	267
———— Morning Report of,	243
Communication, Bridges of,	126
Court-Martial, Form of a regimental,	184
———— Remarks thereon,	186
Covert-way, Attack of, Sword in Hand,	119

D.

Defence of a Barrack,	117
Deserters, Form of advertising,	210
Description of Recruits entertained for a Regiment,	263
Dictionary, of Military Terms [<i>at the End of the Vol.</i>]	
Directions for Picquet and Village Guards,	164
Discharges, Form of,	208
Drum, Sounds of,	236
———— Signals of,	237
Duties, in a Garrison, Table of, to be kept by the Town-major, Town-adjutant, and the Adjutants of the Corps,	169
Duty, Part of a { Captain's,	148
{ Lieutenant's,	149

E.

Effects of Officers deceased,	202
———— of Officers non-commissioned,	204
Engineer's Rank,	177
Epitaph, on General <i>De Montcalm</i> ,	307
Escalade, to take a Place by,	121
Exercise,	219
Expences, Calculation of, which a Foot-soldier must necessarily be at for the first Year,	201
———— funeral, of a Soldier,	205

Field-

F.

	<i>Page.</i>
Field-pieces for Battalions,	127
Field-return,	279
Foot, monthly Return of a Regiment of,	247
— particular Return of a Regiment of,	249
— Facings of,	193
Forage, Allowance of, during the War in <i>Germany</i> and <i>Flanders</i> ,	214
— and Foragers,	215
Form of a Squad-roll,	269
— of an Indent,	289
— of the Certificate to receive <i>Irish</i> Half-pay,	292
— of a Petition to the Governors of the <i>Hibernian</i> School,	293
— of a Beating-order,	205
— of an Attestation,	207
— of Discharges,	208
— of advertising Deserters,	210
— to prevent any of the Out-pensioners of <i>Chelsea</i> Hospital from being taken up as Deserters or Va- grants,	211
— of Leave of Absence for Officers in <i>America</i> , in Time of War,	<i>ib.</i>
— of Furloughs,	212
— to renew a Furlough, when detained by con- trary Winds,	213
— of a Pass,	214
— of an Affidavit for receiving <i>British</i> Half-pay,	217
— of a Warrant,	180
— of a regimental Court-martial,	184
Fortnight's Return of Officers,	245

G

	<i>Page.</i>
Garrison, Table of the several Duties in it, to be kept by the Town-major, Town-adjutant, and the Adjutants of the Corps,	169
Method of going and receiving the Rounds in it,	164
Precautions a Governor or Commandant of it should use in Time of War,	49
Governor, his Command in a Town, and the Respect and Obedience due to him from the Troops of the Garrison,	132
Guard, standing Orders for one which mounts over Prisoners of War,	163

H

Half-pay, <i>Irish</i> , State of,	291
its Deductions, with Remarks,	<i>ib.</i>
Form of the Certificate to receive it,	292
<i>British</i> , State of,	218
Honours, military, due to crowned Heads,	171
due to the Captain-general of <i>Great Britain</i> , Field-marshal, General of the Empire, or of the <i>Dutch</i> ,	<i>ib.</i>
Regulations of, to be paid by his Majesty's Forces to the General Officers of the Army,	<i>ib.</i>
to be paid to the Generals by the Horse and Grenadier Guards, when mixed with other Corps,	173
to be paid to the Generals by the Footguards,	<i>ib.</i>
to be paid the Master-general of Ordnance,	175
to be paid Governors, general Officers, Colonels, Lieutenant-colonels, &c. in Garrison,	<i>ib.</i>
Horses, Number of, for Draught,	127
Indent,	

I.

	<i>Page.</i>
Indent, Form of,	289
Infantry, forming and returning the Picquets of,	161
Instructions, drawn up by the late Major-general <i>James Wolfe</i> , for the 20th Regiment of Foot, then lying at <i>Canterbury</i> , in case of the <i>French</i> landing in 1755,	33
———— general, {to the Van-guard,	103
{to the Rear-guard,	105

L.

Leave of Absence, Form of, for Officers in <i>America</i> in Time of War,	211
———— of Absence, Regulations for Officers,	157
Lieutenant, Part of his Duty,	149
Line, of turning it out,	160
List of Things necessary for a young Gentleman to be furnished with on obtaining his first Commis- sion in the Infantry, also a Scheme of his constant Expences, with Advice,	150

M.

Manœuvres, &c. with Explanations,	221
———— to be opposed to the Enemy's false Alarms,	89
———— first of the Grand, second of the Column,	91
Morning Report of a Company,	243

O.

Officers, young, apt to exceed their Orders, from a mistaken Zeal,	155
Officers,	

	<i>Page.</i>
Officers, what they are to pay for Tent, to prevent Disputes,	182
Opinion, of the Attorney-general, concerning Soldiers making away with their Cloaths or Necessaries,	182
Order for deducting any Damage done to the Furniture of a Barrack,	290
Orders very proper to be given to the Troops on Board of Transports in Time of War,	40
— and Regulations by the late Major General <i>James Wolfe</i> , in July 1759,	42
— of Regulations and Signals to prevent the landing of, or being surpris'd by, the Enemy, given at <i>Palais in Belleisle</i> , 1762,	45
— to empower the commanding Officers of Corps to post subaltern Officers in such Manner as they shall think may best conduce to the Good of his Majesty's Service,	158

P.

Parties,	99
Particulars of Cloathing, Arms, Accoutrements, Necessaries, &c.	197
Pass, Form of,	214
Pay-note, a weekly one,	277
Pensions, for Widows,	218
Places, of investing them,	53
Plan I. Battalion ready for Exercise.	
— II. Another View.	
— III. Battalion in Firing-order.	
— IV. Battalion, six deep, in a semicircular Order, to oppose Cavalry, which may be useful at the debarking of Troops, or for Necessity, making Use either of Wood, Water, &c. to secure the Rear.	
— V. Battalion formed in Column by Companies from the Center, on the March with Cannon and Grenadiers.	

	<i>Page.</i>
Plan VI. <i>Wolfe's</i> Order of Encampment of the Army in one Line; Order of Battle in two Lines.	
—VII. Squares.	
—VIII. To change Front.	
Position of a Soldier under Arms,	159
Precautions a Governor or Commandant of a Garri- son should use in Time of War,	49
— to be taken when obliged to establish Quarters in a woody or maintainous Country,	82
— for securing the Cavalry's Quarters in a plain covered Country,	85
Preparations generally made for an Assault on a con- siderable Outwork, or the Body of the Place,	55

Q.

Qualifications requisite for the Commander in Chief of an Army,	68
--	----

R.

Rank and Precedence between Land and Sea Officers,	177
Rations, Proportion of,	216
Regiment of Foot, monthly Return of,	247
Regulations and Orders very proper to be given by the Colonel of a Regiment of Foot, to be strictly observed by the Officers, non-commissioned Offi- cers, and private Men, as standing Orders,	1
— for Officers Leave of Absence,	157
— for the Colours, Clothing, &c. of march- ing Regiments of Foot,	187
Remarks on Lord <i>Barrington's</i> Letter,	306
— proper to be made by the reviewing Officer	234
— on General <i>De Montcalm's</i> Epitaph,	310
Return of Arms, Accoutrements, Clothing, and an Abstract of the non-effective and recruiting Ac- count,	259
	Return

	<i>Page.</i>
Return of Recruits raised for a Regiment, &c.	261
—— of the Sick of a Regiment, with an Account of the Pay of each sick Soldier in the regimental Infirmary, &c.	265
—— of the Casualties of a Company of Foot,	267
—— of Ammunition, Flints, &c. in each Company of a Regiment of Foot,	281
—— of Officers, for a Fortnight,	245
—— particular, of a Regiment of Foot,	249
—— general, of the Names, Country, Age, and Service of a Regiment, with the Dates of the several Commissions each Officer has had, &c.	251
—— general, of the Country, Size, Age, and Time of Service of the Men of a Regiment, &c.	253
—— of Officers killed, wounded, missing, and taken Prisoners,	255
—— of Troops under a Commander at the Surrender of a Place, with a List of the Ships in the Harbour taken, sunk or destroyed, and the Number of Officers, non-commissioned Officers and private Men, killed, wounded, missing or taken Prisoners,	257
Report of a Guard where the Shipping are hailed by the Centinels before they sail, &c.	283
Roll of a Company, with their Age, Size, Service, Country, &c.	271
—— of the Officers of a Regiment of Foot, as they are posted to Companies, with the Dates of their Commissions,	273
—— of Serjeants, Corporals, Pioneers, Drummers and Fifers, as they are posted to Companies,	275
Roster for detaching Battalions,	241
Rules, general, for the marching of a Regiment of Foot, or Detachment of Men, where there is a Possibility of their being attacked by the Enemy,	31

	<i>Page.</i>
Signs,	130
Signals for Regiments that line Streets,	285
Speech for recruiting,	206
Spies and Guides,	129
Squad-roll, Form of,	269
Stores,	51
Subordination,	155

V.

Valour, its true End,	294
Vigilance of each Commandant in his own Quarter,	87
Volleys, how to fire three in the Air,	286

Subscribers

Subscribers Names,

WITH

Their Respective Subscriptions.

A.

	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>
CAPT. Henry Alcock, M. P. late } of 92 Foot — — — }	1	2	9
Mr. Rob. Athenleck, Mercht. Mary's Abbey	1	2	9
Col. William Alcock, M. P.	0	11	4h
Ensign Robert Alcock, 58 Foot	0	11	4h
Major Edward Afshenhurst, Carabineers	0	11	4h
Major John Anstruther, 63 Foot	0	11	4h
Lieut. James Anstruther, 58 ditto	0	11	4h
Lieut. William Adlercron, 9 Dragoons	0	11	4h
Lieut. James Atkinson, Half-pay	0	11	4h
Lieut. John Atkinson, ditto	0	11	4h
Ensign Littleton Adams, ditto	0	11	4h
Mr. Thomas Arthur, Mercht. Isle of Man	0	11	4h

B.

Lieut. Col. Will. Burton, M. P. 12 Dragoons	2	5	6
Capt. William Burton, M. P. 13 ditto	2	5	6
Lieut. Col. James Barlow, 61 Foot	1	2	9
Lieut. Col. James Blaquiere, 13 Dragoons	1	2	9
Lieut. Col. John Burgoyne, 58 Foot	1	2	9
Samuel Bradstreet, Esq; Record. William- street, — — — }	1	2	9
Cornelius Bolton, Esq; Waterford	1	2	9
a 3			Benjamin

Subscribers Names, and their Subscriptions.

	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>
Benjamin Bunbury, Esq; Prussia-street	1	2	9
Samuel Barker, Esq; M. P. Waterford	1	2	9
Capt. James Barker, Queen's Royal Reg.	1	2	9
Capt. Francis Barker, Waterford	0	11	4h
Lt. Col. John Beckwith, 44 Foot	0	11	4h
Lt. Col. Barth. Blake, late Maj. to 29 dit.	0	11	4h
Major Thomas Baugh, 55 ditto	0	11	4h
Capt. Harrington Bauden, 58 ditto	0	11	4h
Capt. Mafon Bolton, 9 ditto	0	11	4h
Capt. James Bruce, 63 ditto	0	11	4h
Capt. James Butler, 1st Horse	0	11	4h
Capt. Humphry Bland, Half-pay	0	11	4h
Capt. Arthur Brice, ditto	0	11	4h
Capt. Samuel Brown, ditto	0	11	4h
Capt. Thomas Brown, ditto	0	11	4h
Lt. Jeffery Brown, 1st Horse	0	11	4h
Lt. James Brown, late of 9 Dragoons	0	11	4h
Capt. Lt. Paul Bushe, 9 Dragoons	0	11	4h
Robert Barry, Esq; Nassau-street	0	11	4h
Lt. Charles Baldwin, Queen's Royal Reg.	0	11	4h
Lt. James Ball, ditto	0	11	4h
Lt. Henry Bruen, 63 Foot	0	11	4h
Lt. George Burrington, 56 ditto	0	11	4h
Lt. Frederick Boes, 64 ditto	0	11	4h
Lt. Lucius Barber, Royal Artillery	0	11	4h
Ensign Edward Burton, 64 Foot	0	11	4h
Ensign Caleb Barns, 61 ditto	0	11	4h
Thomas Barns, Esq;	0	11	4h
George Ball, Esq; Commissary	0	11	4h
David Burleigh, Esq; Grafton-street	0	11	4h
Thomas Bibby, Esq; Granby-row	0	11	4h
George Broom, Esq; Dublin-castle	0	11	4h
Quarter-mast. Mat. Beard, Royal Ir. Drag.	0	11	4h
Mr. J. Gasper Battier, Stephen's Green	0	11	4h
Mr. Robt. Black, Mercht. Isle of Man	0	11	4h

Col.

Subscribers Names, and their Subscriptions.

C.

l. s. d.

Col. Robt. Cuninghame, Adjutant-general of Ireland, M. P. — —	2	5	6
Charles Lord Colloony, K. B. Deputy-quarter-master-general of Ireland	2	5	6
Dr. Michael Cox, Primate of Munster	1	2	9
Dr. Rich. Chenevix, Bp. of Waterford, &c.	1	2	9
Henry Viscount Conyngham	1	2	9
William Chaigneau, Esq; William-street	1	2	9
John Clarke, Esq; Ship street	1	2	9
Earl of Caven	0	11	4h
Richard Cox, Esq; Stephen's Green	0	11	4h
Mrs. — Cox, ditto	0	11	4h
Thomas Cobb, Esq; M. P. New Bridge	0	11	4h
Major Hugh Cane, Royal Irish Dragoons	0	11	4h
Major Charles Craven, Half-pay	0	11	4h
Capt. James Cuninghame, the Royal	0	11	4h
Hon. Capt. Otway Cuffee, ditto	0	11	4h
Capt. John Caulfield, 56 Foot	0	11	4h
Capt. Henry Conran, 16 ditto	0	11	4h
Capt. Mungo Campbell, 55 ditto	0	11	4h
Lt. Richard Campbell, Queen's Royal Reg.	0	11	4h
Capt. Lt. William Cockburn, 49 Foot	0	11	4h
Lt. Nathaniel Cooke, 8 Dragoons	0	11	4h
Cornet Joseph Cooke, Carabineers	0	11	4h
Lt. Edward Candler, 48 Foot	0	11	4h
Lt. Thomas Corry, Half-pay	0	11	4h
Corn. — Cummin, 1st Horse	0	11	4h
Corn. Rich. St. Geo. Conyears, 8 Drag.	0	11	4h
Corn. — Curtis, 12 ditto	0	11	4h
Corn. Nicholas Cowse, Half-pay	0	11	4h
Ensign Duncan Chisholme, 58 Foot	0	11	4h
Rev. Mr. William Crowe, Loughrea	0	11	4h
Nathaniel Cavenagh, Esq;	0	11	4h
Arthur Craven, Esq; Sackville-street	0	11	4h
Mr. Wm. Crebbin, Mercht. Isle of Man,	0	11	4h
Mr. Hugh Connor, Mercht. ditto	0	11	4h

Subscribers Names, and their Subscriptions.

D.

	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>
Capt. Theoph. Desbrisay, Dorset-street	3	19	7h
Jasper Desbrisay, Esq; Dawson-street	1	2	9
Lt. Col. Peter Daulhat, 51 Foot	1	2	9
Major James Dalrymple, the Royal	1	2	9
Capt. Wm. Dalrymple, Queen's Roy. Reg.	1	2	9
Joseph Deane, Esq; M. P. Terrinure	1	2	9
Lt. Gen. Michael Obrien Dilks, Master of the Royal Hospital, — — }	0	11	4h
Lt. Col. Alexander Duncan, 55 Foot	0	11	4h
Capt. Richard Dawson, Engineers	0	11	4h
Capt. Peter Daly, 55 Foot	0	11	4h
Capt. William Delaplace, 26 ditto	0	11	4h
Lt. John Dudington, the Royal	0	11	4h
Lt. Alexander Duffee, 58 Foot	0	11	4h
Lt. Alexander Daniel, 49 ditto	0	11	4h
Lt. Avarel Daniel, Queen's Royal Reg.	0	11	4h
Lt. Nicholas D'Arcy, 48 Foot	0	11	4h
Lt. Hyacinth D'Arcy, Half-pay	0	11	4h
Ensign — D'Arcy, 48 Foot	0	11	4h
Ensign Henry Downing, 55 ditto	0	11	4h
Rev. Mr. Wm. Dobbin, Fel. of Trin. Col.	0	11	4h
John Dillon, Esq; County of Westmeath	0	11	4h

E.

Lt. Col. James Edmonstone, the Royal	1	2	9
Lt. Col. William Eustace, late of 5 Foot	0	11	4h
Ensign Hardy Eustace, Queen's Roy. Reg.	0	11	4h
Capt. William Evans, late of 91 Foot	0	11	4h
Capt. Nicholas Evans, 47 ditto	0	11	4h
Capt. J. Fr. Erskine, 1st Horse	0	11	4h
Ensign Bingham Ellifon, Queen's Roy. Reg.	0	11	4h
John Everard, Esq; County of Wicklow	0	11	4h

Hon.

Subscribers Names, and their Subscriptions.

F.

	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>
Hon. Lt. Gen. John Fitz-William, M. P. } 2 Horse — — — }	2	5	6
Col. William Forster, the Royal	1	2	9
Major Henry Folliot, Royal Irish Foot	1	2	9
Rev. Mr. Nathaniel France, Youghall	1	2	9
Mr. Arthur France, Waterford	0	11	4h
Capt. Thomas Frazer, the Royal	0	11	4h
Capt. Hugh Forsyth, 49 Foot	0	11	4h
Capt. Henry Flood, Half-pay	0	11	4h
Capt. Lt. Curtis Farran, 64 Foot	0	11	4h
Capt. Lt. Arthur Fitz-Gerald, 2 Horse	0	11	4h
Capt. Lt. Maximilus Faviere, the Royal	0	11	4h
Lt. Arthur Forth, Engineers	0	11	4h
Lt. Richard Friend, Half-pay	0	11	4h
Ensign Cæsar French, the Royal	0	11	4h
Ensign — Forbes, 61 Foot	0	11	4h
Mr. George Faulkner, Parliament-street	0	11	4h

G.

Col. James Gilborne, Quarter-master- } general of Ireland, M. P. 16 Foot }	2	5	6
Wm. Gleadowe, Esq; Banker, Castle-street	2	5	6
Boulter Grierson, Esq; Parliament-street	1	2	9
Lt. Alexander Gordon, 49 Foot	1	2	9
Ensign John Gray, 49 ditto	1	2	9
Capt. Robert Gray, 55 ditto	0	11	4h
Lt. Wm. Gray, Queen's Royal Reg.	0	11	4h
Capt. John Gordon, 47 Foot	0	11	4h
Capt. Geo. Gledstanes, 58 ditto	0	11	4h
Capt. Geo. Glynn, 61 ditto	0	11	4h
Sackville Gardiner, Esq; Dominick-street	0	11	4h
Capt. James Grant, 47 Foot	0	11	4h
Lt. James Grant, 49 ditto	0	11	4h
Ensign Gregor. Grant, 58 ditto	0	11	4h
Lt. Wm. Glasfcott, Queen's Royal Reg.	0	11	4h
			Lt.

Subscribers Names, and their Subscriptions.

	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>
Lt. Arthur Gore, the Royal	0	11	4h
Lt. John Gore, 12 Dragoons	0	11	4h
Ensign John Grieve, Queen's Royal Reg.	0	11	4h

H.

Major-gen. Edward Harvey, Adjutant- general of England, M. P. Carabineers }	2	5	6
Major Otho. Hamilton, 40 Foot	1	2	9
Capt. John Hazard, 64 ditto	1	2	9
Samuel Heatley, Esq; Dublin	1	2	9
Peter John Heywood, Esq; Isle of Man	1	2	9
Wm. Handcock, Esq; M. P. Athlone	0	11	4h
Capt. John Hamilton, 61 Foot	0	11	4h
Capt. Gervas Hall, Half-pay	0	11	4h
Capt. Vernon Hawley, late of 35 Foot	0	11	4h
Lt. Lant. Hill, 55 ditto	0	11	4h
Lt. James Hepburn, 49 ditto	0	11	4h
Lt. Joseph Hollings, 61 ditto	0	11	4h
Cornet Benjamin Hunt, 2 Horse	0	11	4h
Ensign Robert Hastings, 26 Foot	0	11	4h

J.

Thomas Morris Jones, Esq; Money-glass	2	5	6
Major St. John Jefferies, M. P. 61 Foot	1	2	9
Capt. Lt. John Jackson, Queen's Roy. Reg.	1	2	9
Lt. Brabazon Jenny, Royal Irish Drag.	1	2	9
Col. James Johnston, 1 Horse	0	11	4h
Capt. Robert Johnson, 68 Foot	0	11	4h
Capt. Warren Johnson, late of 10 ditto	0	11	4h
Capt. Lt. Arthur Johnston, 8 Drag.	0	11	4h
Capt. Alexander Innes, 63 Foot	0	11	4h
Capt. Albert Jones, Half-pay	0	11	4h
Ensign Robert Jones, Queen's Royal Reg.	0	11	4h
Ensign Michael Jacob, 64 Foot	0	11	4h
Mr. Ebenezer Jacob, Surgeon, Wexford	0	11	4h

Mr.

Subscribers Names, and their Subscriptions.

	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>
Mr. Henry Ivie, jun. Waterford	0	11	4h
Mr. George Ivie, Dublin	0	11	4h

K.

Capt. Gilbert King, Royal Irish Dragoons	0	11	4h
Capt. Lt. William King, 58 Foot	0	11	4h
Capt. Andrew Kirwin, Half-pay	0	11	4h
John Knox, Esq; Capel-street	0	11	4h
Lt. John Keily, Half-pay	0	11	4h
Ensign William Kingmill, the Royal	0	11	4h
Mr. Thomas Kelly, Surgeon, Dublin	0	11	4h

L.

Hon. Lt. Col. Alexander Leslie, 64 Foot	1	2	9
Lt. Col. Henry Laws Luttrell, 1 Horse	1	2	9
Capt. Geo. Le-Hunt, 68 Foot	0	11	4h
Lt. William Le-Hunt, the Royal	0	11	4h
James Lowder, Esq; Waterford	0	11	4h
Lt. Holland Lackey, 1 Horse	0	11	4h
Cornet Alexander Lackey, 1 ditto	0	11	4h
Lt. Nicholas Loftus, 1 ditto	0	11	4h
Lt. Samuel Lawson, 9 Dragoons	0	11	4h
Lt. John Lewis, 64 Foot	0	11	4h
Lt. Henry William Le-Grand, 49 ditto	0	11	4h
Lt. Thomas Low, Half-pay	0	11	4h
Cornet Francis Litchfield, 1 Horse	0	11	4h
Ensign Robert Lyon, Half-pay	0	11	4h
Peter Long, Mercht. Waterford	0	11	4h

M.

Capt. Wm. Montgomery, M. P. Mary's Str.	3	8	3
Lt. Gen. Cha. Montague, Qu.'s R. Reg.	2	5	6
			Lt.

Subscribers Names, and their Subscriptions.

	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>
Lt. Col. Geo. Morrison, Quarter-mast. Gen. } of England, &c. Engineers	2	5	6
Hon. Capt. Robert Moore, 59 Foot	2	5	6
Hon. Ponsonby Moore, Commissioner of } the Barracks — —	1	2	9
George Moore, Esq; Isle of Man	1	2	9
Capt. Thomas Musgrave, 64 Foot	1	2	9
Capt. Samuel Malcher	1	2	9
Lt. John Murray, Half-pay	1	2	9
Rev. Mr. William Moore, Waterford	0	11	4h
Thomas Moore, Esq; Isle of Man	0	11	4h
Lt. — Moore, 56 Foot	0	11	4h
Major Richard Montgomery, 51 ditto	0	11	4h
Major Lewis Marcell, Engineers	0	11	4h
Major John Mayne, 14 Dragoons	0	11	4h
Major Richard Mercer, Dublin-castle	0	11	4h
Capt. James Mercer, 49 Foot	0	11	4h
Capt. Benjamin Mainwaring, the Royal	0	11	4h
Lt. Allan Mc. Clean, 58 Foot	0	11	4h
Cornet John Musgrave, 1 Horse	0	11	4h
Ensign Irwin Mc. Mullen, Half-pay	0	11	4h
George Marjoribanks, M. D. Waterford	0	11	4h
Mr. Wm. Marshall, Surgeon, Qu.'s R. Reg.	0	11	4h
Mr. Wm. Murphy, Castle street	0	11	4h

N.

Lt. Col. Lord Newbattle, 4 Horse	1	2	9
Capt. Mich. Nickson, Queen's Roy. Reg.	1	2	9
Lt. — Nickson, the Royal	0	11	4h
Sir Edward Newenham, Granby-row	0	11	4h
Lady Newenham, ditto	0	11	4h
Capt. Christopher Nesham, 63 Foot	0	11	4h
Capt. Nicholas Netterville, Half-pay	0	11	4h
Capt. Lt. Ant. Nugent, 13 Dragoons	0	11	4h
Lt. Oliver Nicols, the Royal	0	11	4h
Lt. Robert Norton, 61 Foot	0	11	4h
			Ensign

Subscribers Names, and their Subscriptions.

	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>
Ensign Alexander Nesbitt, 58 Foot	0	11	4h
Ensign Matthew Nixon, 61 ditto	0	11	4h
Mr. Owen Naghton, Attorn. Fownes's Str.	0	11	4h

O.

Capt. Thomas Ormsby, 9 Dragoons	1	2	9
Cornet ——— Ormsby, ditto	0	11	4h
Major William Orme, 70 Foot	0	11	4h
Capt. Thomas Osborne, 58 ditto	0	11	4h
Capt. Lt. Charles Osborne, 44 ditto	0	11	4h
Ensign William Owen, 61 ditto	0	11	4h
Manus Odonell, Esq; Newport pratt	0	11	4h
Mr. James Oats, Mercht. Isle of Man	0	11	4h

P.

Col. Pomeroy, M. P. 64 Foot	2	5	6
Lt. Col. Arthur Preston, 9 Dragoons	1	2	9
Maj. John Pennington, Queen's Royal Reg.	1	2	9
Major Henry Pringle, 56 Foot	1	2	9
Major Thomas Pope, 2 Horse	1	2	9
Capt. Henry Watfon Powell, 64 Foot	1	2	9
Mr. Samuel Powell, Printer, Dame-street	0	11	4h
Nich. Price, Esq; Lieut-governor of Kinsale } and Charles-fort — — — }	0	11	4h
Lt. James Price, 58 Foot	0	11	4h
Lt. Col. Parke Pepper, 49 ditto	0	11	4h
Capt. William Peacock, 63 ditto	0	11	4h
Capt. Christopher Parker, late of 1 Horse	0	11	4h
Lt. Isaac Phibbs, Half-pay	0	11	4h
Lt. Richard Phillips, ditto	0	11	4h
Ensign Robert Phillips, Queen's Royal Reg.	0	11	4h
Cornet Wentworth Parsons, M. P. 14 Drag.	0	11	4h
Ensign Samuel Poe, 26 Foot	0	11	4h

Lt.

Subscribers Names, and their Subscriptions.

R.

	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>
Lt. Gen. Robt. Rich, Gov. of Londonderry	1	2	9
Lt. Col. Robert Ross, 48 Foot	1	2	9
Richard Reeves, Esq; Waterford	1	2	9
Thomas Roach, Esq; Half-pay	0	11	4h
Richard Robbins, Esq; Merrion-street	0	11	4h
Capt. Thomas Rigg, 26 Foot	0	11	4h
Lt. John Roscrow, ditto	0	11	4h
Cornet John Reynell, Royal Irish Drag.	0	11	4h
Ensign Charles Richardson, 56 Foot	0	11	4h
Ensign Phil. Rochfort, Queen's Royal Reg.	0	11	4h
Ensign Richard Reed, ditto	0	11	4h
Ensign Andrew Rock, 61 Foot	0	11	4h
Mr. John Reynolds, Surgeon, 58 ditto	0	11	4h

S.

Lt. Col. Francis Smith, 10 Foot	1	2	9
Hon. Lt. Col. Henry St. John, M. P. Half-p.	1	2	9
Capt. William Smith, 64 Foot	1	2	9
Richard Symes, Esq; Ballyarthur	1	2	9
Mitchell Symes, Esq; Coolboy	0	11	4h
Rev. Dr. Symes, Hill-brook	0	11	4h
Mrs. Rosalinda Simes	0	11	4h
Lt. John Simes, late of Marines	0	11	4h
Lt Charles Simes, late of 10 Foot	0	11	4h
Major John Stratton, Royal Artillery	0	11	4h
Capt. Richard Saunders, 9 Dragoons	0	11	4h
Capt. James Spittell, the Royal	0	11	4h
Capt. Henry Shawe, Half-pay	0	11	4h
Lt. Bernard Shawe, Queen's Royal Reg.	0	11	4h
Ensign Robert Shawe, 64 Foot	0	11	4h
Capt. Joseph Siree, Town-maj. Dub. Cast.	0	11	4h
Capt. James Stewart, 61 Foot	0	11	4h
Capt. Poyntz Stewart, the Royal	0	11	4h
Lt. James Stewart, 64 Foot	0	11	4h
Lt. ——— Stewart, 61 ditto	0	11	4h
			Lt.

Subscribers Names, and their Subscriptions.

	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>
Lt. Charles Lenox Smyth, 2 Horse	0	11	4h
Lt. Oliver Singleton, the Royal	0	11	4h
Lt. Robert Sinclair, 63 Foot	0	11	4h
Mr. William Sinclair, 26 ditto	0	11	4h
Lt. Murrough Smith, Half-pay	0	11	4h
Enocke Sterne, Esq;	0	11	4h
Hon. Cornet Skeffington, Royal Irish Drag.	0	11	4h
Cornet Henry Southwell, 1 Horse	0	11	4h
Ensign Wm. Saunderson, Qu.'s Royal Reg.	0	11	4h
Ensign Palmes Spaight, the Royal	0	11	4h
Ensign H. Fortick Sheridan, 61 Foot	0	11	4h
Mr. Sam. Scott, Surgeon, Royal Irish Foot	0	11	4h
Hon. Lionel R. P. Smythe, Volunt. 58 Foot	0	11	4h
Quart. Mast. Wm. Smythe, Royal Irish Drag.	0	11	4h
James Supple, Esq; County of Kerry	0	11	4h

T.

Dr. James Trail, Bp. of Down and Connor	1	2	9
Capt. Nicholas Tench, Half-pay	1	2	9
Major Martin Tucker, 1 Horse	0	11	4h
Major Dudley Templer, 26 Foot	0	11	4h
Major Richard Temple, Half-pay	0	11	4h
Capt. Cha. Tottenham, M. P. ditto	0	11	4h
Capt. John Taggart, Dep. Mast. of Kilmain.	0	11	4h
Lt. Gilbert Toler, Royal Irish Drag.	0	11	4h
Lt. Edward Thorley, Queen's Royal Reg.	0	11	4h
Mr. Riely Towers, Parliament-street	0	11	4h
Mr. Edward Tyrrell, Essex-street	0	11	4h

V.

Lt. Amos Vereker, Royal Irish Drag.	1	2	9
Capt. John Vattrafs, 10 Foot	0	11	4h
Thomas Vandeleur, Esq; Ship-street	0	11	4h

John

Subscribers Names, and their Subscriptions.

W.

	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>
John Winter, Esq; Hanover-square, Lond.	5	13	9
John Wood, Esq; Governor and Captain } General of the Isle of Man —	2	5	6
Col. Hunt. Walch, 56 Foot	1	14	1h
Lt. Col. John Wilkins, Royal Irish Foot	1	2	9
Major Robert Waller, 9 Drag	1	2	9
Capt. Robert Webber, Henry-street	1	2	9
Lt. Col. Edward Windus, Half-pay	0	11	4h
Major Walter Wolfe, ditto	0	11	4h
Capt. John Warburton, 58 Foot	0	11	4h
Capt. Joseph Walker, 12 Dragoons	0	11	4h
Ralph Ward, Esq; Surveyor-general of the } Ordnance, Merriion-street —	0	11	4h
Lt. Nicholas Ward, Half-pay	0	11	4h
Lt. Philip Walsh, 12 Drag.	0	11	4h
Lt. James Wemys, 58 Foot	0	11	4h
Lt. James Webber, ditto	0	11	4h
Lt. William Wardlaw, Qu.'s Royal Reg.	0	11	4h
Lt. David Winstanly, 51 Foot	0	11	4h
Lt. Robert Wallis, Half-pay	0	11	4h
Lt. Robert Wills, 49 Foot	0	11	4h
Ensign Casper Wills, the Royal	0	11	4h
Ensign William Wrey, Queen's Roy. Reg.	0	11	4h
Ensign Geo. Wade, 58 Foot	0	11	4h
A. B. C.	0	11	4h

Total, 270 3 1h

✱ Paid for Paper, Printing, Plates,
Binding, &c. as by Receipts,
which will be delivered to the
Treasurer, — —

70 3 1h

Remain for the Charity,

200 0 0

A

A

MILITARY TREATISE,
ENTITLED, THE
M E D L E Y.

REGULATIONS and ORDERS,

Very proper to be given by the Colonel of a Regiment of Foot, to be strictly observed by the Officers, non-commissioned Officers, and private Men; as standing Orders.

NO Officer to appear, when with the Regiment, in any other Dress, but their full Regimentals, or Regimental Frock Suit; except when they go out a sporting.

When the Colonel is from his Regiment, the commanding Officer, is to send him a Return of the State of it, every Month.

The Lieutenant Colonel, or Officer commanding the Regiment, is to make choice of a Subaltern, who has gained the Character of a good Officer, by Attendance, Obedience, and a diligent Discharge of his Duty, that when the Adjutancy, or Quarter Mastercy may fall vacant; he may recommend him to his Colonel, as an Officer intitled to Preferment, which he shall always reward.

A Captain of a Company, to have a watchful Eye over the Behaviour and Conduct of his private Men;
B that

that when a Knot falls he may be able to recommend the deserving for it.

The Pay-Master of the Regiment, to settle the non-effective Account, with the Agent by Letter every two Months; and the Agent to transmit an Account of what Reimbursements have been made, out of the Stock Purse during that Time; and what Ballance remains in his Hands, that each Account may be compared together.

The Chaplain of the Regiment is constantly to attend, or act by Deputy, and to visit the Sick constantly in *Barracks, Quarters, and Infirmary*; and the commanding Officer of the Regiment, is to be answerable, that the Duty of Chaplain be executed with becoming Decency and Regularity.

An Infirmary Board to set the first *Monday* in every Month, composed of three Captains, to examine into the State of the Infirmary, and to make a Report to the commanding Officer.

A Serjeant or Corporal, whose Sobriety, Honesty and good Conduct can be depended upon; and that is capable of teaching *Writing, Reading and Arithmetic*, to be employed to act in the Capacity of a School-Master, where Soldiers and Soldiers Children are to be carefully instructed. A Room to be appointed for that Use, and it would be highly commendable, if the Chaplain, or his Deputy would pay some Attention to the Conduct of the School.

The commanding Officers of Companies, are desired to prevent, as much as possible, the Inconveniences and ill Consequences which are produced, by having too many Soldiers married, when their Wives are loose, and of abandoned Characters and Behaviour which often occasions Quarrels, Drunkenness, Diseases, and Desertions; and never fails to bring them greatly in Debt, which is the Ruin and Destruction of a Soldier; therefore it is recommended to the non-commissioned Officers and private Men; to avoid entering into such Engagements, without consulting

THE MEDLEY.

3

consulting their commanding Officer; the non-commissioned Officers are to use their utmost Endeavours, to prevent all such Marriages, as they must be sensible, how detrimental they are to his Majesty's Service.

The commanding Officer must be strict, in putting in Execution the Articles of War, against Swearing, the Penalties of which, is one Shilling; beside further Punishment for the second Offence; the Soldiers are therefore cautioned to break themselves immediately of a custom, which is wicked, un-soldier-like, and directly contrary to the Articles of War.

An Officer of a Company to march their Men to Church every *Sunday*, and are to remain there, during the Time of Divine Service; and if any non-commissioned Officer or Soldier shall absent himself from Church, or leave it before Service is over, shall pay and suffer the Penalties expressed in the Articles of War.

Whatever non-commissioned Officer shall not behave himself conformable to Orders, will be considered, as unworthy of his Preferment, and reduced accordingly.

If any private Soldier shall think himself aggrieved or ill used, by any Serjeant or Corporal; he must upon no Account use any abusive Language to him; on the contrary he is first to obey, and then lay the Complaint before the commanding Officer of his Company, who will procure justice for him, but the Soldiers are to take Care, that they are not encouraged to make frivolous or ill grounded Complaints; in that Case themselves will be the Sufferers.

The Articles of War to be read every two Months, after which the non-commissioned Officers and private Men, to be accounted with for their Arrears and Stoppages, and the Ballance due to them to be paid by the commanding Officers of Companies, after deducting what has been advanced them to buy Necessaries; each Man is to sign his Account: If the commanding Officer of the Company,

goes from Quarters, in the interim, the Accounts to be left with the next Officer; if none be there, they are to be sealed up, and left with a Serjeant, to be given the next Officer that comes.

Encouragement to be given, to all country People, to bring Provisions to the Market; a non-commission Officer of each Company, to go to Market with their Men, to prevent them quarrelling with the country People, or others, upon any Occasion whatever; if the Price of Provisions is exorbitant, Application must be made to the chief Magistrate, who will regulate it. If any Soldier is guilty of any Insolence, or uses any hard Words, to any Person whatever, he shall upon proof thereof, be punished according to the Nature of the Offence by a Court-Martial.

A Place to be provided, free from Damp, to be as dark and dismal as possible; where clean dry Straw is to be put every Week, which Place is to be called, a *Black Hole*, where Soldiers for Offences are to be sent, and when they absent themselves from the Drill, are to be confined for Twenty-four Hours, and to be kept upon low Diet for the first Offence, for the second Forty-eight Hours, &c. And for the third to be sent Prisoner to the Guard, in order to be tryed by a Court-Martial.

Great Care must be taken, that no Man under Sentence of a Court-Martial, drinks any kind of Spirituous Liquors, either before or after Punishment; as I once knew an instance of a Prisoner, being brought to the Halberts, in order to receive Punishment; but being in Liquor was returned back to the Guard Room; and in a short Time dropt down dead, from the quantity of Spirits he had drank. Had he received his Punishment, which he justly deserved; it is probable evil and designing Persons, might have imputed his Death to that.

The Companies Ammunition, Arms, Accoutrements, Cloaths and Necessaries, to be inspected every Week,

THE MEDLEY.

5

Week, by an Officer of a Company, and a Report to be made to the commanding Officer, of the State of them. Such Men who lose their Arms, are to be charged, for each Firelock, one Pound ten Shillings, each Bayonet, five Shillings, each Ramrod, two Shillings; the Price of a Sword, for either Grenadier or Battalion Man, cannot be ascertained as the Charge must be according to the Goodness they have in their Corps; the above Articles, to be charged to each Man's Account; also all Repairs of Arms, and every thing relative to their Arms and Accoutrements, which can be made appear, before a Regimental Court-Martial, to have been damaged or spoiled by their Neglect. The Compliment of Necessaries to be furnished each Soldier, viz. Three Shirts, two white Stocks or Rollers, one black Hair Stock, one pair of Brass Clasps, for ditto, three pair of white Yarn Stockings, two pair of Shoes, one pair of white Linnen Gaiters, one pair of black Gaiters, and one pair of black Tops for ditto, one pair of Linnen Drawers, one pair of red Skirt Breeches, one red Cap, one Cockade, one Knap-sack, one Haversack, one pair of Shoe Buckles, one pair of Garter Buckles and black Leather Garters, one Oil Bottle, one Brush and Picker, one Worm, one Turn-Key, one Hammer-Cap, one Stopper; whenever any of the above Compliment of Necessaries, are lost or worn out, the Soldier, is immediately to be supplied with others; no Man who is properly provided with Necessaries, to be stopped more than his Arrears; except such Men whose Necessaries are much worn, and are in Debt to their Officer; then they are to be stopped six Pence per Week besides their Arrears: If it is necessary to stop more, it must be by Order of a Court-Martial, and then it is not to exceed the half of his Pay, tho' the Soldier should have made away with all his Necessaries, which is too often the Case, when they are so abandoned, as to desert their Colours.

B 3

Each

Each Company to be provided with, and carry as follows, an Ammunition Box, to contain twenty-four rounds of Powder and Ball, and two Flints for each Man, which are not to be used, but in Case of Necessity : A Machine to cut and cock Hats with, a powder Bag, a Rheam of whited brown Paper, three Locks, one dozen Screw Pins, three Spare Pans, six Iron Ramrods, a Mould to cast Bullets, and a Former to make Cartridges. But the Caliber of the Soldiers Barrel must be attended to, though according to what now is used, two pounds of Lead will cast twenty-nine Musket Bullets, and a Pint of Ammunition Powder, which weighs about fifteen Ounces, will make twenty-nine Cartridges.

The Companies to be formed into Squads; first Squad to consist of the eldest Serjeant, and the Front Rank; second of the two Corporals and the Center; third of the youngest Serjeant and Rear Rank, in Case any Serjeant or Corporal is sick, on Party or Furlough, then the Care of a Squad, must be given to the youngest Corporal. The Serjeants and Corporals of Squads, to take pains with their Recruits, in making them dress in a Soldier-like Manner, and to instruct them how to clean their Arms and Accoutrements; to mount and dismount their Firelocks, as no Man is to be suffered to do it for another.

When the Regiment is in Barracks, a Subaltern Officer is to visit them, the Messes and Regimental Infirmary every Day, between the Hours of ten and twelve o'Clock, and report to the commanding Officer, what Condition the Barracks are in; if the Rooms, Galleries, and Stairs are clean swept, and Beds rolled up; what number of Messes in each Company, and how supplied with Provisions; the number of Patients in the Infirmary, and how attended.

If Billeted in *Britain*, an Officer of a Company, to visit their Men's Quarters, every Pay Day, and to ask

ask the Landlords, if the Men behave well; if quartered upon a Town in *Ireland*, the Men must mess as regular, as in Barracks; and an Officer of a Company to visit them every Market Day, and report to the commanding Officer.

Officers when for Guard, to have their Hair Queued, with Sash, Gorget and Espantoon, Buff coloured Gloves, Hussar Boots, or black Gaiters, with stiff Tops; except when ordered in white Gaiters. The Guards to be exercised every Morning, by an Officer of the Guard, before they march off the Parade, Sundays and Field Days excepted. During the Time the Retreat is beating, all Guards are to be under Arms, and the Officers are to examine their Mens Arms and Ammunition; and after Taptoo Beating, Patroles are frequently to be sent, who are to bring Prisoners all Soldiers, they find out of their Barracks or Quarters; when the Officers mount Guard, the Soldiers that attend them, are to mount with them, and to be dressed exactly in the same Manner as the rest of the Guard.

No Officer to quit his Post, during the Time the Guards are relieving, to walk or talk to each other, except at the Time the Officer of the old Guard, is giving up the Charge of the Guard, to the new: The Men to stand steady and silent, and if any Man lift his Hand, to make a Motion, but what he is ordered to do, his Name to be given to the Adjutant. While the Guards are relieving, if any Person comes near, who is intitled to a Compliment, the eldest Officer of both Guards is to give the Words of Command. The dismounting Officer is to give a Report to the commanding Officer, at the same Time to whisper the Parole in his Ear, the Officer next for Guard, to be on the Parade in readiness, to supply the Place of an Officer who by Sickness, or otherwise cannot do his Duty.

No Officer to change his Guard, or other Duty, but by leave of the commanding Officer; and the Officer must acquaint the Adjutant of the Change.

When an Officer desires leave of Absence, if he has not the Command of a Company, he must first apply to the Officer commanding it, and then to the commanding Officer, and when he has obtained leave, he must acquaint the Adjutant, for what Time; and leave Directions with him in Writing, how he may be wrote to. If any Officer has leave of Absence from the Regiment, he is not to take away any Soldier with him, without leave from the commanding Officer of the Regiment; and any Officer at Country Quarters, that has a Man of the Company to attend him, such Man not to be excused Field Days.

All Officers are desired to be very strict in confining and reporting all Men, of any Company whatever, that they shall meet drunk or disorderly.

The young Officers to be kept at Head Quarters, 'till they are acquainted with their Duty; and are to attend all Court-Martials, for the space of three Months, that they may have a thorough Knowledge of the Nature of that Duty.

When it happens that a Company, shall receive a private Man, from another Company, to be promoted; the Company that receives him, shall give the choice of their Company, four Gunners, and two private Men excepted, when they have no Gunners, six private Men excepted.

The Grenadier Company to practise the Grenadier Exercise frequently; and to be kept compleat, with such Men, whose Health, Strength and Activity, can be most depended upon.

No Man to be discharged who is fit for Service, but upon procuring two good Men in his Place, or paying ten Guineas to the Stock Purse.

All Returns demanded from the Companies, to be signed by the commanding Officer of each Company and his Rank.

Proceedings of all Regimental Courts-Martial, to be entered in a Regimental Book, kept at Head Quarters for that Purpose.

Orderly Hour at o'Clock at the Orderly Room, where the Serjeant Major, Quarter-Master Serjeant, with a Serjeant and Corporal from each Company, Drum-Major and Fife-Major, are to attend for Orders.

An orderly Serjeant daily to attend on the commanding Officer of the Regiment.

One Field Officer, and two thirds of the Captains present, and also One Subaltern Officer with each Company, whereof the Captain is present, and two Subalterns, whereof the Captain is absent; is constantly to remain with the Regiment. If at any Time, that the commanding Officer of the Regiment thinks it necessary to keep more Officers present, for the Discipline of the Regiment, or that the young Officers may be perfect in their Duty, he is to give Orders accordingly.

The Regiment intire to have two Field Days a Week (the Major and Adjutant to be on Horse Back, with their broad Swords and Regimental Horse Furniture) the Officers to be in Regimental Frock Suits and Boots, their Hair Queued, Buff coloured Gloves, with Sash, Gorget, Espantoon or Fuscée, which ever is the Appoinment of the Regiment: The non-commissioned Officers and private Men, to have their Hair well platted and tucked under their Caps and Hats; to be fully accoutred, and in black Spatterdashies, and black Tops.

An Officer of a Company, to attend Morning Roll-calling; when the Troop beats, the Companies will turn out; then the Serjeants or Corporals of the different Squads, will make a careful and exact Inspection, afterwards an Officer is to inspect them, and if he finds the Serjeant or Corporal has not made him an exact Report, he is then to confine him. After the Officers have made their Inspection, the

the eldest Officer on the Spot, will then review them, and if he finds any Soldier not according to the Order of the Regiment; the Officer who makes the Report, must be answerable for it; as it is expected he will examine every Man particularly; a Morning Report to be signed by the Officer of each Company who has inspected their Men; in which all extraordinary that have happened in the preceding twenty four Hours are to be inserted.

One Captain and two Subalterns to attend at Retreat beating, who are to report any Men that are absent without Leave, drunk, disorderly, or not properly dressed.

The Major is to be *Active! Vigilant!* and well acquainted with the Strength of the Battalion, and details of the Corps, as it particularly rolls on him; and well instructed in the Exercise, and every kind of Manœuvre, when the Major is absent, the eldest Captain is to fill that Post.

The Adjutant to do no Duty, but that of Adjutant; when a young Officer joins the Regiment, he must give him a Copy of the standing Orders of the Regiment, and acquaint him that he must immediately prepare an orderly Book, wherein all Orders relative to Exercise, and other Duties are to be inserted. The Adjutant to be very exact in reading the Orders of the Day, to the Men at Roll Calling; and to keep his Roster and Rolls for Duties clear, that no Officer may be sent on Party, or put on Duty, out of his turn. The Serjeant-Major to keep a Roster and Roll of Duties, of the non-commission Officers and private Men; the Serjeants and Corporals to keep size and Duty Rolls of their respective Companies; the Drum and Fife Majors to observe the same for their Drummers and Fifes.

REGULATION *for doing* DUTY.

In all Duties, whether with, or without Arms, Picquets or Courts-Martial, the Tour of Duty shall begin with the eldest downwards.

1st. Duties

1st. Duties of Honour.

The King's Guard, the Queen's Guard, the Prince of Wales's, the Captain General, or Field-Marshal commanding the Army.

2d. Detachments of the Army and Out-posts.

3d. General Officers Guards.

4th. The ordinary Guards, either in Camp or Garrison.

5th. The Picquets.

6th. General Courts-Martial.

7th. Without Arms, or of Fatigues.

An Officer who is upon Duty, cannot be ordered for any other, before that Duty is finished, except he be on the Picquet.

If an Officer's Tour for Duty happens when he is on the Picquet, he shall be immediately relieved, and go upon that Duty. The Tour of the Picquet shall pass him, though he should not have been on it a quarter of an Hour.

If any Officer's Tour for the Picquet, general Court-Martial, or Duty of Fatigue, happens when he is on Duty, he shall not make good that Picquet, Court-Martial or Fatigue, when he comes off, but his Tour shall pass; and the same if he be on a general Court-Martial, or Duty of Fatigue, and his Tour for Guard or Detachment should happen, his Guard or Detachment shall pass, and he shall not be obliged to make them up.

Guards or Detachments, which have not marched off from the Place of Parade or Rendezvous, are not to be reckoned as a Duty done; but if they should have marched from the Place of Parade, it shall be reckoned as a Duty, though they should be dismissed immediately.

General Courts-Martial that have assembled, and the Members sworn in, shall be reckoned a Duty, tho' they should be dismissed without trying any Person.

The King's Standard, in the Guards, is never to be carried on any Guard, but on that of his Majesty.

The

The first Colour of Regiments, is not to be carried on any Guard, but the King's, Queen's, Prince of Wales's, or Captain General's, being of the Royal Family: and except in those Cases, it shall always remain with the Regiment. The Union is the first Colour.

The Quarter Master, though he should have another Commission is to do no Duty but that of Quarter Master, while the Regiment is on actual Service. He is to take Care of the Ammunition and Stores of the Regiment, and to attend on all Days, that Coals or Forrage, &c. is delivered to the Regiment, to prevent Frauds being committed, by Carriers, or any idle Persons usually attending at such Times.

The Surgeon to keep a Book, in which shall be entered, every Man's Name, with his Distemper, specifying whether he be sent to the Regimental, or other Infirmary, and the Day when.

The Surgeon and his Mate to visit the Infirmary every Morning, and as often as occasion may require, and every *Saturday* to make a Return of the Sick, wherein he is to insert every Man's Name, Company he belongs to, and his Disorder.

The Surgeon to lay a State of the Expences of the Infirmary, and all other Matters relating to it before the Infirmary Board, the first *Monday* in every Month, for their Inspection.

When the Regiment is to be under Arms for Exercise, the Surgeon or his Mate, is to sign a Return of the Sick of each Company, which is to be given in with the Field Return.

The Surgeon or his Mate to attend at all Times, when the Regiment is under Arms, Morning and Evening Roll Callings; and to be present at all Punishments, to judge when the Delinquent has received a sufficient number of Lashes for that Time, that no Punishment may extend to Life or Limb.

Drill Serjeants and Corporals, to take particular Care to keep their Squads, steady and silent under Arms,

Arms, that they hold up their Heads, and carry their Arms well; great Attention must be had in the instructing of Recruits, how to take Aim, that they properly adjust their Ball; no Recruit to be dismissed from the Drill, 'till they are so expert with their Firelock, as to load and fire fifteen Times, in three Minutes, and three quarters of a Minute.

If any Serjeant or Corporal drinks, or keeps Company with the Soldiers, Drummers or Fifers, or conceals from his Officer any indecent or un-soldier-like Behaviour among them, they will be reduced for it.

No Serjeant who shall be employed, to buy Necessaries for the Men, shall make any Profit or Advantage thereby, except that of making up the Linen, if made by their Wives, and this to be absolutely at the choice of the Men, for whom it is bought, who shall be present at the buying, and see the Money paid; nor shall they extort from the Men, under pretence of Money advanced, since the Officer who commands the Company will supply what is wanting, and as an effectual stop to all Proceedings of this kind, if any Soldier, Drummer or Fife, shall make full and clear proof of the above mentioned, he shall receive one Guinea Reward, and be put in any other Company he desires, provided the Complaint is lodged within two Months after the Fact is committed.

No Serjeant upon any account, to presume to go on Party or Furlough, without leaving whatever Accounts of the Company, he may have by him, either with an Officer or a Serjeant.

Any Serjeant, Corporal, Drummer, Fifer or Soldier, who goes on Furlough, and does not return at the Expiration of it, must expect to be punished for Disobedience of Orders, without it is occasioned by Sickness; then he is to get his Furlough properly certified by an Officer of the Army; if none be there, by the chief Magistrate; and a letter must be wrote
to

to the commanding Officer of the Regiment, acquainting him of his Sickness and Place he is at.

Serjeants and Corporals, sent on Command, are strictly ordered, on their Arrival in Town, after the Men have received their Billets, and refreshed themselves, to see that they pull off their Gaiters, and appear dressed in every respect as at their Quarters.

No Serjeant, Corporal, Drummer, Fifer, or private Soldier to appear in the *Barrack Yard* or *Street*, without their Hair being well platted and tucked under their Hats, Shoes well blacked, Stockings clean, black Garters, black Stocks, Buckles bright, and Cloaths in thorough good Repair.

If any Man be slothful, or not dressed according to Order, the Serjeant or Corporal of the Squad, must assist in making him obedient to it, and report the Behaviour of such Man to his Officer, or they will be found fault with.

A Serjeant or Corporal of each Company, to be in the way to receive any Orders, that may be given, and to attend the Parade at the dismounting of Guards, to take the Ammunition from the Men; and to see them draw their Arms if loaded.

A Serjeant or Corporal of each Company to attend the Recruits and awkward Men, when they parade for Exercise, to see they are properly dressed, Arms and Accoutrements well put on, and in perfect good Order.

A Serjeant or Corporal of each Company to go round the Barracks or Quarters of their Companies, as soon as the Taptoo has beat, and report any Men that are absent, and every Morning before Troop beating, to see that their Arms and Accoutrements are properly hung up, Beds well turned up, the Rooms, Stairs and Galleries clean swept.

All Serjeants and Corporals are to confine any Drummer, Fifer or Soldier, that may be gaming, which they are ordered never to be guilty of, and if found

found out will be punished for Disobedience of Orders.

All Serjeants and Corporals are to confine any Drummer, Fifer, or Soldier they meet drunk or disorderly.

No Serjeant or Corporal shall sell any kind of Liquors on any pretence whatever, the commanding Officer of a Company is not to pay any Debt their Men may contract on that Account.

When any Casualties happen in a Company, the Pay Master-Serjeant, to take care to preserve the Regimentals that the succeeding Recruit may be cloathed equally with his Brother Soldier, provided the Soldier had not worn them one Year; if he had, his Wife or Child is entitled to them.

The Serjeant of a Guard is to inspect every Relief of Centinels, before the Corporal marches them off, and no Man, who appears to be the least in Liquor is to be suffered to go Centry.

The Pay Master Serjeant of each Company, to keep a Wig by him, which will dress in the Regimental Form, should any Man lose his Hair by Sicknefs.

All Ammunition delivered out, for the use of each Company, to be carefully kept by the eldest Serjeant of it.

A Corporal when he posts a Centinel, must be careful to instruct him in his Duty; and the Centinel must endeavour to know those, who are intitled to rested Arms.

A Corporal posting, or relieving a Centinel irregular shall be broke.

A Corporal at relieving is not to suffer a Centinel to wear a watch Coat, or take shelter in his Centry-Box, except in very bad Weather, to prevent his Arms being wet, and this Indulgence is only to be given in a peaceable Country.

A Corporal of a Company to give a Return of the Sick every Morning to the Surgeon or his Mate.

The

The Corporals always to have a Brush on the Parade, that the Soldiers Cloaths may be clean brushed.

The Drum and Fife Majors, with all the Drummers and Fifers off Duty; to beat the Troop, Retreat, and Taptoo Beatings every Day.

The Drum and Fife Majors to take particular Care that the Drummers and Fifers are properly dressed, their Drums and Fifes in good Order, and that they practice together twice a Week. No Drummer or Fifer to beat or play after Taptoo, or before Reveille beating, on pain of severe Punishment, except by order of the commanding Officer. The Drum-Major to be answerable that no Cat, has more than nine Tails.

The Musicians to attend Roll Callings, and at all Times when the Regiment is under Arms, the one most capable to be appointed to act as Master of the Band, under whose Care and Inspection they are to be, and he must be answerable for their clean and uniform Appearance, they are not to play except by order of the commanding Officer.

All Soldiers when they meet an Officer, either of the Army or Navy, in his Majesty's Service shall stand still at the distance of five Yards, 'till he passes them, at the same Time pulling off their Hats, with their left hands, without bowing their Bodies, and letting their left Hands fall to the extent of their Arm, to be careful of their Carriage that they may not contract an un-soldier-like Air.

No Soldier to carry Coals, as it makes them dirty and slovenly, or any thing on their Heads, when they have their Regimental Cloaths or Hat on, nor to carry Children about the *Barrack Yard* or *Street*: Nor shall any Man be allowed to work who does not produce to his Officer, a Coat and Hat for that purpose; or be excused from being under Arms, with the Regiment or Company, under Pretence of Working or any other Reason, but that of being included in the Surgeon's List.

No

No Man, returned in the Sick-list, to go out of his Barracks or Quarters, without Leave from the Surgeon or his Mate; if well enough, he is expected to appear, in every Respect, dressed according to the Order of the Regiment.

Any Man that presumes to cut off his Hair, except certified by the Surgeon or his Mate, shall be sent to the *Black Hole* for fourteen Days, and to the *Drill* for sixteen, and make good the Duty he missed.

When the Accoutrements want cleaning, the Men are to rub the dirty Spots, with a wet woollen Cloth very well, and put some Colouring-ball upon the Place, and, when dry, rub it off with a hard Brush; but never to scrape them with Knives, Scissars, or any Thing that may cut them.

As each Man's Arms are properly numbered, so that every Man may know his own, therefore no Man is, upon any Account whatever, to put any private Mark upon his Firelock, by driving of Nails in them, or any other Method.

No Man to take his Arms or Accoutrements out of his Barracks or Quarters, unless for Duty, or to learn his Exercise, without Leave from a commission or non-commissioned Officer.

Any Man that is ordered to the *Drill*, and does not go, shall be sent to the *Black-Hole* for forty-eight Hours, and be kept upon low Diet; for the second Neglect, one Week, &c.; for the third, to be sent Prisoner to the Guard-house, in order to be tried by a Court-martial.

Whatever Man's Firelock shall miss Fire twice, or be defective in any Part of it, the Man to whom it belongs, that neglects to report it to his Officer, will be sent to the *Drill* for a Month, and make good the Duty he misses during that Time.

Any Men who fire their Pieces without Orders, or occasion false Alarms by drawing of Swords, beating of Drums, or by any other Means whatever, if in

Great Britain or Ireland, shall be most severely punished; and if in foreign Parts, to be tried by a General Court-martial.

Any Man convicted of selling his Ammunition, to be punished with the utmost Severity.

No Man to dispose of any Part of his Cloathing, or other Necessaries provided for him, on any Pretence whatever, without Leave from his Officer.

No Men, upon any Pretence, to be above one Mile from Quarters, without Leave from the commanding Officer; nor are they to drain Ponds, fish, shoot, or destroy Rabbits, or go in search of any Kind of Game whatever; nor are they to cut Trees, climb over Hedges, Ditches, or break down Fences, so as to give the least Umbrage to any Person: Whatever Man disobeys any Part of the above Order, will be confined and tried for Disobedience of it.

All Men are to retire to their Barracks or Quarters, whenever there is any Mob, Bull-beating or Foot ball Matches, on Pain of being confined for Disobedience of Orders.

No Man drunk on Guard, Party, Duty, or under Arms, is to expect to be shewn the least Lenity.

When any Thing is lost, stolen or spoiled on Guard, the whole Men of the Guard shall pay for it, and the Loser be sent to the *Black-Hole* for three Weeks, and kept upon low Diet.

Any Man that shall use any reproachful, or provoking Speeches, or Gestures, or upbraids any other Man, shall be sent to the *Black-Hole* for three Weeks, and kept upon low Diet, and ask Pardon in the Presence of his Commanding Officer.

All Recruiting-Parties to consist of one Commission Officer, one Serjeant, one Corporal, one Drummer, and two private Men.

RECRUITING-INSTRUCTIONS for A. B. of the
Regiment of Foot, commanded by
the Day of 17

1. You are to inlist no Man who is not a Protestant, and a Native of *Great-Britain*; if any *Irishman*, or Foreigner, through Mistake, should happen to be approved of, and, within three Months after joining the Regiment, shall be discovered to be so, they will be discharged at your Loss; provided it can be made appear; the Officer had Reason to suspect them.

2. You are to enlist no Man under the Age of seventeen, nor above twenty-five, unless he has served in the Army, in which Case he will be accepted of, provided he does not exceed twenty-eight Years of Age. No Man who has been whipped or drummed out of any Regiment, will be approved of; if any such is found out, three Months after joining the Regiment, he will be discharged at your Loss.

3. You must inlist no Man under the Size of five Feet without Shoes, or who has not straight Limbs, broad Shoulders, a good Face, and is every Way well made. You must inlist no Man who cannot wear his Hair, who is thin, or has the least Defect in his Knees.

4. You will take particular Care to have all your Recruits carefully examined by a Surgeon; for a Man who is subject to Fits, or has any Appearance of a Rupture, broken Bones, sore Legs, scald Heads, Ulcers or running Sores, on any Part of his Body; old Wounds, ill cured, or any Infirmary in Body or Limb; will not be approved of, but will be discharged at your Loss, if discovered within three Months after joining the Regiment. Should you discover that your Serjeant, Corporal, or any Man of your Party, knew that any of your Recruits was afflicted as above, and conceal it from you, he

or they shall be brought to a Court-martial, and severely punished.

5. All Recruits to be duly attested before a Magistrate, and are there to declare, upon Oath, whether or not they have been troubled with Fits: A Receipt to be taken on the Back of their Certificates, and witnessed for the Bounty-money agreed on. If any of your Party inlist a Man for you, you must allow him five Shillings *English* as an Encouragement.

The Certificates of the inlisted Men are to be sent to the Regiment by the Serjeant or Corporal who brings the Recruits to Quarters, who is to deliver them to the commanding Officer, who will give them to the Adjutant, in order that Recourse may be had to them, if necessary.

6. You must inlist no Strollers, Vagabonds, Tinkers, Chimney-sweepers, Colliers or Sailors; but endeavour to get Men born and bred in the Neighbourhood of the County you are recruiting in.

7. For every Recruit, approved of at the Regiment, you will be allowed

The Recruits are to be subsisted by Regiment. For every Man, five Feet, ten Inches, and upwards, not exceeding the Age mentioned in these Instructions, who is every Way well made, and fit for a Grenadier, you will be allowed extraordinary.

8. Not less than four Recruits to be sent at a Time; they are to go under the Care of a Serjeant or Corporal to the Regiment, with Money to subsist them.

9. You will take particular Care that the Recruits furnish themselves out of their Bounty-money with Linen, Shoes, Stockings, &c.

A Return of their Necessaries must be sent with them to the Regiment, signed by you, and also a Return of the Name, Age, Size, Country, and Complexion of each Recruit. No Man will be accepted

cepted of that is not mentioned in your Return ; therefore none of your Party, after they have left you, in order to join the Regiment, must, on any Account, enlist any Man upon the Road.

When you arrive at the Place where you are to recruit, you will write to the commanding Officer at Head-quarters, to acquaint him of it ; and if you change your Place of recruiting, you will let him know of it, and inform him, as often as you think proper, of your Success.

No Serjeant, Corporal, Drummer, Fifer or private Man, once enlisted in this Regiment, must be discharged, but as the Articles of War direct.

When you send any Recruits to the Regiment, you will give Notice of it to the Agent by Letter, inclosing a State of your Account.

N. B. When Directions are given to enlist Lads for Drummers or Fifers, they are to be inserted in their Certificate ; when the commanding Officer shall think proper, he shall be put into the Ranks, and serve as a private Soldier, without being intitled to any further Bounty-money.

When the Regiment is to be new cloathed, the Lieutenant-colonel or Officer commanding the Regiment is not to make any Alteration in them, without further Orders.

In fitting the cloathing, all Officers are to be very careful that the following Directions are complied with.

The new Coats to be dipt in clean fresh Water, and to be laid in the Sun to dry : Each Man to be fitted with a Coat and Pair of Breeches ; The Bottom of every Man's Coat to be four Inches from the Ground, when kneeling upon both Knees, and to hang of an equal Length quite round : The Waistcoats for the front and rear Ranks of Grenadiers to have thirteen Holes and Buttons on each Side, from the Top of the Waistcoat to the Point of the Pocket ; center Rank, and front and rear Ranks of the Batta-

lion, to have twelve ; center Rank of the Battalion, eleven. All Waistcoats must cover the Soldier well, and to be made full in every Part : They are to be cut square at the Bottom, and to open back from the lowermost Button-hole to the Point ; which lower Button and Hole are to cover the lower Part of the Waistband of the Breeches : The Back-seam of the Waistcoat to be sewed down as low as the lower Part of the Waistband of the Breeches, and to be strengthened at the Bottom of the Side-seam : The new Breeches to be double sewed in all Seams, and made to fit easy, full and well : The Escutcheon of the Bottom of the Side-seam of the Coat to be well secured from ripping by a neat Loop, and the opening of the Back-skirt to be sewed down as low as the Bottom of the second Loop, and secured there from ripping by a neat Loop : The Bottom of the Lappells to be well stitched ; the Shoulder-straps to be made high on the Shoulder, and sewed down flat one Inch, so that the remaining Part, when unbuttoned, may fall along the Arm ; and, when buttoned, to be of a sufficient Length to contain the Shoulder-belt with Ease, and no longer : The Skirts of the Coats to be sewed together, and a Piece of red Cloth, near three Inches long, and almost two in Breadth, with a narrow Lace square, put on at the Corners, and a Button in the Center of the Cloth ; one of these to be sewed to the Point of each Skirt.

Four Yards and three Inches of Lace are sufficient to lace the Waistcoats of the Regiment, one with the other, Grenadiers included. A Foraging-cap and Stopper to be made up, conformable to a Pattern-one, out of Part of the old Coat, and the Skirts to be taken into Store, and to be made into Breeches, when the Ammunition-breeches are near worn out.

Directions for making the Skirt-Breeches.

Each Man must be taken Measure of, and Care taken that the Lining of the Breeches is of strong
new

new Linen; the Breeches to be made full in the Seat, to come well over the Hips and low under the Knee, with a Strap for the Buckle, and four Buttons and Button-holes.

No Taylor to presume to purloin or steal any Part of the Cloth, nor are the Waistcoats to be worked upon, till the Coats and Breeches are well finished and fitted to the Soldier.

REGULATIONS *and* ORDERS *for a* REGIMENTAL INFIRMARY.

Every Soldier, when taken sick, must be sent to the Infirmary; a portable Chair to be in Readiness, and to be kept at the Main Guard, to carry the sick Men, if they are very ill; if they are not very ill, a Corporal and two Men must assist the sick Men to the Infirmary. The orderly Corporal of the Company must bring the pay with the sick Men, and he is to take Care that the Patient has a Cap and Shirt, and to search him, that he may not bring into the Infirmary, Money, Cards, Dice, Spirits or Tobacco; nor is any clean Linen to be brought, or foul fetched away, except by a Serjeant or Corporal. If the sick Man's Mess is put in, his Mess-mates must allow him his Proportion in Money, for the Remainder of the Week, and what is deficient must be advanced to make good his Pay to the Pay-day following.—

s. d. per Week, is to be the Infirmary-allowance, till further Orders: Serjeants, Corporals, Drummers, Musicians and Fifers, are to pay the same. A Serjeant or Corporal of the Companies, who have any Men in the Regimental Infirmary, are ordered to carry their Linen every and , on which last they must bring their Subsistence, and pay it to the Serjeant attending the Infirmary. Whatever Soldier, when a Patient in the Infirmary, does not submit to the Rules of the House, and Directions of the Doctor, is to be sent to the *Black-Hole* for twenty-four Hours, as soon as his Cure is perfected; and, if
C 4 notoriously

notoriously refractory, to be tried by a Regimental Court-martial; or if a Patient in the Infirmary shall break out from thence, he shall be sent to the *Black Hole* for ten Days, on low Diet, when recovered. A Serjeant or Corporal of a Company must visit their Sick in the Infirmary twice every Week, to know what Linen they may want; and they must bring nothing to any Patient but wearing Apparel, without the Surgeon's Permission. If any Soldier should be detected conveying spirituous Liquors to the Sick in the Infirmary, or shall be aiding or assisting thereto, he shall be punished by the Sentence of a Court-martial. If any Serjeant or Corporal is a Patient in the Infirmary, he must be aiding and assisting to the Doctor as much as he is able, in keeping Order and Decency among the Patients, and detecting any mean Practices committed in the Infirmary, contrary to the standing Orders: And if any Serjeant or Corporal shall connive at any Thing improper to be brought in, and not discover the same to the Surgeon, he will be reduced to the Pay and Duty of a private Soldier. The Serjeant attending the Infirmary must keep an exact Account of the Pay of each Ward, oversee it being laid out by the Nurse, according to the Doctor's Directions, and close the Account every half Week, that any Man, that is to be discharged on _____, may have his Overplus divided when he is dismissed. A Corporal of a Company to attend every _____ and _____ Afternoon, to receive their recovered Men. Every Man discharged the Infirmary must be Duty-free for three Days or more, at the Discretion of the Surgeon. The Account of Money disbursed, and the Dividend for each Man, must be given every Morning to the Surgeon, that the commanding Officer may inspect it when he pleases; and the Serjeant must give a distinct Copy of that Account to the Serjeant or Corporal who relieves him; the Relief to be weekly; the attending Serjeant to give Receipts for Coals,

Coals, Candles, and Sheeting for the Use of the Infirmary. No sick Soldier can have his Wife employed as one of the Nurses; and if any of the Nurses' Husbands are taken ill, such Nurses must be dismissed, or her Pay discontinued till the Recovery of her Husband. Married Men of good Character, who live near the Infirmary, and have a careful Wife, if they are taken ill, and keep their Bed, may be allowed to remain in their Lodgings, at the Discretion of the Surgeon, providing their Continuance in Quarters is no Inconveniency to their Disease, or their Tendernefs for the Good of the Men, and to prevent Infection spreading amongst them. And it is ordered that any Man, taken with the Small-pox, should immediately, upon the Discovery of the Disease, be sent to Lodgings private and remote as can be got, and all Soldiers prevented from visiting such sick Man, as well as the Sick in the Infirmary, as they are liable to catch Fevers and Distempers, and bring those Maladies among their Brother-soldiers. The Centry posted at the Infirmary is not to suffer any one to go in there, except those brought by a Corporal or People attending the Infirmary; and he is likewise to prevent the Sick from coming out, or leaving their Wards to trouble the Kitchens. The Centry may be taken off every Night at ten o'Clock (except any Thing extraordinary requires his being continued) and planted again at Day-break. Any of the Men, who have slight Complaints, may attend the Surgeon at a Place appointed, at ten o'Clock in the Morning, when the Corporals are to give in their Reports of the Sick. The Surgeon is to make a Report to the commanding Officer whenever any of these Orders are not complied with, that the Offenders may receive proper Punishment for their Neglect.

REGULATIONS OF DIET FOR THE INFIRMARY.

Day of the Week.	Meals.	FULL DIET.	HALF DIET.
Sunday and Thursday.	Breakfast, Dinner, Supper.	A Pint of Water-Gruel, Eight Ounces of boiled Beef, One Pint of Broth.	A Pint of Water-Gruel, Four Ounces of Beef, and Pint of Broth, A Pint of Broth.
Tuesday and Saturday.	Breakfast, Dinner, Supper.	Pint of Water-Gruel, Eight Ounces of boiled Mutton, Pint of Broth.	A Pint of Water-Gruel, Four Ounces of Mutton, and Pint of Broth, A Pint of Broth.
Monday.	Breakfast, Dinner, Supper.	Pint of Water-Gruel, Pint of Rice Milk, Two Ounces of Cheefe, or one of Butter.	A Pint of Water-Gruel, A Pint of Rice Milk, A Pint of Water-Gruel.
Wednesday.	Breakfast, Dinner, Supper.	Pint of Water-Gruel, Twelve Ounces of Pudding, Two Ounces of Cheefe, or one of Butter.	A Pint of Water-Gruel, Six Ounces of Pudding, A Pint of Water-Gruel.
Friday.	Breakfast, Dinner, Supper.	Pint of Water-Gruel, Pint of Barley-Gruel, Two Ounces of Cheefe, or one of Butter.	A Pint of Water-Gruel, A Pint of Barley-Gruel, A Pint of Water-Gruel.
N. B. The Men on Full Diet have a Pound of Bread and a Pint of Small Beer, every Day. The Men on Half Diet have Half a Pound of Bread and a Pint of Small Beer, every Day.			

When the Regiment is together, a Picquet-guard, besides the usual Guards, to mount daily ; consisting of one Captain, two Subalterns, two Serjeants, two Corporals, two Drummers, and fifty private Men. The Subalterns are to be sent Visiting-rounds. Where no less than four Companies are quartered, a Guard of one Serjeant, one Corporal, and twelve private Men ; and a Picquet of one Subaltern, one Serjeant, one Corporal, one Drummer, and twenty-four private Men. Where three Companies are quartered, a Guard of one Serjeant, one Corporal, and twelve private Men, and an orderly Officer for the Day. And where less than three Companies, a Guard of one Serjeant, one Corporal, and twelve private Men, and an Officer to stay in Garrison or Quarters. Where any of the above Guards are mounted, they are to be kept in Readiness for such Occasions as may be required, and are to prevent Disturbances, and keep good Order and Regularity among the Men, and are to grant such Parties, to those who have a sufficient Authority to demand the Aid of the Military, as they shall require, they remaining constantly with the Party, whose Orders they must obey. The Demand must be in Writing, signed, and in an exact Form.

When the Regiment is ordered into Cantonments, the commanding Officer will dispose of the Companies in such Manner as he shall judge is for the Good of his Majesty's Service, paying a particular Attention to the appointing an Officer to command at each Cantonment, whose Experience and good Conduct can be depended upon. The Colours, Chaplain, Pay-master, Surgeon, Adjutant, Quarter-master, Serjeant-major, Quarter-master Serjeant, Drill-serjeant, Corporal, and all the Recruits ; Drum-major, Fife-major, the Serjeant or Corporal appointed to act as School-master, with the Music and Fifers, are all to be kept at Head-quarters. When seven Companies are

are ordered to march, the Lieutenant-colonel, with the Colours, Staff-officers, Music, &c. should march with them : The Major, when four Companies march : A Captain from three Companies to one : A Lieutenant, with one Serjeant, one Corporal, one Drummer, and twenty-seven private Men : An Ensign with one Serjeant, one Corporal, one Drummer, and twenty-one private Men : A Serjeant from twelve to fifteen private Men : A Corporal from four to nine private Men : The Surgeon to march when a Field-officer does ; his Mate with one or more Companies. Notwithstanding the foregoing Regulations, Officers and non-commissioned Officers, are obliged to march with a smaller Number, and sometimes with a greater, just as the Service and Situation of Circumstances may require.

The Day before the Regiment begins their March, the Quarter-master, or an Officer as such, is to be sent forward to prepare Quarters against their Arrival. Each Man to march with twenty-four Rounds of Powder and Ball, and two Flints, and to carry all their Necessaries. *Reviellie* not to beat the Morning the Regiment marches. When the whole Troops march, first Beat is the General, second the Assembly, third the March : If only Part marches, first Beat is the Assembly, second the Troop, third the March. In *Great Britain* and *Ireland* I would have the Regiment march by Files, to prevent their being interrupted by narrow Roads, Carriages, or Drovers of Cattle. The Officer commanding the Grenadiers, leads the Center of the front File ; and the Officer commanding the Battalion, leads the Center of the front File of the Battalion ; the Lieutenant-colonel, when the Colonel is present, brings up the Center of the last File of the Battalion ; as the Officer commanding the rear Division of Grenadiers does the Center of the last File of Grenadiers. The rest of the Officers march upon the outward Flank of the front Rank.

The

The Drummers and Fifers in the same Line; the Serjeants march upon the outward Flank of the rear Rank; the Music to march in a Line by the Colours; the Major, Adjutant, and Serjeant-major, to be upon the Flanks. An *advance, rear and Baggage Guard*, to be appointed according to the Strength of the Regiment; the Rear-guard to bring up all Stragglers; and if any Man is taken so sick, as not able to march, two careful Men are to be left with him, one of which will soon after come and acquaint the commanding Officer where such Men are left, and their Disorder. The Surgeon and his Mate to march with the Regiment. No Officer to leave his Post, nor non-commission'd Officer or Soldier to quit his File without Leave: The Officer that suffers it, will be answerable for it. The Regiment must behave with great Regularity upon the March; and before they march into any Village, Town or Garrison, an Officer to be sent forward; and if Troops are there, he must wait upon the commanding Officer for Leave for the Regiment to march in. When they arrive at their Quarters, the Credit of the Regiment to be cried down, Place of Parade appointed, the Guards to be mounted, and the Colours to be lodged in Form at the commanding Officer's Quarters, and a Centry posted over them. The Alarm-posts to be fixed, and the necessary Precautions to be given the Men against whoring, drinking, gaming and rioting. Upon beating to Arms, all Officers and Soldiers who are not upon Duty, to repair with their Arms to their Alarm-posts. The Picquet-guard will assemble where the Colours are lodged. If the Alarm is occasioned by Fire, the Pioneers are to assemble with them, with their Axe and Saw only. The commanding Officer will give all such necessary Orders as the present Exigency may require, and for securing the Effects of the unhappy Sufferers.

The Regiment is not to march from its Alarm-posts, or be dismissed, except by Order of the commanding

manding Officer. Discipline is the Basis of a Regiment, and the good Order and Steadiness of it is imputed to the Conduct and Knowledge of their Officers, upon whom the Colonel has a firm Reliance, and most seriously recommends a proper Obedience from the eldest downwards, and sincerely wishes that Officers will never enter into nice Disquisitions concerning the Extent of Command, and other Points of Duty, which are of little Consequence, unless to raise Disputes and create ill Blood: That they should, in their several Posts and Stations, endeavour to promote the Good and Regularity of the Service in general, and the Honour of their Regiment in particular. The best of Men are liable to Mistake, and happy is he who bears the little Crosses (which sometimes arise) with most Temper. I should always desire, and do expect, that every Duty should be strictly fulfilled, yet so as that good Manners, Cheerfulness, Friendship, and a perfect Harmony, should mutually subsist throughout the Regiment.

The Regiment must keep constantly to all Regulations, Orders, Forms of Discipline and Exercise, now used (and the before-mentioned Regulations, &c. to be read to the Regiment on the first *Monday* in every Month) and on no Account whatever to change or let fall any Part of them without Orders: When the Regiment is divided, the same must be duly observed, and exactly followed, as far as Situation and Circumstances will admit of.

the

17

[*The Colonel of the Regiment
is to sign his Name.*]

Consisting

Consisting of GENERAL RULES for the marching of a Regiment of Foot, or a Detachment of Men, where there is a Possibility of their being attacked by the Enemy.

[This is copied from BLAND's Discipline.]

THERE is not any thing in which an Officer shews his Want of Conduct so much as in suffering himself to be surprized, either upon his Post, or in marching with a Body of Men under his Command, without being prepared to make a proper Defence, and by not having taken the necessary Precautions to prevent it.

When an Officer has had the Misfortune of being beat, his Honour will not suffer by it, provided he has done his Duty, and acted like a Soldier; but if he is surprized by neglecting the common Methods used to prevent it, his Character is hardly retrievable, unless it proceeds from his Want of Experience, and, even in that Case, he will find it very difficult.

An Officer who is detached with a Body of Men, ought to consider that the Lives of those under his Command depend, in a great Measure, on his Prudence; and if he has any important Post committed to his Charge, the Lives of many more may follow. This Consideration alone, without mentioning the Loss of Reputation, is sufficient, in my Opinion, to make us apply ourselves to our Duty, with a more than common Zeal, that we may not be ignorant in what relates to our Profession, when our King and Country has Occasion for our Service. The military Profession has, in all Ages, been esteemed the most honourable, from the Danger that attends it. The Motives that lead Mankind to it must proceed from a noble and generous Inclination, since they sacrifice their Ease and their Lives in the Defence of their Country. To answer this glorious End, we should endeavour at the Knowledge of our Calling, by a thorough Application to the Service.

The

The same Spirit that brings us into the Army should make us apply ourselves to the Study of the military Art, the common Forms of which may be easily attained by a moderate Application, as well as Capacity; neither is it below any military Man, let his Birth be ever so noble, to be knowing in the minute Parts of the Service. It will not cramp his Genius, as some have been pleased to say, in order, as I suppose, to excuse their own Ignorance; but rather aid and assist it in great and daring Enterprizes.

Our great and warlike Neighbours the *Germans* are so intirely prepossessed in favour of this Opinion, that they oblige even their Youth of Quality to perform the Function of a private Soldier, Corporal and Sergeant, that they may learn the Duty of each before they have a Commission; and sure no Nation has produced greater Generals.

Our late Monarch, the glorious King *William*, whose military Capacity was second to none, was perfectly knowing in the small as well as the grand Detail of an Army. In visiting the Out-posts, he would frequently condescend to place the Centinels himself, and instruct the Officers how to do it. He was a strict Observer of all the Parts of Discipline, and knew the Duty of every one in the Army, from the highest to the lowest; and if so great a Prince thought it a necessary Qualification, I believe there will be hardly any one found of another Opinion. I do not pretend to infer from the above Observations, that it is absolutely necessary for our young Nobility and Gentry to pass through those little and servile Offices before they arrive at a Commission; but I think it absolutely necessary that they should apply themselves to the Service as soon as they have one; for without they know the Duty of those under their Command, how can they pretend to direct. A Commission, it is true, qualifies a Man for the Pay; but it must be Time and Experience, and a thorough Application

to

to the Service, that entitles him to the Appellation of a Soldier. He that makes himself Master of the Duty of those below him, will the easier comprehend what is due to those above him, and be a Means to qualify him for a higher Post, and to do the Duty of it with Honour and Credit, when given him; with this Addition, that he was fit for the Post, and not that the Post was fit for him. It is more commendable and praise-worthy to owe our Preferment to Merit than Favour: The Dependence on the latter, is the Reason why so many young Gentlemen neglect the former. Money and powerful Relations will always procure them what they want; they have, therefore, no Occasion to apply themselves to the Knowledge of their Duty: It is from this Way of thinking that so many of them do so little Credit to their Posts, not from the Want of Genius, but Application. I hope these few Observations will not be taken as a Reflection on the young Gentlemen who have lately come into the Army, but rather as an Admonition to avoid the Neglect complained of, my Design being purely to serve them, that they may be the better qualified to serve their Country, when she calls upon them.

INSTRUCTIONS *drawn up by the late Major-general JAMES WOLFE, for the twentieth Regiment of Foot, then lying at Canterbury, in case of the French landing in 1755.*

Whoever shall throw away his Arms in Time of Action, whether Officer, non-commission'd Officer or Soldier, unless it appears that they are so damaged as to be useless, either under Pretence of taking up others of a better Sort, or for any Cause whatever, must expect to be tried by a General Court-martial for the Crime.

D

If

If a Serjeant leaves the Platoon he is appointed to, or does not take upon him the immediate Command of it, in case the Officer falls, such Serjeant shall be tried for his Life, as soon as a Court-martial can be assembled. Neither Officer, non-commission'd Officer, nor Soldier, is to leave his Platoon or abandon his Colours for a slight Wound : While a Man is able to do his Duty, and can stand and hold his Arms, it is infamous to retire.

The Battalion is not to halloo or cry out upon any Account whatever, although the rest of the Troops should do it, till they are ordered to charge their Bayonets : In that Case, and when they are upon the Point of rushing upon the Enemy, the Battalion may give a warlike Shout, and rush in. Before the Battle begins, and while the Battalion is marching towards the Enemy, the Officer commanding a Platoon is to be at the Head of his Men, looking frequently back upon them, to see that they are in Order : The Serjeant, in the mean While, taking his Post in the Interval, and the Officers are not to go to the Flanks of their Platoons till they have a Signal or Order so to do from the commanding Officer of the Battalion.

If the Battalion should be crouded at any Time, or confined in their Ground, the Captain or Officer commanding a grand Division may order his center Platoon to fall back till the Battalion can extend itself again.

All the Officers upon the left of the Colours are to be upon the left of their Platoons ; the Captain of the Picquet is to be upon the left of his Picquet, and the Ensign in the Center. Every grand Division, consisting of two Companies, as they now are, is to be told off into three Platoons, to be commanded by a Captain, Lieutenant and Ensign, with a Serjeant to each ; the rest of the Officers and non-commission'd Officers are to be distributed in the Rear, to complete the Files, to keep the Men to their Duty, and

and to supply the Places of the Officers or Serjeants who may be killed or dangerously wounded.

Every Musketeer is to have a Couple of spare Balls, an excellent Flint in his Piece, another or two in his Pouch, and as much Ammunition as he can carry.

A Soldier that takes his Musket off his Shoulder, and pretends to begin the Battle without Orders, will be put to Death that Instant: The Cowardice or irregular Proceeding of one or two Men is enough to put a whole Battalion in Danger.

A Soldier that quits his Rank, or offers to fly, is to be instantly put to Death by the Officer who commands the Platoon, or by the Officer or Serjeant in the Rear of the Platoon.

A Soldier does not deserve to live who will not fight for his King and Country.

If a non-commission'd Officer or private Man is missing after an Action, and joins his Company afterwards unhurt, he will be reputed a Coward and a Fugitive, and will be tried for his Life. The Drummers are to stay with their respective Companies, and to assist the wounded Men.

Every Officer, and every non-commission'd Officer, is to keep strictly to his Post and Platoon from the Beginning to the End of an Action, and to observe all possible Order and Obedience. The Confusion occasioned by the Loss of Men, and the Noise of the Artillery and Musquetry, will require every Officer's strictest Attention to his Duty. When the Files of a Platoon are disordered by the Loss of Men, they are to be immediately compleated afresh with the utmost Expedition, in which the Officers and non-commission'd Officers in the Rear are to be aiding and assisting. Officers are not to go from one Part of the Battalion to another, without Orders, on any Pretence whatever.

The eight Companies of the Battalion are never to pursue the Enemy, without particular Orders so to

36 THE MEDLEY.

do: The Picquet and Grenadiers will be detached for that Purpose, and the Battalion is to march in good Order to support them.

If the firing is ordered to begin by the Platoons, either from the Wings or from the Center, it is to proceed in a regular Manner, till the Enemy is defeated, or till a Signal is given to attack them with the Bayonets.

If we attack a Body less in Extent than the Battalion, the Platoons upon the Wings must be careful to direct their Fire obliquely, so as to strike upon the Enemy. The Officer is to inform his Soldiers before the Action begins, where they are to direct their Fire, and they are to take good Care to destroy their Adversaries.

There is no Necessity for firing very fast; a cool, well-levelled Fire, with the Pieces carefully loaded, is much more destructive and formidable than the quickest Fire in Confusion.

If a Battalion in front Line should give Way and retire in Disorder, towards the second Line, every other Platoon, or every other Company, is to march forward a little, leaving Intervals open for the disordered Troops to pass through; and after they are gone by, the Battalion marches in one Front, and moves forward to take Post in the first Line, from whence the broken Battalion retired.

If a Battalion on either Flank gives Way, and is defeated, the picquet or grenadier Company, whichever it happens to be, is to fall back immediately, without Confusion, and protect that Part of the Regiment.

The Misbehaviour of any other Corps will not affect this Battalion, because the Officers are determined to give the strongest Proofs of their Fidelity, Zeal and Courage, in which the Soldiers will second them with their usual Spirit.

If the Order of Battle be such (and the Country admit of it) that it is necessary to make Breaches in
the

the Enemy's Line, for the Cavalry to fall in upon them, the grand Divisions of the Regiment are each to form a Firing-column of three Platoons in Depth, which are to march forward and pierce the Enemy's Batallion in four Places, that the Cavalry may get in among them and destroy them. In such an Attack, the first only of the three Platoons should fire, and immediately present their Bayonets and charge. — These four Bodies are to be careful not to run into one another in their Attack, but to preserve the Intervals at a proper Distance.

All Attacks in the Night are to be made with Bayonets, unless when Troops are posted with no other Design than to alarm, harrafs or fatigue the Enemy, by firing at their Out-posts, or into their Camp.

If Entrenchments or Redoubts are to be defended obstinately, the firing is to begin in a regular Manner, when the Enemy is within Shot, at about two hundred Yards, and to continue till they approach very near; and when the Troops perceive that they endeavour to get over the Parapet, they are to fix their Bayonets and make a *bloody Resistance*.

All little Parties that are intended to fire on the Enemy's Column of march, their advanced Guard, or their Rear, are to post themselves so as to be able to annoy them without Danger, and to cover themselves with slight Breast-works of Sod behind the Hedges, or with Trees or Walls, or Ditches, or any other Protection, that if the Enemy return the Fire, it may do no Mischief. These little Parties are to keep their Posts, till the Enemy prepares to attack with a Superiority, upon which they are to retire to some other Place of the same Kind, and fire in the same Manner, constantly retiring when they are pushed. But when a considerable Detachment of Foot is posted to annoy the Enemy upon their March, with Orders to retire, when attacked by a superior Force, the Country behind is to be carefully

examined, and some Parties sent off early to post themselves in the most advantageous Manner, to cover the Retreat of the rest: This is always to be done in all Situations when a considerable Body is ordered to retire.

If a Retrenchment is to be attacked, the Troops should move as quick as possible towards the Place, not in Line, but in little firing Columns of three or four Platoons in Depth, with small Parties between each Column, who are to fire at the Top of the Parapet, when the Columns approach to divert the Enemy's Fire, and facilitate their passing the Ditch and scrambling over the Parapet, which they must endeavour to do without Loss of Time. It is to very little Purpose firing at Men who are covered with an Entrenchment, but by attacking in the Manner above-mentioned, one may hope to succeed.

If the Seat of War should be in this strong inclosed Country, it will be managed chiefly by Fire, and every Inch of Ground that's proper for Defence, disputed with the Enemy, in which Case the Soldiers will soon perceive the Advantage of levelling their Pieces properly; and they will likewise discover the Use of several Evolutions, that they may now be at a Loss to comprehend. The greater Faculty they have of moving from Place to Place, and from one Enclosure to another (either together or in separate Bodies) without Confusion or Disorder, the easier they will fall upon the Enemy with Advantage, or retire when it is proper so to do; sometimes to draw the Enemy into a dangerous Position, at other Times to take Possession of new Places of Defence that will be constantly prepared behind them.

If the Battalion attacks another of nearly equal Extent, whose Flanks are not covered, the Grenadiers and Picquet may be ordered to detach themselves, and surround the Enemy by attacking their Flank and Rear, while the eight Companies charge them in Front. The Grenadiers and Picquets should therefore

fore be accustomed to those Sorts of Movements, that they may execute their Orders with a great Deal of Expedition.

If the Battalion is to attack another Battalion of equal Force and like Number of Ranks, and the Country be quite open, it is highly probable that after firing a few Rounds, they will be commanded to charge them with their Bayonets, for which the Officers and Men should be prepared.

If the Center of the Battalion is attacked by a Column, the Wings must be extremely careful to fire obliquely; and that Part of the Battalion against which the Column marches, must reserve their Fire; and if they have Time to put two or three Bullets in their Pieces, it must be done. When the Column is within about twenty Yards, they must fire with a good Aim, which will necessarily stop them a little: This Body may then open from the Center, and retire by Files towards the Wings of the Regiment, while the neighbouring Platoons wheel to the Right and Left, and either fire, if they are loaded, or close up and charge with their Bayonets.

If a Body of Foot is posted behind a Hedge, Ditch or Wall, and being attacked by a superior Force, is obliged to retire, the Body should move off by Files in one or more Lines, as perpendicular as possible to the Posts they leave, that when the Enemy extends himself to fire through the Hedges, the Object to fire at may be as small as possible, and the March of the retiring Body as quick as possible.

The Death of an Officer commanding a Company or Platoon should be no Excuse for the Confusion or Misbehaviour of that Platoon; for while there is an Officer or non-commission'd Officer left alive, no Man is to abandon his Colours and betray his Country.

The Loss of the Field Officers will be supplied (if it should so happen) by the Captains, who will execute the Plan of the Regiment with *Honour*.

If the Battalion should have the Misfortune to be invested in their Quarters (or in a Post which they are not ordered to defend) by a greater Superiority, they have but one Remedy, which is to pierce the Enemy's Line or Lines in the Night, and get off. In this Case, the Battalion attacks with the Ranks and Files closed, with their Bayonets fixed, without firing a Shot : They will be formed in an Order of Attack, suitable to the Place they are in, the Troops they are to charge, and to the Nature of the Country through which they are to pass.

If the Battalion attacks the Enemy's Camp or Quarters in the Night, all possible Means will be used, no Doubt, to surprize them ; but if they are found in Arms, they are to be vigorously attacked with the Bayonets. It is needless to think of firing in the Night, because the Confusion it creates, and the Uncertainty of killing any Object in the Dark.

A Column that receives the Enemy's Fire, and falls immediately in among them, must necessarily defeat them, and create a very great Disorder in their Army.

ORDERS very proper to be given to the Troops on Board of Transports in Time of War.

Parole, KING GEORGE ; Countersign, QUEEN CHARLOTTA. (Parole and Countersign may be changed.)

In case of dark Nights or Fogs, when you hear or see a Vessel come near you, she must be hailed, to prevent your being deceived by an Enemy. The Ship hailed, if of the Convoy, will return her Name, and then ask the other hers, and then exchange with each other the Parole and Countersign, that they may not be surprised by a Ship of War or Privateer, lurking near them by Night or in hazy Weather. A subaltern Officer of the Day to be appointed, who is to be on Deck, upon all such Occasions, and a Guard
to

to consist of one Serjeant, one Corporal, and twelve private Men, to keep strict Order and to prevent Fire. As it may possibly happen that the Transports may be separated from the Convoy, the commanding Officer on Board each Transport are to post their Men to their particular Quarters, and turn them out with their Arms, at least once a Day, whilst they continue at Anchor, if the Weather is fair, that they may know how to do it readily, without Confusion, in case of Necessity. The Men are to turn out with their Waistbelts slung, as on the March, and not to fix their Bayonets, unless the Enemy attempt to board them. All the Recruits who have not fired Ball, to be posted at the Cannon, and as many more of the Soldiers as are acquainted with that Service, and will be sufficient to work the Guns. The Cartridges are to be taken from those Men and distributed among such as have distinguished themselves in firing at the Mark. The Firelocks belonging to the Recruits, and the Men ordered to the Guns, to be kept on Deck, loaded, to be carefully put up in an Arm chest, ready for any Emergency: The same Number of Cartouch-boxes to be filled with Cartridges, likewise to be put up in a safe Place, to be ready on the shortest Notice. If you should be attacked by a Privateer, your only Expedient will be a close Engagement; the Soldiers therefore are not to be suffered to shew themselves on Deck till the Enemy is very near, and quite under the Command of your small Arms; and, even then, they are not to presume to fire till they are ordered. It is not expected they should fire by Division, but singly, as they can take Aim: They are not to be in too great a Hurry in loading, but to be careful to shake all the Powder out of the Cartridge before they ram it down. If the commanding Officer on Board finds it necessary to hold a regimental Court-martial, he may, having a sufficient Number of Officers, and put the Sentence in Execution. No Woman to be suffered to remain on Board,

but

but such as are lawful Wives of the Soldiers. A Return from each Transport to be made to the commanding Officer every *Monday* Morning, that the Weather permits.

GENERAL ORDERS AND REGULATIONS,
By the late Major-General WOLFE, July 1759.

THE Object of the Campaign is to compleat the Conquest of *Canada*, and to finish the War in *America*. The Army under the Commander in Chief will enter the Colony on the Side of *Monireal*, while the Fleet and Army attack the Governor-general and his Forces. Great Supplies of Provisions, and a numerous Artillery, are provided; and from the known Valour of the Troops, the Nation expects Success. These Battalions have acquired Reputation in the last Campaign, and it is not doubted but they will be careful to preserve it. From this Confidence, the General has assured the Secretary of State in his Letter, that whatever may be the Event of this Campaign, his Majesty and the Country will have Reason to be satisfied with the Behaviour of the Army under his Command.

The general Means to carry the Business through, with as little Loss as possible, and with the highest Regard to the Safety and Preservation of the Troops, and to that End he expects, that the Men work cheerfully, diligently, and without the least unsoldier-like Manner or Complaint; and that these few, but necessary Orders, may be strictly obeyed.

The General proposes to fortify his Camp in such a Manner as to put it entirely out of the Enemy's Power to attempt any thing by Surprise, and that the Troops may rest in Security after their Fatigue. As the Safety of an Army depends in a great Measure upon the Diligence of the Out-guards, any Officer or non-commission'd Officer who shall suffer himself to be surpris'd by the Enemy, must not expect to be forgiven. When any Alarm is given, or the Enemy perceived

perceived to be in Motion, and that it is thought necessary to put the Troops under Arms, it is to be done without Noise or Confusion.

The Brigades are to be ranged in Order of Battle, by the Brigadier-general, at the Head of the Camp, in Readiness to obey the Orders they shall receive. False Alarms are hurtful to any Army, and dishonourable to those that occasion them : The Out-posts are to be sure the Enemy is in Motion, before they send their Intelligence : Soldiers are not to go beyond the Out-guards ; the Advance-centinels will fire at all who attempt to pass by the proper Bounds. It may be proper to apprise Corps that the General may, perhaps, think it necessary to order them off, the light Troops to retire before the Enemy, so as to draw them nearer the Army, with a View either to engage them to fight at a Disadvantage, or to cut off their Retreat. The Light-infantry of this Army are to have their Bayonets fixed, as the Want of Ammunition may sometimes be supplied by that Weapon ; and because no Man should leave his Post, under Pretence that all his Cartridges are fired, it must be remembered, that Bayonets are preferable to Fire, that the Service of the Campaign may fall as equally as possible upon the whole. The Corps shall do Duty, for their real Strength. No Change shall be made in the first Regulation, unless any particular Loss should make it necessary. All Cattle or Provision taken by any Detachment of the Army, is to be delivered into the public Magazine, for the Use and Benefit of the whole. Mr. *Wire*, the Commissary, will give Receipts for it. No Churches, Houses, or Buildings of any Kind, are to be burned or destroyed, without Orders. The Persons that remain in their Habitations, their Women and Children, to be treated with Humanity : If any Violence is offered to a Woman, the Offender shall be punished with Death : If any Person is detected in robbing the Tents of Officers or Soldiers, they will be (if condemned) certainly executed.

executed. The Commanders of Regiments will be answerable that no Rum or Spirits of any Kind be sold in or near the Camp : When the Soldiers are fatigued with Work, or wet upon Duty, the General will order such Refreshment as he knows will be of Service to them ; but is determined to allow no Drunkenness or Licentiousness in the Army : If any Sutler has Presumption to bring on Shore, in Contempt of the General's Regulations, such Sutler shall be sent to the Provosts in Irons, and his Goods confiscated. The General will make it his Business to reward, as far as possible, such as shall particularly distinguish themselves ; on the other Hand, will punish any Misbehaviour in an exemplary Manner. The Men to be acquainted with these Orders, and it is expected the Officers will take proper Care to explain them to them.

Sutherland off Cape Rouge, 1759.

The Enemy's Force is now divided, great Scarcity of Provisions is in their Camp, and universal Discontent among the *Canadians*. The two second Officers in Command gone to *Montreal*, or *St. John's*, which gives Reason to think that General *Amherst* is advancing into the Colony : A vigorous Blow struck by the Army at this Juncture may determine the Fate of *Canada*.

Our Troops below are in Readiness to join us ; all the Light-artillery and Tools are embarked at *Point Levi*, and the Troops will land when the *French* seem least to expect it. The first Body that gets on Shore is to march directly to the Enemy, and drive them from any little Post they may occupy. The Officers must be careful that the succeeding Body do not fire by any Mistake upon them that go before them.

The Battalion must form upon the upper Ground with Expedition, and be ready to charge whatever presents itself. When the Artillery and Troops are landed,

landed, a Corps will be left to secure the Landing-place, while the rest march on, and endeavour to bring the *French* and *Canadians* to a Battle. The Officers and Men will remember what their Country expects from them, and what a determined Body of Soldiers, inured to War, are capable of doing against five weak *French* Battalions, intermingled with disorderly Peasantry. Soldiers must be obedient and attentive to their Officers, and resolute in the Execution of their Duty.

Camp at the Island of Orleans, 1759.

The Army must hold itself in constant Readiness, to get under Arms, either to march or fight, at the shortest Notice.

ORDERS of REGULATIONS and SIGNALS to prevent the landing or being surprised by the Enemy. Given at Palais, 1762. Belleisle.

Parole, BATH; Counter-sign, DUNBAR.

The Officers commanding the different Detachments round the Coasts are to make themselves acquainted, with the Roads, to bring, in the Field Pieces, to the principal Bays in their respective Commands.

Signals to be made in Case of discovering any Embarkation of an Enemy. In Case the Enemies Embarkation should be discovered in the Night by any of the King's Ships, the Ship who first perceives it is to fire Guns and shew a great number of Lights, and false Fires, which she is to continue doing till *Belleisle* answers by Firing one Gun from that part of the *Island*, nearest to the Ship who makes the Signals, and the Ship of the Commander in Chief doing the same, and immediately to dispatch a Boat to the Shore, with an Officer to acquaint the first Field Officer he
can

can meet, how the Enemies Embarkation seems to direct their Course, of which the Field Officer will send immediate Notice to the Commander in Chief, and the Ship or Ships are to get under Sail, if the Wind and Tide permit, and use every endeavour to burn or destroy the Enemies Vessels. As it is possible an Enemies Embarkation may pass to the North West of the King's Ships in the Night undiscovered, if that should at any Time happen, it will be for the good of the King's Service that it should be immediately communicated, which may be done by Firing two Guns, and immediately after letting off two Sky-Rockets, to the Port to which the Discoveries made from the Port near *Viceaux Chatau* to be repeated from *Point Cardinal* at *Sauzon*, in order to be more distinctly heard by his Majesty's Ships, and if the Enemy proceed quite to the back of the *Island* leaving the Port near *Viceaux Chatau* behind them, the Signal to be repeated that Moment it appears certain. This will be of Use to the Sea Officer in directing his Ships round the *Island* if in the Day, an Enemies Embarkation is discovered at the Back of the *Island* unattended by Line of Battle Ships, it may be communicated by hoisting a *Dutch Jack*, at the *Flag Staff* on the *Citadel*, and firing one Gun, which will be answered by the Ship of the commanding Sea Officer by the same *Jack* at the *Ensign Staff*, but if the Line of Battle Ships make part of the Armament, it will be necessary it should be known, and may be told by hoisting a red *Pendant* at the *Flag Staff*, which will also be answered in the same Manner. The Officer commanding in that Part of the *Island*, where the Discovery is first made will immediately dispatch an Officer to the Commander in Chief to acquaint him of it. Signals to be made by the Cruizers of *Port Lewis* by Day. If the Enemies Ships should be discovered at Sea, the Ship who first perceives them to hoist a white Flag at the Main Top Gallant Mast Head, if they

they should be discovered coming out of the Harbour of Port *Lewis*, and then the Ship that gives the Alarm is to fire three Guns distinctly, and let off three Sky Rockets, and make all possible Dispatch towards the Ship stationed at *Sauzon*, still repeating the Alarm by Firing Guns, 'till the Ship stationed there answers by shewing three Port Fires, that is one from the Truck of each Mast-head.

The foregoing Signals being extreamly well calculated by the Officers of his Majesty's Navy, to prevent a Surprise, Governor *Forrester* recommends it to the Troops to pay particular Attention to them, as their Safety and Credit in a great Measure depends upon it, and especially those in the Night. Upon any Alarm in the Night the Troops will immediately get under Arms. The Infantry, thirty two rounds of Powder and Ball and three good Flints each Man, and their Arms in every particular, ready for immediate Service. The Corps of Artillery will repair to their several Posts ready for immediate Service.

The Officers commanding at the Post nearest that Quarter from whence the Alarm comes, will immediately send a Reinforcement to that Post of such number of Officers and Men as he shall judge necessary, and the several Detachments will reinforce their Posts in the same Manner.

If the Enemy should be so hardy as to attempt to land at any particular Post, there is no doubt of their being received with a Spirit and Resolution, becoming *British* Soldiers and of their maintaining their Posts to the utmost. Upon any Alarm, the Officers commanding the several Detachments, will send an orderly Officer, to the head Quarters to attend the Governor, and to receive such Orders as may be necessary to send to the Corps they belong to.

The Officers commanding in Villages, will take Care to keep their Centinels very alert in the Night,
that

that they may give them immediate Notice of any Alarm.

The Officers commanding in the different Bays are to be answerable that every Night the Masts, Sails, Oars and Rudder, belonging to such Boats as are in their respective Bays, are lodged in the Guard-room; and when the Owners have Occasion to go out, they are to examine their Passes, and be answerable that none go in them but the Numbers mentioned in their Passes. Patroles in the Night being the surest Method to guard against Surprise, and to keep the Garrison and Guards alert, they are to commence on *Sunday* next in the Manner following.

The Parties to consist of a Serjeant and five Men, one Corporal and three Men; the Corporal's Party to set out so as to reach the furthest Post at twelve o'Clock, where he is to halt one Hour before he returns: The Serjeant's Party to set out about twelve o'Clock, and remain so long at the farthest Post he visits, so as to reach that he first set out from near Day-break: He is to visit every Post and Centry going and coming, and to report to the Officer under whose Command he is, who will report all Extraordinaries to the Commander in Chief. Each Guard to mention, in their Report, the Hour they visited, and by what Patrole. An Officer's Patrole is also to visit each Post twice in a Week, varying the Nights and Hours according to the Direction of their respective commanding Officers.

Major *Nearn's* Regiment will take from *Palais* to *Port Sailis*; the Regiments in the Citadel, from the Glacis to *Port Toquet*; their last Patrole to be let in and out at the *Salle Port*; and whenever it is to be opened, the Officer of the Citadel-guard is to have his Guard under Arms till the Keys are returned to him.

Major *Martin's* Detachment takes from *Port Toquet* to *Port Blond*; Lieutenant Colonel *Oswald's* and Major *Hamilton's* will settle three Patroles from *Sauzon*
to

to *Port Shewell*, and Major Ogle's from *Port Danzick* to *Fort St. Lawrence*. When the several Officers have regulated the Manner of their furnishing their Patroles in the most convenient Way, according to their different Cantonments, they will report the Manner they have settled it to the Governor.

The Posts occupied by *Wedderburn's* being so far asunder, are to be visited by an Officer of each Company, between twelve o'Clock at Night and Day-break.

PRECAUTIONS a Governor or Commandant of a Garrison should use in Time of War.

[This is copied from MULLAR's *Attack and Defence*.]

A Governor should, betimes, and before an Enemy appears, examine the Works of a Place, repair those that want it, palisade the Covert-way, if it has not been done before, as likewise lay some horizontally on the Middle of the Parapets, which have no Revetement; clear the Ditches from the Mud, see that the Gates or Entrances are secure and well defended from being broken up; keep a strict Discipline and good Order in the Town, preventing the Garrison from molesting and abusing the Inhabitants; watch narrowly that no-body keeps Correspondence with the Enemies to betray the Place, for which Purpose the Governor should have some People, to whom he may trust, who are to get into Companies, unsuspected, to hear what passes, and give Notice of it to the Governor. If there are any old Aqueducts, or under-ground Passages, they should be stopped up, and Centries placed at their Entrances: If there is any River passing through or near the Town, Parties must be put into Boats in the Night-time, both above and below the Place, to watch that the Enemies do not come that Way. In frosty Weather, the Ice in the Ditches should be
E broke

broke every Day, and the Shoals laid a-top of one another towards the Place, which will make, in Time, a Kind of a Wall, so slippery as not to be passed over.

The Governor should send Parties every Day, both of Horse and Foot, to range about the Country, and in all the principal Avenues, for two or three Miles Distance from the Place, to see whether any Enemy approaches, or lies concealed thereabouts; and, in the Night, he should take Care that the several Guards keep strictly to their Duty, and watch carefully at their several Posts, not letting any-body approach the Walls, not even the Centries, without the Forms usual in such Cases. The Patrole should walk all Night about the several Posts, to see that the Centries do not fall asleep, and that they do continually listen whether they hear any Enemy approach, and, on the least Noise or Suspicion, give Notice to the Guards, and they to the Governor.

It is particularly on fair or market Days that the Gates should be strictly guarded; the Horse and Foot should be ready to assemble and march upon the first Notice given them: No-body should be let pass through the Gates, but who have some visible Business in the Town, or can give a good Account of himself: The Centries should not let any Coaches, Waggons, Carts, &c. to enter too close behind one another; and when they are loaded with Hay, Straw, or with any other Thing, wherein People may be concealed, they should be well examined before they are let pass; and they should never permit any Carriage to stop upon a Draw-bridge, on any Pretence whatsoever, to prevent their being drawn up, if Occasion require.

It is also on Holidays, Festivals, or Rejoicing-days, that the Governor should take more Care than ordinary, in seeing the Guards kept in the strictest Manner; and the military Discipline should, at all Times be

be kept with the utmost Rigour: No great Assemblies should be suffered as soon as it is dark.

As the Clergy are as apt to betray a Place, and often more than any other Set of People, as Experience has shewn, the Governor would do well to examine, now and then, the Churches and religious Houses, in the Night-time, to see whether there is any-body concealed there, or whether they have any under-ground Passages leading out of the Town, as there sometimes are. Had the Governor of *Cremona* taken these Precautions, he would not have been surpris'd as he was by Prince *Eugene*, who held private Correspondence with a Priest, who concealed a good Body of Men in a Chapel, which, together with others that were let in by Treachery, surpris'd the Governor in his Bed.

When the Enemy know that a Governor takes such and other Precautions, they will hardly venture to attempt the Surprisal of a Place, and should they be presumptuous enough to undertake it, it must certainly turn to their Confusion.

S T O R E S.

The Quantity of each Kind of Stores required for a Siege cannot be precisely determin'd, on Account of the various Considerations on which it depends; as on the Strength of the Place and Garrison, the Capacity of the Governor and Engineers, the Quantity of Artillery, Ammunition, Stores and Provision; lastly, on the Time, Place, Situation, &c. But as it is necessary to give some Idea to the unexperienced Officer, I shall here set down the Quantity of each Kind, for a Month's Siege, as estimat'd by Marshal *Vauban*, whom we chuse to follow, on Account of his great Experience and undoubted Judgment.

Stores required for a Month's Siege.

Powder, according as the Garrison is more or less strong, — —	} 8 or 900,000 <i>lb.</i>
Shot for Battering-pieces, —	6000
Shot of a lesser Sort, — —	20,000
Battering Cannons, — —	80
Cannons of a lesser Sort, — —	40
Small Field-pieces for defending the Lines, — }	12
Mortars for throwing	{ Shells, { — 24
	{ Stones, { — 24
Shells for Mortars, —	15 or 16,000
Hand-Granades, — —	40,000
Leaden Bullets, — —	180,000 <i>lb.</i>
Matches, — — —	10,000 <i>Braces.</i>
Flints for Muskets, of the best Sort, —	10,000
Platforms compleat for Guns, —	100
Platforms for Mortars, — —	60
Spare { Carriages for Guns, — —	60
	{ Mortar Beds, — — 30
	{ Spunges, Rammers and Ladles, 20 <i>Sets.</i>
Tools for working in the Trenches, —	40,000

Several Hand-jacks, Gins, Sling-carts, Travelling-forges, and other Engines proper to raise and carry heavy Burdens, as likewise some to carry Water to extinguish Fire.

Several Parcels of spare Timber for Bridges, Wheelwrights, Carpenters, &c.

There are, besides, several other Things necessary, as Miners' Tools, Mantlets, stuffed Gabions, Fascines, Pickets and Gabions, in great Quantities; Tools for Smiths, Carpenters and Wheelwrights; a Number of Horses for the Artillery; Carts and Waggons, such as can be procured in the Country, are also used upon Occasion.

INVESTING PLACES.

[*This is copied from MUIIAR's Attack and Defence.*]

Prerequisite to invest a Place with Success, the General ought to use various Stratagems to deceive the Enemy, and to prevent him from guessing his real Design; sometimes the Deceit may be carried so far as to invest another Place; at other Times marching with the Army, as if the General had a Mind to attack the Enemy, in order to drive them at some Distance from the Place, and then return quickly to invest it. In short, no Opportunity should be neglected to arrive before the Place, before the Enemy has either Time to throw in Troops, Ammunition or Provision, since the Success of the Siege depends chiefly on this Diligence.

The Place is invested in the following Manner:

A Body of 4 or 5000 Horse is detached from the Army, if the Country is open, or a Body of Horse and Foot, if it be full of Defiles or Woods, commanded by a Lieutenant-general and two or three Brigadier-generals, who march with all possible Speed, Day and Night, till they come within four or five Miles of the Place, where they halt, in order to consult and divide themselves into as many Parties as there are principal Avenues leading to it; then they march on, so as to arrive in the Dusk of the Evening at their several appointed Posts, much about the same Time; which Posts ought to be just out of the Reach of Cannon-shot from the Place.

This done, small Parties are sent to the very Gates to carry off Men, Cattle, and whatever may be serviceable to the Garrison. These Parties are to be supported by some Squadrons of Horse, and it would not be amiss if they receive some Cannon-shot, in order to discover the Reach of the Guns. In the mean Time, the rest of the Detachments take

their Posts in the most convenient Places, so as to prevent any Succours being thrown into the Town.

In the Day-time they keep without Cannon-shot ; but as soon as it is dark, the several Parties approach the Place as near as possible, so as to leave but small Intervals between them ; then turning their Backs upon the Town, and placing Guards before and behind them, to prevent any Surprise, Half the Troops are to keep always mounted, whilst the rest refresh themselves.

As soon as Day-light appears, they retire by Degrees, observing the Situation of the Place, and the Nature of the Works, as likewise that of the Ground round about it, till they come to their former Posts, where they place proper Guards towards the Town, and in all the principal Avenues towards the Country ; the rest repose themselves, keeping their Horses ready saddled for Mounting on a Minutes warning.

Parties are sent to Reconnoitre the Enemy, while the commanding Officer and Engineers pitch upon a proper Place for Encamping the Army, as soon as it arrives, and observe where the Line of Circumvallation is to be made.

The Day the Place is Invested, the Train of Artillery begins to march, with all the Stores and Ammunition necessary for a Siege, whilst, on the other Hand, the Army makes forced Marches, and arrives commonly within three or four Days after the Investing.

The Commander of the Detachment goes about two or three Miles to meet the General, in order to give an Account of his Proceedings, on which the General settles the Disposition of the Camp.

The next Day he rectifies any Mistakes which might have happened, and goes to Reconnoitre the Place himself, attended by the rest of the general Officers, and Chief Engineers, so that the Situation of the Line of Circumvallation may be determined.

This

This being done, the Encampment regulated, and the Troops placed in the Order agreed on, the General assigns to the other general Officers their Quarters; the Chief or Head Quarter is fixed upon, as also those for Provision, and the Park of Artillery. All these particulars are to be rectified, as soon as the Place for opening the Trenches is determined.

In the mean Time, small Guards are posted near the Town, in the most convenient Places, sustained by larger, to streighten the Garrison as much as possible, and the Engineers roughly trace the Line of Circumvallation, with Rods and Pickets only, in order to regulate the Encampment.

The Preparations which are generally made for an Assault on a considerable Out-Work, or the Body of the Place, are as follows,

[This is copied from Bland's Discipline.]

The number of Troops which are commanded on these Occasions, must depend on the Strength of the Place to be attacked, and the Number of Men who can be brought to defend it.

A Detachment from every Company of Grenadiers at the Siege, with a proper Number of Battalions, are ordered to join the Guard of the Trenches; but to prevent any Dispute about Precedency or Right, in making the Attack, the Battalions thus ordered should be those who are next on Command for the Trenches.

A Detachment of Hatchet-Men, with their large Axes, are likewise ordered, that if the Passage of the Grenadiers is obstructed, by meeting with large Palisades, either in the Covert-way, or in the Intrenchments behind the Breach, they may be ready to cut them down: For though the Bombs and Cannon from the Batteries break them generally down, yet they cannot always reach them; for which Reason

there should be Hatchet-men ordered, for fear they should be wanted.

There are likewise a sufficient number of Workmen ordered with Tools, and others to carry the proper Materials, such as Wool-packs, Sand-Bags, Gabions, Fascines, and Pickets, for the making of a Lodgement on the Breach, if so ordered, or an Intrenchment in the Body of the Out-work, to cover you from the Fire of the Town, and to secure you against any Attempt which the Besieged shall make to regain it.

Engineers are commanded with the Workmen, to direct them in making the proper Lodgments, that no Time may be lost in the doing them.

There are always more Battalions ordered than are necessary for the Attack, that some may remain as a Reserve in the Trenches, which in my opinion, should be those out of the additional number ordered, whose Tour of mounting the Trenches is furthest off.

The Battalions which compose the Guard of the Trenches, always march after and sustain the Grenadiers, and the additional Battalions only Sustain them.

The General Officers then on Duty in the Trenches command the Attack, unless the number of Troops so ordered may require a greater number of Generals than are then on Duty, or one of a superior Rank; in which Case, the Command always falls to the Eldest; but unless for the Reason just mentioned, the Command is never taken from the Generals of the Trenches.

The Disposition of the Troops for the Attack is generally made as follows,

The Grenadiers designed for the Attack, are to be posted at the Head of the Trenches, or that Part of them which lies nearest the Work to be attacked; the particular Disposition of whom is as follows,

I. A Ser-

1. A Serjeant and twelve or sixteen Grenadiers are drawn out for the Forlorn Hope; they are not taken from one Company, but one from each of the twelve or sixteen eldest Companies; or if they consist of the Troops of different Nations, they are then taken in proportion to the number of Battalions of each Nation.

2. A Lieutenant and thirty or forty Grenadiers formed by Detachment in the same Manner, to sustain the Forlorn Hope.

3. A Captain, two or three Lieutenants, with eighty or a hundred Grenadiers, formed also by Detachment, to sustain the Lieutenant.

4. A Detachment of two hundred Grenadiers, commanded by a Major, to sustain the Captain.

5. The whole Body of Grenadiers, according to Seniority of Companies, or Nations, under the Command of Field Officers, in Proportion to their Numbers. They should march as many in Front as the Ground they are to pass over will admit of, or the Breach contain.

6. The Hatchet-Men are to be Posted next to the Grenadiers, and to march immediately after them.

7. The Battalions, which compose the Guard of the Trenches are posted, according to Seniority, next to the Hatchet-Men, to sustain the Grenadiers.

8. The additional Battalions that are to go upon the Attack, are posted next to the Guard of the Trenches, in order to sustain them.

9. After the Troops designed for the Attack, the Detachments of Workmen, commanded by their Officers, are posted, that they may be ready to march, when ordered to make the Lodgments, with whom the Engineers are to march to instruct them.

10. The Battalions appointed for the Reserve, are posted next to the Workmen; and when the others march out to the Attack, they are to move up to the Head of the Trenches, that, if the Troops which
make

make the Attack require any Assistance, they may be ready to march out and sustain them, when they shall be so ordered by the General who commands the Attack.

That those who make the Attack may be as little exposed to the Fire of the Besieged as possible, all the Cannon on the Batteries are pointed against the several Works of the Town which defend the Breach; on which they are to fire incessantly, during the Attack, to keep the Enemy from the Walls.

The Signal commonly given for an Attack; is the throwing of a certain number of Bombs into the Town at the same Time; but if they are thrown into the Work which is to be attacked, or towards the gorge of the Bastion in which the Breach is made, (that being the Place where the besieged entrench themselves for the Defence of it) it will be of great Service to those who make the Attack: For as the Enemy will be obliged either to quit their Posts, or lie flat on the Ground 'till the Bombs have broke, it will, give the Grenadiers (if they have not far to march) sufficient Time to mount the Breach, and Attack the Entrenchment without meeting with much Opposition 'till they come there, provided the Batteries Fire at the same Time on the Defences of the Town.

When there are more Attacks than one to be made at the same Time, (which if the Breaches are ready, would be exceeding proper, in order to divide the Force of the Garrison) each must have the same Preparation and Disposition made for it, unless a greater Opposition is expected from the one than the other; in which Case, the difference then lies in the numbers ordered for each, but not in the Disposition or Order of the Attack.

Sham Attacks are sometimes made at the same Time with the real ones; but as they are intended to amuse the Besieged, to oblige them to divide their Troops, that those who make the real Attack may meet

meet with less opposition, the Workmen are generally omitted.

When an Attack is to be made on the Covert-ways, the Troops which are appointed for that Service are generally divided into several Bodies, in Order to attack at different Parts at the same Time. The number of Workmen, with the several Materials before mentioned, particularly Wool-packs, are greater on these Occasions; because an Attack on the Covert-way is generally designed to force the Enemy from thence, till a Lodgement is made on the Glacis, or as it is commonly, though erroneously, called the Counterscarp; for as the Counterscarp is the Wall of the Ditch which supports the Covert-way, to be lodged on the Counterscarp, properly speaking, is to be lodged on the Brink of the Ditch; but at present, that Term is generally abused, by saying that they are on the Counterscarp, when they are only at the beginning of the Glacis.

The most favourable Time for the making of an Attack, is in the Day: for as the Actions of every Man will appear in full View, the brave, thro' a laudable Emulation, will endeavour at the Expence of their Lives, to out-do one another; and even the fearful will exert themselves, by performing their Duty, rather than bear the infamous Name of Coward; the fear of shame being generally more powerful than the fear of Death. The Batteries will be likewise of great Service by their Firing with more Certainty on the Defences of the Town, and the Top of the Breach, to keep the Enemy from opposing the Grenadiers in mounting it. Besides in the Night, those who go on first will run great Danger from the Fire of those who sustain them, therefore an Attack on an Out-work, or the Covert-way, is generally a little after Sun-set, that Night may come on by the Time the Attack is finished, to favour them in making the necessary Lodgments: But this Rule will not hold good in an Attack on the
Body

Body of the Place ; for if Night should come on before the Town is entirely reduced to your Obedience, great Inconveniencies would attend both your own Troops and the poor Inhabitants ; to avoid which, it is generally made in the Forenoon.

I do not pretend, by what is mentioned in this Article, to lay down certain Rules ; but only to give a general Idea of Attacks, with the usual Preparations of Workmen, &c. Disposition of the Troops, with the Time of making them.

OF CAPITULATIONS.

[This is copied from Mr. Le Blond.]

WHEN a Governor, who defends a Place, sees himself reduced to the last Extremity, or he is ordered by his Prince to surrender, in Order to get better Conditions from the Enemy, and a more advantageous Composition, both for the Inhabitants and the Garrison, he does what is called, Order to beat the Chemade ; for which one or more Drummers are ordered to beat their Drums on the Rampart next to the Attack, to give notice to the Besiegers, that the Governor has some Proposals to make ; there are likewise put up one or more white Colours upon the Rampart, for the same Purpose, and one of them remains either on the Breach or Rampart, during all the Time of Negotiation. The same thing is done for asking a Suspension of Arms, to bury the Dead, and carry off the Wounded after a violent Attack.

The Chemade being beat, the Fire ceases on both Sides, and the Governor sends some Officers of Distinction to the Commander in Chief of the Besiegers, who deliver to him the Conditions on which the Governor proposes to surrender the Town. But as a Security for the Officers sent from the Garrison, the Besiegers send a like number into the Town. When the Governor's Proposals are not satisfactory to the General

General of the Besiegers, he prescribes the Conditions on which the Town is to surrender; he commonly threatens the Governor to allow him no Conditions at all, in Case he refuses those Proposed, within a certain Time, or when such or such a Work is finished. If the Besieged find the Conditions of the Besiegers too hard, the Officers return to their Homes, and the Drums are beat upon the Rampart, to make every body retire before Hostility begins, which is done in a very short Time after. It is to be observed, that during the Suspension of Arms, no Work should be done on either Side, either to secure the Besieged or Besiegers; notwithstanding that nothing should be undertaken during the Negotiation, nevertheless it is very necessary to be upon the Watch at that Time as much as at any other, for fear of being surpris'd by Stratagem, which is now a Day looked upon as lawful.

But let us suppose, that the Terms of Capitulation are agreed upon; the Governor sends two or three of his principal Officers into the Camp, and the General sends the same number and of the same Rank into the Town, as a Security for accomplishing the Capitulation, when the Besieged have performed every Thing according to Agreement, their Hostages are sent back to them again, and when the Besiegers have performed every Thing agreeable to the Agreement, their Hostages are likewise sent to them.

The Conditions of the Besieged may be of various Kinds, according to the different Circumstances or Situations in which they are; the most common ones are as follows,

1. That the Garrison shall march out through the Breach with their Arms, Baggage, Horses, Drum-beating, Matches lighted on both Ends, flying Colours, a certain number of Cannons and Mortars, with their Appurtenances, spare Carriages, Ammunition for a certain number of Charges, to be conducted

ducted in Safety to the Town agreed on, and which is usually the next belonging to the Besieged: It must be observed to insert, by the shortest Road, or the Road is specified in Words, which the Garrison is to march. When the Garrison has several Days to march, before it can reach the Town agreed on, it is required that the Troops should be provided with Provision and Lodgments during that Time.

2. One of the Gates shall be delivered up to the Besiegers, either the same Evening or at a certain Hour next Day, and the Garrison shall march out in a Day or two after, according to the Agreement made between both Parties.

3. The Besiegers shall furnish a certain Number of covered Waggon, that is, which are not to be searched, besides others to carry the Wounded and Sick, which are in a Condition to be transported; and, in general, all the Carriages necessary to carry the Garrison's Baggage, and the Artillery allowed by the Capitulation.

4. That the Sick and Wounded, which cannot be carried off, and are obliged to remain in the Place, shall have free Liberty to go away with every Thing that belongs to them, when they are in a Condition to do it; and they shall be furnished, in the mean Time, with Lodgings and Provision gratis, or otherwise.

5. There shall be no Indemnification required from the Besieged, for Horses taken from the Inhabitants, or for Houses burned or destroyed during the Siege.

6. That the Governor, the rest of the Officers under him, and those belonging to the Garrison, the Garrison itself, and, in general, every-body in the King's Service, shall freely go out of the Place, without any Manner of Reprisals of any Nature whatever, neither under any Pretext whatsoever.

7. If those who take Possession of the Town are of a different Religion from that of the Inhabitants, it must

must be inserted in the Capitulation, that the Inhabitants shall exercise their Religion without any Molestation.

8. That the Inhabitants, and those depending on the Place, shall be maintained in all their Rights, Privileges and Prerogatives.

9. It shall be at their Choice, to those who have a Mind to leave the Place, to go where they please, with all their Effects. It is sometimes stipulated, and it should be, that those of the Inhabitants who have shewn any Partiality to the Garrison, shall not be molested on that Account, which they might have done before and during the Siege.

10. It is also mentioned in the Capitulation, that all the Powder and Ammunition remaining shall be delivered to the Besiegers, and the Places where Mines ready loaded are, likewise shewn.

11. That all the Prisoners made on both Sides, during the Siege, shall be released.

It must be observed, that a Garrison must have Provisions and Ammunition, at least for three Days, in order to be entitled to a Composition, without which they will be obliged to be made Prisoners of War: But if the Besiegers have not enquired into it before the Capitulation is signed, it would be Injustice to make the Garrison Prisoners of War, after having found the Want of Ammunition and Provision.

When the Besiegers will agree to no other Composition than that the Garrison shall be made Prisoners of War, and the Garrison is not in a Condition to hold out any longer, it is generally endeavoured to make the Conditions as little onerous as possible: It is generally agreed,

1. That the Governor, and the rest of the principal Officers, shall keep their Swords, Pistols, Baggage, &c.

2. That the Subalterns, under the Captains, shall keep their Swords only, with their Baggage.

3. That

3. That the common Men shall not be rifled nor dispersed from their Regiments.

4. That the Garrison shall be conducted to a certain Place, by the shortest Road, where they are to remain Prisoners of War.

5. That the principal Officers shall have Leave for two or three Days to go where they please, to settle their Affairs.

6. When the Garrison quits the Place, it shall not be permitted to decoy the Soldiers, in order to desert from their Regiments.

When the Capitulation is settled, an Officer of Artillery from the Besiegers comes into the Place, who, together with an Officer of Artillery from the Garrison, take an Inventory of all the Artillery and Ammunition remaining in the Place; a Commissary of Provision enters likewise, to take an Account of the Provisions which remain.

When it is found necessary to surrender, and there are considerable Magazines stored with Ammunitions and Provisions, there is as much of it destroyed as can be done, before any Mention is made of capitulating, that so there may remain no more than what is necessary for capitulating, in order that the Enemy may reap no Benefit by them. If this should be done after the Capitulation is mentioned, the Besiegers may insist on not spoiling them; but what is done beforehand cannot be helped.

As soon as the Besieged have delivered the Gate of the Place to the Besiegers, the first Regiment of the Army enters and mounts Guard there.

The Day on which the Garrison is to leave the Place being come, the Besieger's Army is put under Arms, and ranged into two Files, between which the Garrison passes. The Time of marching being come, the General, and the rest of the principal Officers, head the two Files, to see the Garrison to defile before them.

The

The Governor marches at the Head, followed by the principal Officers, who make the Garrison march in the best Order possible. The eldest Regiments march commonly the first and last, and the rest in the Center, together with the Baggage. When there is any Horse, it is also divided into three Bodies, to march at the Head, Center, and in the Rear. Small Detachments of Horse and Foot are made, to march at the Sides of the Baggage, to take Care of its not being rifled.

The Artillery, allowed by the Capitulation, marches after the first Battalion.

When the Garrison is arrived at the Place agreed on, the Governor remits the Hostages of the Besiegers to the Escorte; and when the Escorte is arrived at the Army, the Hostages which the Besieged have left for the Security of the Escorte, Carriages, and other Things allowed by the Army, for escorting the Garrison, are released.

When the Garrison is made Prisoners of War, it is likewise escorted to the Place agreed on in the Capitulation.

Every Thing agreed on in the Capitulation ought to be looked upon as sacred and inviolable; and every Word ought to be understood in its plain and genuine Sense, without any forced Construction being put on it: Yet, as this is not always the Case, the Governor ought to be very cautious not to have any Word inserted but what is clear and plain, without admitting of any other Sense than that for which it is used: There are Abundance of Examples which prove the Necessity of this Precaution.

In the Capitulation of a Garrison, where there is a Citadel, into which the Garrison retires, there are some particular Conditions to be requested, such as follow.

That the Citadel shall not be attacked at that Side next to the Place; that the Sick and Wounded, which cannot be transported, shall remain in the

F

Place

Place, and in the Lodgings where they are ; and, after being cured, they shall be provided with Carriages and Passports, to retire to the Place agreed on in the Capitulation. No-body should be let into the Citadel but those who might be useful in its Defence ; the rest, who are useless, should by no Means be suffered to enter. It must be mentioned in the Capitulation, that these People shall be conducted to a neighbouring Place belonging to their Sovereign, which is to be named. It ought also to be agreed on, to have a certain Time allowed for the Garrison to march into the Citadel ; and it should be absolutely prohibited that the Besiegers shall make no Works whatsoever for carrying on the Approaches towards the Reduction of the Citadel, during the Time prescribed.

A maritime Town requires likewise some particular Conditions, relating to the Ships which might be in the Harbour. It ought to be agreed that they shall leave the Harbour the same Day that the Garrison leaves the Place, or when the weather permits it, in order to sail to the Port agreed on. They ought to keep all their Artillery, Ammunition, Provision, &c. If the bad Weather should oblige them to enter any Harbour belonging to the Besiegers, it should be mentioned in the Capitulation, that they shall be received, and that they shall be furnished with Necessaries to continue their Voyage ; they should be provided with Passports, and, in short, all the Security possible, in order not to be insulted by the Enemy's Ships, till they are arrived at the Port specified.

There might be said a great many other Things, with regard to the Subject treated on in this Work : It would require too great a Volume to enter into all the Particulars of which it is susceptible : All that has been said ought to be looked upon as only a summary Account of the principal Attentions which it requires, and what is most generally observed.

Besides, as a late Author with Reason observes, Places have different Defences, according to their Situations,

tuations, and as they are defended with more or less Forces. The Experience and Courage of a Governor ought to suggest to him the best Defence, to furnish him with Resources to repair any Accidents that may happen, and to make the best Advantage of the Besiegers' Mistakes and Negligence.

It is not sufficient to have Courage enough to defend the Place well, it requires, besides, a great Deal of Sagacity and Knowledge, not only in the Art of War, but likewise in Fortification.

The Defence is attended with a great many more Difficulties than the Attack, and it may consequently do more Honour to a General who distinguishes himself in it. The Superiority over an Enemy in an Attack, the Conveniencies there are in receiving fresh Forces and Ammunition, whenever they are wanted, and all other Necessaries, which may be had from the neighbouring Country; all this may serve to repair any Accidents that may happen during the Siege. It is not so in the Defence; no Faults are committed unpunished, in the Face of an understanding Enemy. The Attention must be equally over the Soldiers and Inhabitants; keep a strict Watch within and without; not to expose the Troops without great Necessities, but upon such Occasions as are visibly useful. In short, the Governor must create a Respect from the Enemy, by his Conduct and Sagacity; never to part with the least Part of the Works, till after having exhausted all possible Stratagems in the maintaining them. All this requires the greatest Capacity. .

Of the Qualifications requisite for the Commander in Chief of an Army.

[This is copied from M. SAXE's *Reveries concerning the Art of War.*]

The Idea which I have formed to myself of the Commander of an Army, is far from being chimerical, but, on the contrary, is founded upon Observation and Experience. Of all the Accomplishments, therefore, that are required for the Composition of this exalted Character, Courage is the first, without which I make no Account of the others, because they will then be rendered useless. The second is Genius, which must be strong and fertile in Expedients. The third is Health.

He ought to possess a Talent for sudden and happy Resources; to have the Art of penetrating into other Men, and of remaining impenetrable himself. He should be endued with a Capacity prepared for every Thing; with Activity, accompanied by Judgment; with Skill, to make a proper Choice upon all Occasions; and with an Exactness of Discernment.

He ought to be mild in Disposition, and free from all Moroseness and Ill-nature; to be a Stranger to Hatred; to punish without Mercy, and especially those who are most dear to him, but never through Passion; to betray a constant Concern at being reduced to the Necessity of executing with Rigour the Rules of military Discipline, and to have always before his Eyes the Example of *Manlius*. He should also banish that Idea of Cruelty which attends the Infliction of Punishments, and, at the same Time, persuade both himself and others, that Severity is a Term misapplied for exemplary Correction, and the necessary Administration of the martial Laws. With these Qualifications he will render himself beloved, feared, and, without Doubt, obeyed.

His

His Province is vastly extensive, comprehending the Art of subsisting his Army; of conducting it; of preserving it in such a State as never to be obliged to engage contrary to his Inclination; of choosing his Posts; of forming his Troops in a thousand different Dispositions; and of seizing the Advantage of that favourable Minute which happens in all Battles, and which is capable of determining their Success. All these are Circumstances of Importance, and, at the same Time, as various as the Situations, and the Accidents which produce them.——In order to discover these Advantages on a Day of Action, it is necessary that he should be disengaged from all other Kind of Business.

His Examination of the Ground, and of the Disposition of his Army, ought to be as quick as possible: His Orders should be short and simple, as, for Instance, *The first Line shall attack, the second shall sustain!* and so on. The Generals under his Command must be Persons of very shallow Parts indeed, if they are at a Loss how to execute them, or to perform the proper Manœuvre, in Consequence of them, with their respective Divisions. Thus the Commander in Chief will have no Occasion to embarrass or perplex himself; for if he takes upon him to do the Duty of the Serjeant of the Battle, and to be every where in Person, he will resemble the Fly in the Fable, which had the Vanity to think itself capable of driving a Coach. Being therefore relieved from the Hurry of the Action, he will be able to make his Observations better, will preserve his Judgment more free, and be in a Capacity to reap greater Advantages from the different Situations of the Enemy's Troops during the Course of the Engagement. When they are disordered, and a favourable Occasion offers, he must repair with all Speed to the Place, take the first Troops he finds at hand, and, advancing with Rapidity, put them totally to the Rout. These are the Strokes which decide Engagements,

ments, and win Victories. I do not presume to point out, exactly, either in what Part or in what Manner this is to be accomplished, because it is what can only be demonstrated upon the Spot, by reason of that Variety of Places and Positions which the Combat must produce. The whole is, to see the Opportunity, and to know how to benefit by it.

Prince *Eugene* was particularly eminent in this Branch of the Art of War, which is the most sublime, and the greatest Test of an elevated Genius. I have applied myself to the Study of his Character, and can venture to say, that I am not mistaken with regard to it upon this Head.

Many Commanders in Chief are no otherwise employed, in a Day of Action, than in making their Troops march in a straight Line; in seeing that they keep their proper Distances; in answering Questions which their Aids-de-camp come to ask, in sending them up and down, and in running about incessantly themselves: In short, they are desirous to do every Thing, and, at the same Time, do nothing. I look upon them in the Light of Persons who are confounded, and rendered incapable of Discernment, and who do not know how to execute any other Business than what they have been accustomed to all their Lives; by which I mean, the conducting of Troops methodically. The Reason of this Defect is, because very few Officers study the grand Detail, but spend all their Time in exercising the Troops, from a weak Supposition. that the military Art consists alone in that Branch. When therefore they arrive at the Command of Armies, they are totally perplexed, and, from their Ignorance how to do what they ought, are very naturally led to do what they know.

The one of these Branches, meaning Discipline, and the Method of fighting, is methodical; the other is sublime: To conduct the latter of which, Persons of ordinary Abilities should by no Means be appointed.

Unless

Unless a Man is born with Talents for War, and those Talents moreover are brought to Perfection, it is impossible for him ever to be more than an indifferent General. It is the same in other Sciences; in Painting or in Music the Professor must be indebted to Nature, as well as Art, in order to excel. This Similitude extends to all Things that pertain to the Sublime, which is the Reason that Persons who are remarkably eminent in any Science are so scarce, and that whole Ages pass away without producing even one. Application will refine the Ideas, but can never give a Soul; for that is the Work of Nature.

I have seen very good Colonels become very bad Generals; others again I have known, who were professed Disciplinarians, and perfectly clever at the Manœuvre of an Army in Camp; but if you took them from thence, to employ them against the Enemy, they were absolutely unfit for the Command of a thousand Men; they would be confused to the last Degree, and totally at a Loss which Way to turn themselves. If an Officer of this Stamp should come to command an Army, as he would have no other Resources than his Dispositions, his Views would extend no further than to secure himself by them: He would also be perpetually confounding the whole Army with his Orders, to explain them and to render them more intelligible. The least unexpected Circumstance in War may make the greatest Alterations necessary: If, in Consequence, therefore, he should attempt to change his Disposition, he will throw every Thing into a dreadful Confusion, and be infallibly defeated.

It is requisite, once for all, that one certain Method of fighting should be established, with which the Troops, as well as the Generals who command them-ought to be well acquainted; by which I mean the general Rules for an Engagement, such as, the taking Care to preserve their proper Distance in the March, their charging with Vigour, and the filling

up with the second Line any Intervals that may happen in the first. But this does not require any Demonstration upon Paper; it is the A, B, C, of the Troops, for nothing is so easy; and Generals ought by no Means to pay such great Attention to it as most of them usually do. It is much more essential in a Commander to observe the Countenance of the Enemy, the Movements he makes, and the Posts he takes Possession of; to endeavour, by a false Alarm at one Part, to draw away his Troops from another, which he intends to attack; to disconcert him; to seize the Advantage of every Opportunity, and to make his Efforts at the proper Places. But then to be capable of all this, it is necessary that he should preserve his Judgment quite free, and disengaged from trivial Circumstances.

Although I have dwelt so much upon the Subject of general Engagements, yet I am far from approving of them in Practice, especially at the Commencement of a War; and I am persuaded, that an able General might avoid them, and yet carry on the War as long as he pleased. Nothing reduces an Enemy so much as that Method of Conduct, or is productive of so many Advantages; for, by having frequent Encounters with him, he will gradually decline, and at length be obliged to sculk, and avoid you. Nevertheless, I would not be understood to say, that an Opportunity of bringing on a general Action, in which you have all imaginable Reason to expect the Victory, ought to be neglected; but only to insinuate, that it is possible to make War without trusting any Thing to Accident, which is the highest Point of Skill and Perfection within the Province of a General. If then Circumstances are so much in your Favour as to induce you to come to an Engagement, it is necessary, in the next Place, that you should know how to reap the Profits of the Victory which is to follow; and above all Things, that you should not content yourself with being left Master

of the Field of Battle only, according to the Custom which prevails at present. The Maxim, that it is most prudent to suffer a defeated Army to make its Retreat, is very religiously observed; but is nevertheless founded upon a false Principle; for you ought, on the contrary, to prosecute your Victory, and to pursue the Enemy to the utmost of your Power. His Retreat, which before, perhaps, was so regular and well conducted, will presently be converted into a confirmed Rout. A Detachment of 10,000 Men is sufficient to overthrow an Army of 100,000 in Flight; for nothing inspires so much Terror, or occasions so much Damage, as that Precipitation which usually attends it, and from which the Enemy is frequently a long Time in recovering: But a great many Generals avoid making the most of these Opportunities, from an Unwillingness to put an End to the War too soon.

I could find great Numbers of Examples to support what I have just been saying, if I was disposed to quote them; but, amongst the Multitude, I shall content myself with the following.

As the *French* Army, at the Battle of *Ramillies*, was retreating, in very good Order, over a Piece of Ground that was extremely narrow, and bordered on two Sides by some deep Hollows; the Cavalry of the Allies pursued it, at as slow a Pace as if they were marching to an Exercise; the *French* moving likewise very gently, and formed, at the same Time, twenty deep, or perhaps more, on account of that Narrowness of the Ground which I have just taken Notice of. In this Situation, an *English* Squadron approached two Battalions of *French*, and begun firing upon them, who, imagining that they were going to be attacked, immediately came about, and made a general Discharge; the Noise of which so alarmed the whole *French* Army, that the Cavalry took to Flight at full Speed, and all the Infantry precipitated itself into the two Hollows with the utmost Fear and Confusion,

Confusion, insomuch that the Ground was clear in an Instant, and not a single Person to be seen.

Can any one, therefore, after such an Instance, presume to boast of the Regularity and good Order of Retreats, or of the Prudence of those who permit a vanquished Enemy to make them unmolested? Commanding Officers who conform to these Tenets, make but bad Servants, and promote very slowly the Interests of their Sovereign. Nevertheless, I do not say they ought to give themselves totally up to the Pursuit, and to follow the Enemy with all their Forces; but only to detach proper Bodies, with Instructions to pursue as long as the Day lasts, and, at the same Time, to keep themselves constantly in good Order; because, after his Troops have once taken to Flight, they may be driven before them like a Flock of Sheep. If the Officer, who is detached upon such an Occasion, piques himself upon the Regularity of his Disposition, and the Precautions of his March, it answers to no Purpose to have sent him: His Business is, to push forwards, and to attack incessantly; for it is impossible that any Manœuvres can fail, but those which take up Time, and give Respite to the Enemy.

Thus, without here referring the Subject of Retreats to a particular Chapter, I shall conclude with observing, that they depend entirely upon the Capacity of the Generals, who conduct them, and upon the different Circumstances and Situations by which they are attended. Upon the whole a regular Retreat is impracticable, except a Conqueror is guilty of Remissness in prosecuting his Victory; for if he exerts himself properly in the Pursuit, it will very soon be converted into a thorough Flight.

The common Order of Battle, or general Disposition, ordered by the King of Prussia, to be inviolably observed by all Generals, Commandants of Regiments, and Subalterns in his Service; issued after the Battle of Molwitz.

1. The Van-guard shall not advance above two Miles before the Army, and shall take all imaginable Precautions continually to reconnoitre the Enemy.

2. The Army marching in Columns shall halt three Miles from the Enemy, and form in Order of Battle.

3. When the Army has advanced far enough, the Regiments shall range themselves in the Manner which shall then be commanded them.

4. The first Line, three deep, shall take great Care to keep in close Order, their Ranks strait and equal.

5. The Colonels, Commandants, and Subalterns, who command Platoons, ought to exhort the Soldiers to do their Duty and make the Affair appear as easy to them as possible.

6. The non-commissioned Officers, who are in the Rear of the Battalions, ought to beware of bringing the Soldiers into Confusion by useless Words, but to keep a watchful Eye over them.

7. If it shall happen that a Soldier endeavours to run away, and goes one Foot out of his Rank for that Purpose, the Officer or non-commissioned Officer in the Rear shall kill him on the Spot, under the Pain of being broke with Infamy.

8. As the King observed, that at the last Battle the best Soldiers were with the Baggage, he absolutely hereby forbids it for the future, and the Commandants of Regiments shall answer for the same, under the Pain of being Cashiered.

9. To this Effect each Regiment shall employ only three Captains at Arms with the worst Soldiers, the Sick, or others unfit for Action.

10. The

10. The Field-pieces, and such heavy Artillery as the King may have along with him, shall be advanced eighty Paces before the first Line.

11. The Grenadiers shall be posted behind the first Line on the Right, Left, and Center.

12. Three Brigades of Dragoons, of four hundred each, shall sustain the right Wing of the Cavalry, the rest shall be posted at the Center behind the first Line, where they shall wait his Majesty's Orders.

13. If the Cavalry commanded for the Attack shall be repulsed, as at *Molwitz*, without having done their Duty, the Grenadiers shall fire on them, even to exterminating them entirely.

14. The Majors and Adjutants shall take Care their Battalions do not fall into Confusion, and for that Purpose shall be continually riding along the Front of them.

15. The Corps de reserve, consisting of eighteen Squadrons and six Battalions, shall be posted twenty Paces behind the first Line, equally divided on Right and Left, and there wait Orders.

16. The Hussars shall sustain the left Wing, shall observe the Enemy's Attacks, and act in Consequence.

17. If the Battle is well disputed, and many are killed, a Regiment from the Right and another from the Left shall complete the first Line, where the General judges it most necessary: and the second Line shall advance towards the first.

18. The second Line shall be posted eight hundred Paces behind the first, their Firelocks shouldered; and the Officers shall prevent under Pain of being broke, any Soldier quitting his Rank.

19. The Officers who command Platoons shall carefully visit the Soldiers Arms, see that the Pan holds the Priming, and that every Thing is in good Order: If any Thing is wanting it must be instantly repaired.

20. The

20. The Soldiers should be exhorted to take their Aim well, to adjust their Shot, and not fire too high, to all these Points the Officers should give particular Attention.

21. As soon as his Majesty shall cause the Signal to be given by three Cannon Shot at the Centre, the Artillery shall, by a brisk Fire, throw the Enemy into Confusion, and shall continue their Fire till the King shall send them Orders to cease, by one of his Adjutant-generals.

22. The Captains and Lieutenants of Artillery shall point the Guns themselves, and not trust it to the Gunners.

23. After the Cannonade, the Signal for the Attack shall be given by three Cannon Shot.

24. When the Army in close Order, shall come within six hundred Paces of the Enemy, then in order to familiarize the Soldiers with the Fire, and to blind them with regard to the Danger, they shall begin to fire regularly by Platoons.

25. The first Line, continuing to advance charging, shall take great Care that no Regiment breaks the Line.

26. The Officers in advancing shall give the Word of Command distinctly and loud, and place themselves one Pace before their Platoons, that the Men may hear them, and they seeing the Men better, may prevent their hurting each other by an irregular Fire.

27. In Case the Enemy's Cavalry or Hussars shall pierce the first Line, then the Regiment where they have pierced shall face about, and charge them in the Rear.

28. If Victory declares for his Majesty, and that the Enemy have been obliged to yield, the Platoon Firing shall cease.

29. The Cavalry and Hussars shall then march out, and the King himself will chuse such of the Infantry,

fantry, as jointly with the Cavalry, shall pursue the Enemy.

30. During the Pursuit, no Soldier shall, under Pain of Death quit his Rank, to plunder or take Booty : The Officers shall answer for this.

31. The Regiments who are not sent on the Pursuit shall remain with shouldered Firelocks, until they are commanded to order them : But even then none should quit his Rank.

32. His Majesty's pleasure is, that this disposition shall on all Occasions be invariably followed.

Of changing an Order of Battle on a Plain : By the Chevalier Folard.

A Movement made by any one of the Wings, is of all Things the most dangerous and the most delicate, if it is performed in the Presence of the Enemy. The greatest Man among the Antients in this Way was *Scipio*. I do not spake here of the *Greeks* : they were no Doubt greater Tactitions, and had more Ability for general Movements than the *Romans*.

Our present Manner of ranging the Troops is more favourable, because the first Line covering the second, which by extending its Wings, marching at first by its Flank, and afterwards in Front, may by a Conversion, form on the Flanks of the first Line : But for these Movements there must be excellent Troops and intelligent Chiefs ; and besides, the Time must be well chosen, and the Movement performed with all possible Promptitude and Rapidity. That of the Marechal de *Luxembourg* at *Fleurus*, is worthy of a great Captain.

It is better, if you are the weakest, to fortify as much as possible the first Line, and refuse the Combat and keep back your Center, while you make your Wings advance. In such a Case, in order to fortify your Wings, you divide the second Line in two Corps towards the Wings ; and it is these two
Corps

Corps who partly ought to extend to the Right and Left, and surround the Enemy with all their Vigour: for, if the Wings are defeated, the Center will not hold out. The Movements of the Wings are not so difficult as those of the Center: But these again being less common, and requiring more Knowledge, are also more capable of deceiving the Enemy. *Vegetius* says, in his general Rules, "that a warlike and well-disciplined Army ought to engage by their Wings."

Of the Measures to be taken for the Junction of two Armies. From the Tactique of Bardet de Ville-neuve.

A general finds himself sometimes under the Necessity of fighting, when it is his Interest to join an Army separated from his, and that the Enemy's Army has got between the two to prevent their Junction. To succeed on these important Occasions, the Chiefs of the two Armies appoint a Rendezvous at a proper Place, and at the same Hour, on the Right or Left of the Enemy, in order to endeavour to join before he has Intelligence of their March. Or if it cannot absolutely be done without fighting the Enemy in the Post he occupies, they take their Measures so justly, that both Armies arrive and attack him at the same Time. To this Purpose they advertise each other of the Day and Hour each will arrive at the Place appointed, and agree on the Signals to be seen or heard; to which the one and the other ought to answer, to be the more certain that they are in Condition to begin the Attack. If this is well concerted and well executed, it is almost impossible for the Enemy's Army not to be defeated, who are commonly seized with a Panic, when they find themselves attacked in Front and Rear.

If they find they can make the Junction by either Side, and that there is a River or a Defile, which one
of

of the two Armies must pass to join the other ; that which is not to pass ought to march first, and construct at the Place appointed, Redoubts or Retrenchments, and guard them with Infantry, to be Masters of the Passage. In Case the Enemy march to engage the other, the first shall then pass the River or the Defile, to succour it.

If the Enemy marches to one of the two, that which he marches against shall endeavour to avoid the Action till the others come up, which may be done by taking an advantageous Post.

Means proposed for the Retreat of an Army invested by another : By Monsieur Bardet de Villeneuve.

If it happens that an Army, having too far advanced into a Country, is invested by an Army greatly superior, and which absolutely cuts off their Provisions (an Inconvenience a General ought, above all Things, to avoid ;) in such a Case, if they occupy a Post the Enemy dares not attack, and that the General finds he cannot subsist without risking a Battle, he ought to try it, but with the greatest Briskness and Vigour, after having informed his Troops that this is the only Means left, and that they must conquer or die. A brisk and determined Resolution often succeeds ; and it may happen that this Army will not quit their Post with Advantage, or that they may receive a Convoy which will put them in a Condition to maintain it. To succeed in this, the Convoy must be brought about by that Side of the Country which they believe to be the easiest, and with all possible Secrecy ; and when they are informed it is near, the General should go to meet it with all his Forces, and risk the Loss of some of his Troops to receive it : For nothing should be spared, if the Safety of the Army depends on this Convoy.

If you judge it as difficult to procure the Arrival of this Convoy, as to quit your Post ; or even, tho'
it

it can be brought, you foresee you will be obliged to quit your Post some Time thereafter, and that the Delay will be of no Advantage to you; it is then better to make a brave Effort to get out of this Difficulty, than to delay it; because an Army, shut up in this Manner, is always ruined by Sickness and Diseases, and for want of proper means of treating the Sick. You should then have the Precaution to leave all your Equipage in the Post you quit, with some Troops to guard it, if that can be done with a few: For if it is necessary to leave many, you should rather carry all along with you, for fear of weakening yourself too much. If, on the other Hand, you apprehend the Equipage may incumber or hinder the Retreat, which otherwise might be performed, you ought to make no Hesitation in burning a part of them, and keeping only the best, or what will incumber you least. When the General has taken all the necessary Measures, and made all the proper Dispositions for his Retreat, he ought to begin it at Night, after having well observed the easiest Place he can pass at, and having given the Alarm at several different Places, that the Enemy may be uncertain by which he intends to retire. If the Baggage is carried with you, the Troops must cover it: that is to say, if the Enemy is before you, the Baggage must march behind the Troops; if, on the contrary, the Enemy is in your Rear, it must march before you, escorted: It must be placed on the Left, if the Enemy are on the Right; and if they are on the Left, it must be on the Right. If the Enemy are in your Front, your best Troops should form the Van-guard; for Success in such an Enterprize often depends on the first Stroke. You should use the same Precautions for your Flanks or Rear, if you foresee that it is there they will make their chief Efforts. It may happen, that, being in the Night-Time, the Enemy will only make feeble Attacks to retard your march till Day, or till all their Forces,

G

which

which may be dispersed, are joined. In this Case the General ought not to stop, but defend himself retiring, without insisting too much on sustaining such of the Troops as may be attacked, even if he should suffer the Loss of some of them. There are Occasions where it is necessary to sacrifice a Part to save the rest: But as it is a disagreeable alternative, it is only resolved on, in the last Extremity. It may also happen, that the Enemy has divided his Forces, so that when one Part harrasses your Army, the other is detached to seize a certain Post: You have then no other Part to chuse, but that of attacking those who harrass you. In such a Case, the principles for the Disposition of the Attack are regulated by the nature of the Ground on which the Enemy is, and the kind of Troops proper for it.

Precautions to be taken when obliged to establish your Quarters in a Woody or Mountainous Country.

[This is copied from the Essay on the Art of War.]

A perfect Knowledge of the Country is always necessary, but more particularly when you establish your Quarters in a woody or mountainous Country. The more it appears difficult or impracticable to turn them and separate them, the more Precaution is required on your Part. A gorge or opening which you have not sounded and examined, a Road whose turnings you do not know, a Valley whose Bottom you are not perfectly acquainted with, Heights which appear inaccessible, and which you have neglected to occupy, will sometimes furnish an Opportunity to the Enemy to penetrate by the Rear of your Quarters, and to attack and carry them.

With this Knowledge, a General will not only keep his Quarters in Security, but he will spare his Troops from much Fatigue, by placing no unnecessary Guards, and not multiplying the Patroles; which

which he will be obliged to do, if he has only a superficial Knowledge of the Country.

After he has taken his first Precautions, he will place all his Infantry in a first Line, in the most considerable Places, such as small Towns or large Villages. To this Infantry he will join Hussars, to be able to push Detachments forward, whether for the Security of the Quarters, for carrying off the Forage between him and the Enemy, or for establishing Contributions, if he finds means so to do. The Dragoons can according to the Circumstances, do Duty either on Foot or on Horse-back: He will therefore place them on the Flanks of the Cavalry, to cover them.

Besides the Retrenchments with which he ought to fortify every little Town or Village, he ought also to cut a Trench at the Head of all the Gorges or Roads leading to the Quarters, placing Barriers on them for the Passage of the Detachments of Hussars or Dragoons: And these Trenches must be exactly guarded by Infantry.

In a mountainous Country, the Detachments ought not to advance so far as in a plain Country, because it will be easy for the Enemy to get between them, and cut them off from the Quarters, by sending Infantry by Bye-paths, where the Hussars cannot penetrate. These Troops will place themselves between the Quarters and the Detachment, after it has past, as we have said, and when it is attacked in Front, they will attack it in Rear, and so place it between two Fires.

You must place Centinels on the Heights, with Orders to advertise you if they see any Troops coming, but positively not to fire; that the Enemy may believe the Quarters are not on their guard, and so be drawn into a sort of Ambuscade, which will give a dislike of coming to attack your Quarters, or even of approaching to examine them; and this is necessary in the Beginning, because the Troops

are there to repose, and to subsist during the Winter, that they may be in Condition to take the Field early in the Spring. However, if the Enemy should attempt to attack some of the Quarters, as, by the Precautions mentioned, he will find the Troops under Arms ready to receive him, he may probably be defeated, or at least be obliged to retire: and it is very likely such a Check may disgust him, and he will leave the Quarters in Tranquility for the future. This Tranquility, true or supposed, ought not to prevent the Commandant from sending out Detachments to reconnoitre and examine the Country exactly. For such Detachments, some non-commissioned Officers, with six Men each, sent out on different Sides, will be sufficient. Those Detachments which are sent for Foraging, or for establishing Contributions, must be more considerable, but not too numerous: They should be composed of Infantry, Hussars, or Dragoons, according to the nature of the Country.

If the Gorges leading to the Quarters are crossed by different Roads, or if these Roads all lead to the high Road which conducts to the Quarters, you must, during the Night, place a guard of Hussars or Dragoons where these Cross-Roads meet, and Centinels or Vedettes along all the Roads.

This guard will retire at Sun-rising: It will be useless in the Day-time, as the Enemy seldom chuse to attack then, and even in that Case, the first Attack must be made at the Trenches and Barriers which are before the Quarters, at the entry of the Roads or Gorges: And consequently the Troops will have Time enough to take Arms, and occupy the Post ordered.

If, for want of Forage, the General cannot keep his Cavalry, as they are of no Use among the Mountains, he may send them behind him, to Places where they can be in Safety, and where they can find Forage, unless his Project is to quit that Country, and
carry

carry on the War in another, where they can act more easily.

But if the Circumstances oblige him to remain in the Mountains, and that Forage is wanting, he will only keep the Hussars and Dragoons; the first will serve for the advanced Detachments; and the others will be useful on Foot as Infantry.

Though Cavalry are ill-placed in the Mountains, sometimes it is necessary to establish them there, when the Plains have been laid waste; but they should never be placed but in a second Line, and in that part of the Country the least mountainous, most open, and most abundant in Forage. Care especially should be taken to remove them the farthest from any Danger of being attacked, both because they cannot act, and even as it is impossible for them to defend themselves against Infantry, which the Enemy certainly will employ in such a Country.

It would be needless to speak of the Precautions to be taken by Cavalry in a mountainous Country, because it cannot be supposed that Cavalry alone are placed there. These Precautions can only serve to facilitate their Retreat, but never for their Defence: And the Enemy will soon be Master of the Country, if you have nothing but Cavalry to oppose him with.

Precautions for securing the Cavalry's Quarters in a plain covered Country.

[This is copied from the Essay on the Art of War.]

It will be sufficient to mention here the Means *George Basta* (a *Spanish* General of Note, in the Beginning of the seventeenth Century) made Use of for securing his Quarters of Cavalry: They appear to be the better, as they are very simple; beside, the Authority of a Man so conversant in the military

Art, and so generally approved of, ought to be regarded as a respectable Law.

George Basta supposes a Village in the Middle of a Plain; he establishes his Guards, great and small, on all the Roads which lead to the Quarters; he sends out his Detachments as far as they can possibly go without the Risk of being cut off: He placed his Guards 150 Paces from the Quarters, the small advanced Guards in Proportion, and the Vedettes fifty Paces before the small advanced Guards.

In the Night-time, the Vedettes formed a Kind of Circle round the Quarters, near enough to hear each other: They were continually marching towards each other, as if they intended to change Place: By this perpetual Movement no Person could come from or go to the Quarters, without being seen or stopp'd. The Detachments which were advanced, secured the exterior Part of the Quarters to a great Distance. Besides all this, there were Patroles of three or four Men, who kept on the Roads 3 or 400 Paces from the Vedettes, in case the Enemy should escape the Detachments. These Patroles, as well as the Detachments, stopped from Time to Time, and listened attentively to hear if any Troops were coming towards them. If the Enemy had Garrisons near, the Detachments had Orders to advance as near them as possible; first to secure the Tranquility of the Quarters, and then to keep the Enemy in Awe, and prevent their coming to disquiet them, by shewing them they are always on their Guard.

These Precautions appear to be excellent: But if such a Quarter is attacked by Infantry, what can Cavalry do in a Village? All it can do, is to profit by the Intelligence given them by the advanced Parties, to send off their Baggage, and then make their Retreat; for it is impossible to defend a Town or Village with Cavalry against Infantry. Whatever Precautions are taken, by retrenching the Village, making Loop-holes through the Walls of the Houses,
(and

and advancing Detachments. The Cavalry, when attacked by Infantry, have no Resource but getting into a Plain, in order to act: Ramparts are not made for Cavalry; it is from their Swords they are to expect Victory or Safety. Such Quarters of Cavalry alone, invented by *George Basta*, serve only to prove the Necessity of Vigilance in War; but this Sort of Conduct in Quarters of Cavalry ought not to be followed but when they are greatly exposed. It is always a bad Position for Cavalry to place them alone in any Country, however open it may be: It is even very seldom that the Circumstances oblige you to do so: But if the Situation of Affairs, or the Want of Forage, require it, the Precautions of *George Basta* are excellent, and ought alone to be employed for preventing all Surprise.

Of the Vigilance of each Commandant in his own Quarter.

[This is copied from BLAND's Discipline.]

As soon as the Troops are entered and established in a Quarter, he who commands ought narrowly to inspect all the Environs, and, upon his own Knowledge, decide the Places where Posts are most necessary, and fix them there. He will then mark out a Place of Parade, or general Rendezvous, where the Troops shall assemble on the first Intelligence of the Enemy, to be ready to march with Promptitude, on the first Order from the General.

No Person whatever shall quit the Quarter, on any Pretence, without Permission from the Commandant. If the Officer himself gives the Example of this Exactness, the Soldier will not murmur against the Severity of the Discipline. The Troops in Quarters shall, as in Camp, be in Messes, and the Commandant shall daily, Morning and Evening, receive the Report from the Officers of each Troop.

A Field-officer shall be daily appointed to visit the Messes, besides the Visiting-officer of each Company ought to make, of which he shall make his Report to the Commandant, who shall himself, every Day, visit the Posts on Foot or on Horseback, that he may be well assured that every Thing is in Order ; As soon as he has examined every Thing, and rectified what he finds wanting or amiss, he shall go and make his Report to the General ; or if, by the Proximity of the Enemy, or the Distance from the Head-quarters, there may be some Risque in absenting himself, it will be sufficient to send a Field-officer to the General, to inform him of what passes in the Quarter. The Commandants at each Quarter shall observe the same Order, as well those in the Rear as those the most exposed.

It is indispensibly necessary to have always advanced Detachments : This is a general Rule, without any Exception. It is by this the Quarters are secured, or at least put beyond all Surprise. This Detail does not belong to the particular Commandant of each Quarter ; it is the Province of the General who orders it ; they only obey : However, as it is to be presumed they may be attacked, they ought to take every Sort of Precaution not to be surprised. The Duty of the particular Commandant is to watch over the interior Security of the Quarter, and that the General to provide for its exterior Security, without neglecting the interior. Indolent Minds, whom this Multiplicity of Precautions drag from Sloth and Repose, sometimes murmur against the General, and accuse him of Apprehensions and Uneasiness. The Officers ought to reprove and suppress such Reproaches among the Soldiers, which only dishonour those who make them : But the General or Commandant ought to take no other Notice of them but to punish them where they appear. The Glory of Success, which will ever follow such
Precau-

Precautions, is a sufficient Recompence for those mean, wretched Imputations.

It is not the Multiplicity of Guards, nor their Force, which rather embarrasses them, that gives Security to one or many Quarters; it is the Manner of disposing and adapting them to the Situation of the Place. In fact, of what Use are very strong Guards, when, by the Distance from others, they cannot be succoured; whereas Guards, placed at a reasonable Distance, can assemble on the first Signal, and compose a little Army, which appears to increase in Proportion as it is attacked. The advanced Detachments, the exact Discipline of the Troops, and Vigilance of the Chiefs, are the Sources of the most glorious Successes.

The more the Enemy appears to be tranquil, or the greater Distance you are from him, the more should you be on your Guard: Security, founded on the Distance of the Enemy, is very dangerous: Often the Enemy's feigned Tranquility is only a Stratagem to surprise you, to defeat you with more Certainty, and which may draw along with it the Defeat of several other Quarters.

The Manœuvres to be opposed to the Enemy's false Alarms.

[This is copied from the Essay on the Art of War.]

A vigilant Enemy does not fail to give an Alarm to the Quarters, true or false, as often as he can; and he can as often as he will. He has often no other View but to disturb and fatigue them, and, by keeping them always alert, to prevent their Re-establishment during the Winter; or to abate the General's Vigilance against true Alarms, by often deceiving him with false ones: A Negligence which will soon communicate itself among the Troops, and the particular Commandants, if great Care is not taken to prevent it,

it, will afford an easy Opportunity of surprising and carrying off, at least, some of the Quarters.

But a wise and prudent General knows how to prevent these Inconveniencies, by preserving Order in the Quarters, by taking the necessary Precautions for their Security, by making the Infantry take Arms without Beat of Drum, and the Cavalry mount without Sound of Trumpet; in order that the Enemy, deceived by this Silence, and believing them asleep, may advance into the Quarters to fall upon them. When he finds them under Arms, his Surprise alone will occasion his Defeat, or, at least, will make him abandon his Enterprize, and begin his Retreat; but which he cannot perform without being greatly har-
rassed. It is on such Occasions a General's Genius appears. It is not sufficient to know how to secure his Quarters; he must turn to the Enemy's Disadvantage the very Manœuvres they intended to be his. This particular Way of doing it seems very favourable; and, if it succeeds, they will have no more Cause to fear false Alarms, because the Enemy will be convinced of the Vigilance of the Troops. However, you must not pursue your Advantage too far, for fear of an Ambuscade; but, so long as you see the Country clear before you, you ought to profit by the Enemy's Surprise, and charge him with Vivacity.

It is always necessary to bring the Troops under Arms without Noise. It is a general Rule that, on all Occasions, Silence is favourable in War: The Orders of the Commandant are then better understood, and executed with more Promptitude. This Silence, which does not prevent your being on your Guard, prevents the Enemy, troubled and dispirited by seeing himself deceived in his Project, from continuing to give you false Alarms, and restores Tranquility to the Quarters. The Enemy himself will begin to think of allowing his Troops to repose,
after

after the fruitless Fatigues they have suffered in these Attempts.

As to the Cavalry, they ought also to saddle and mount without any Sound of Trumpet; for whatever good Order there may be in the Quarters, the Trumpets on one Hand, the Cries on another, the Hurry to saddle their Horses, and to find their Arms, occasion Confusion, and make the Orders to be ill understood. Quarters in such Confusion may be easily defeated by inferior Numbers, who, perhaps, only came to give a false Alarm, or to reconnoitre.

In general, good Order in the Quarter depends on the Knowledge and Understanding of him who commands, and on the Vigilance and good Discipline he causes to be observed. It is by such Conduct that he not only has nothing to fear from the Enemy, but even draws from their Attempts his own certain Success. The Reputation he will acquire among the Enemy by his Vigilance, will procure him Advantages beyond his Expectation.

1. *Of the Grand Manœuvre.* 2. *Of the Column.*

[This is copied from M. SAXE's *Reveries concerning the Art of War.*]

ARTICLE I. *Of the Grand Manœuvre.*

I am persuaded, that unless Troops are properly supported in an Action, they must be defeated; and that the Principles which M. de Montecuculli has laid down in his Memoirs, are founded upon Certainties. He says that Infantry and Cavalry should be always reciprocally sustained by each other, nevertheless, we, in direct opposition to his measures post all our Cavalry upon the Wings, and our Infantry in the Centre, each to be sustained by itself only, which Disposition, as the Interval between our Lines is usually five or six hundred Paces, is in it-
self

self sufficient to intimidate the Troops ; because it is natural for every Man, who sees Danger before him, and no Relief behind, to be discouraged ; and this is the Reason why even the second Line has sometimes given Ground, while the first was engaging ; which is what many others, probably, as well as myself, have seen happen more than once ; and although it seems hitherto to have escaped the Reflection of any, it cannot, as I have already observed, be imputed to any other Cause than the Frailty of the human Heart. The following is a Transcript of what the abovementioned illustrious Author says upon this Subject.

In the Armies of the Antients every Regiment of Foot had a certain Proportion of Horse and Artillery ; the Horse were divided into two Sorts, under the Appellation of *heavy armed* and *light armed* ; the former of which wore Breast-plates : Why, therefore, would they incorporate these distinct Bodies together, unless it was on Account of the absolute Necessity of such a Connection, and the mutual Service they would be capable of rendering each other by acting in Concert, according to the modern Practice, where all the Infantry is posted in the Center, and the Cavalry upon the Flanks, at the Extent of several thousand Paces ; how is it possible they can support each other ? If the Cavalry are defeated, it is evident that the Infantry, becoming abandoned, and their Flanks exposed, must unavoidably share the same Fate, from the Enemy's Cannon at least, if not by other Means, which happened to the *Swedes* in the Year 1614. When their Cavalry had been driven off the Field of Battle, they perceived the Error of their Disposition, and, in order to remedy it, posted some Platoons of Musqueteers between the Squadrons ; but all Efforts were then ineffectual, for the Squadrons were totally disordered, and the Platoons not having any Body of Troops at hand to retire to, nor Pikemen to cover them, were put to the Sword ;
for

for how could they possibly retreat to their Infantry, which was at so great a Distance.

It is for these Reasons that I have posted small Bodies of Cavalry at the Distance of thirty Paces, in the Rear of my Infantry, and Battalions of Pikemen formed in the Square in the Interval between my two Wings of Cavalry, in the Rear of which, likewise, it will be able to rally, if broken or repulsed.* My second Line of Cavalry will never fly, so long as they see the square Battalions in their Front, and their Countenance will also animate the first. The Battalions will maintain their Ground, from the Persuasion of being soon succoured by the Cavalry, who, under the Cover of their Fire, and a vigorous Resistance, will presently form again and renew the Charge with fresh Courage, in order to retrieve their Honour, and wipe out the Disgrace of their late Discomfiture: The Battalions will moreover serve to cover the Flanks of the Infantry. Some, very improperly, post small Bodies of Infantry between the Intervals in their Line of Cavalry: The Weakness of this Disposition is alone sufficient to intimidate them; for the Foot see that if the Cavalry are defeated, they must inevitably be cut to Pieces; and if the Cavalry, who have also a Dependence upon them, make but a brisk Movement, they leave them behind; so that perceiving they have lost their Assistance, they soon fall into Confusion, and being put to Flight, leave the Flanks of your Army open to the Enemy.

Others

* Perhaps it may be objected, that this Cavalry, if repulsed by the Enemy, will fall into Disorder upon the square Battalions; but it should be observed, that the Marshal furnishes them with Pikes, on Purpose to render them capable of opposing the Shock of Cavalry; besides, the Intervals between them are so large that, however precipitate the Horse might be in their Retreat, it is improbable they would fall upon them; but, for a farther Security, they might be covered with *Chevaux de Frise*.

Others again post Squadrons of Cavalry amongst their Infantry, which is equally absurd; for the Destruction of Horses from the Enemy's Fire occasions Disorder, and if the Cavalry give Way, the Infantry will presently do the same.

But I would ask, in what Manner Squadrons in this Disposition are to act? Are they to stand fast, Sword in Hand, and wait the Attack of the Enemy's Infantry, firing and advancing upon them with fixed Bayonets; or must they make the Charge themselves? If they do the last, and are repulsed, which will most probably be the Case, they must break their own Infantry in their Retreat, because it will be difficult for them to find their former Posts again, and the Intervals allowed them being small, will certainly have been filled up; for the Battalions are subject to such great Inconveniencies, from their present Method of forming, that the Disorder of a few Files, whether occasioned by their own Movement, the doubling of the Ranks, or the Enemy's Cannon, is sufficient to throw the whole into irretrievable Confusion. — It is far otherwise with my Centuries; they follow each their respective Standard, and keep in a Body together: All Disorders among them are easily remedied, and if not, so long as they are guided by their Standards, which are to range in a Line with that of the Legion, no fatal Consequence can ensue, because the Officers will be able to keep the Ranks straight, which it is impossible for them to do in the Battalions; and this being also one great Defect in *M. De Folard's* Column, I shall take the present Opportunity to give my Sentiments of it.

Of the COLUMN.

Notwithstanding the very great Regard I have for the *Chevalier Folard*, and the high Esteem I entertain for his ingenious Writings, yet I cannot agree with him in Opinion concerning the Column. It is striking,

ing, indeed, and formidable in Appearance; and the Idea of it, which first presented itself to my Imagination, seduced for a while my Judgment, till, by trying it in Execution, I became convinced of my Error. The following Analysis, or Calculation, will be necessary to discover the Defects of it.

In Action, every Man is to be allowed one Foot and Half, or eighteen Inches Distance, and the Flanks of the Column are to face outwards, which Flanks, in whatsoever Order they are formed, must be always composed of at least forty Files in Depth, upon twenty-four Ranks in Breadth; thus, when faced, it consequently takes up sixty Feet for its Flank-front: In marching, it requires one hundred and twenty, which is double its former Distance; because a Man will not be able to move, without kicking his Leader, if confined within the Space of eighteen Inches; but to march with Celerity, must be allowed three Feet; so that when the Front of the Column marches first off its Ground, the Rear will be obliged to wait till it has gained sixty Paces; and likewise to march the same Distance, after the Front has halted; as it must make Intervals in the Flanks, will expose them to great Danger. This Defect will naturally be increased, in Proportion to the Number of Files which are added; so that a Column, consisting of two hundred and forty, will occupy, in its standing Order, three hundred and sixty Feet in Length, and, of Course, seven hundred and twenty, marching. After having pierced the Enemy, its Flanks are to face to the Right and Left outwards, in order to charge their broken Ranks: But as it takes up double its proper Allowance of Ground, its Files will remain open, and large Intervals be left, especially if the Charge is to be made with Speed and Impetuosity, which ought to be the Property of the Column.

The Chevalier is very much deceived in imagining it to be a Body capable of moving with Ease, in so much that I do not know any one so unweildy, particu-

particularly when it is formed in the Manner just above described. If it happens that the Files are once disordered, either by marching, the Unevenness of the Ground, or the Enemy's Cannon, which last must make a dreadful Havock amongst them, it will be impossible to restore them to good Order again; thus it becomes a huge, inactive Mass, divested of all Manner of Regularity, and totally involved in Confusion. — I do not think, notwithstanding what the Chevalier says, that the Weight of it can be of any great Consequence; for the Men do not push one another forwards, in the Manner which he describes; neither is it possible they should, while they take up three Paces Distance, which they are obliged to do in marching.

In retreating, it has the Advantage of Battalions formed in the Square; not that it is capable of marching with more Celerity, but because every Part moves together; and although it be even pierced by the Enemy's Cavalry in Pursuit, yet the Injury it will thereby sustain is inconsiderable, for they must be exposed to a Fire from behind, and the Interval they make will presently be closed up.

Two Battalions, formed back to back, will answer the same purpose marching by Files and facing to the Right and Left outwards, when necessary. This Method of retreating must be performed very slowly, for otherwise the Rear will soon be separated from the main Body, by Reason of that Distance of three Feet, which every Man will take up in marching. But to believe that the Column is an active and light Body, is an Error of which I am thoroughly convinced; insomuch that I am even induced to think it a dangerous Disposition when composed of but twenty-four by Sixteen, on account of the Difficulty of forming it again, when once broken or disordered. Properly it should never consist, in Breadth of more than two Battalions, formed each

four

four deep, which does not at all confound their natural Order.

What I have been saying concerning the Room which every Man must necessarily take up, shews the Danger of marching by Files. If you do it in the Presence of an Enemy in order to fill up any Interval, you must inevitably be undone; for your Battalion will then occupy double it's former Quantity of Ground, and you will also require double the proper Time to form it again; as for Instance, supposing your Battalion consists of six hundred Men, with Files closed, it will cover two hundred and twenty five Feet; if it is to gain Ground to the Right, the right hand Man, will have marched that Distance before the left hand Man has moved; and after the former has halted, the latter will have the same Number of Feet to march, before the Battalion can be in it's proper Order, to face to the Front again; which together, takes up as much Time as would be necessary to march the Distance of four hundred and fifty Feet, or one hundred and eighty Paces. If then the Enemy is a hundred Paces off, and seizes this Opportunity to charge you, he will have the Advantage of as much Time, before you can be formed, as is required to march eighty Paces; the Danger of this Movement naturally increases in Proportion, as you augment the Number of Troops that are to make it; for if you have four Battalions, and the Enemy is at the Distance of eight hundred Paces, you are exposed to as great a Disadvantage. In this, I proceed upon geometrical Principles, to which it is necessary to have recourse on many Occasions in War.

The Tact or Cadence is the only effectual Remedy for these Defects, on which the Event of all Engagements totally depends. It is what I have dwelt upon the longer, on Purpose to demonstrate the great Efficacy of it, and at the same Time, to expose the Ignorance of our modern Disciplinarians; who notwith-

H

standing

standing, they concur with me in regard to the Reality of these Errors, remain yet unacquainted with any other Method of avoiding them in Practice, than by marching slow.

We cannot even bring a single Battalion drawn up but four deep to the Charge, without being subject to the Inconvenience of which, I have been speaking, unless we march at a Snail's Pace, our Ranks and Files when we approach the Enemy, are open. This monstrous Defect in our Discipline is what gave Rise to the present Method of Firing; for to charge otherwise, it is necessary to move briskly and together, which cannot be done, allowing only eighteen Inches to a Man, without the Tactick.

It is also impossible that the *Romans* and *Macedonians*, as their Manner of Forming was in close and deep Order, could engage without it; it is a Term which is very familiarly used, but has hitherto, methinks, been totally misapplied or mistaken.

I have frequently been surpris'd, that the Column is not made Use of against the Enemy, on a March; for it is certain, that a large Army always takes up then, three or four Times more Ground than is necessary to form it. If, therefore, you get Intelligence of the Enemy's Route, and the Hour at which he is to begin his March, although he is at the Distance of six Leagues from you, you would have very sufficient Time to intercept him; for his Front usually arrives in the new Camp before his Rear has quitted the old. It is impossible to form Troops that take up so much more than their proper Quantity of Ground without making large Intervals, and a dreadful Confusion. Notwithstanding which, I have very often seen the Enemy suffer it to be done without Molestation, when one would have imagined, that nothing less than Fascination could have prevented his taking the Advantage of an Opportunity so favourable to him.

The

The present Subject might furnish a very useful Chapter ; for how many different Countries will occasion such straggling Marches, and in how many Places may one make an Attack without risking any Thing. How frequently does it happen to an Army, to be divided on it's March by bad Roads, Rivers, difficult Passes, &c. and how many Situations will enable you to surprize some Part of it. How often do Opportunities present themselves of separating it, so as to be able, although inferior, to attack one Part, with Advantage, and at the same Time, by the proper Disposition of a small Number of Troops only, prevent it's being relieved by the other ; but all these Circumstances being as various and undeterminate as the Situations which produce them, nothing more is required, than to keep good Intelligence to acquire a Knowledge of the Country, and to assume the Courage to execute ; for as these Affairs are never decisive on your Side, and may be so on that of the Enemy, the Risk you run is inconsiderable, when compared with the Advantages you may gain. The Manner of Attack, is with the Heads of your Columns, which are to charge as fast as they arrive, and to be sustained by the others which follow ; so that your Disposition is made in a Manner spontaneously, and you attack an Enemy without either Order or Support, and totally unprepared to make any Defence.

OF PARTIES.

[This is copied from the Essay on the Art of War.]

An Army can never be informed of the Enemy's Motions in too many different Ways ; and as to Spies, as some may be discovered, others prevented giving their Intelligence in Time, it is very necessary to have Parties continually patrolling without, composed according to the Nature of the Country

into which they have to penetrate; and by whom the General is informed of every Thing which passes, within a reasonable Distance of his Camp.

Parties, as well Soldiers as Officers, are often commanded by their Tour in the Roster: Often also the General chuses particular Volunteer Officers to command them, who are well acquainted with the Country they are sent into, and capable of examining narrowly, and giving a distinct Account to the General of every Thing he wants to be informed of. It is better too, the Men should be Volunteers and approved of; for, if they are taken by the Roll, a Malingerer, or bad Marcher, may be found among them; besides they should be Men of Resolution and known Courage.

The general Object of Parties is, to be informed of every Thing that passes in the Country, and to hinder those of the Enemy from knowing what they are doing, or what they intend to do. But it is not an easy Thing to conduct a Party properly; and we see very few capable of acquitting themselves of it. This proceeds, no Doubt, from their not applying to this Part of the Service when young, which is however of great Use on many Occasions, and in which consequently all Officers ought to be instructed. A young Man who wishes to be a Proficient in the Military Business, and would make his Way quickly, can never use more certain Means to accomplish it, than attending an experienced Partisan, and endeavouring, by this Example, to become capable of leading a Party: It is in this Way, he will in a short Time see many Stratagems and many Actions: And this is the Road which leads to his being often employed himself, and often gives him the Opportunity of doing great Service to the General in Chief.

A General Officer is often detached with a considerable Body of Troops, when the General wants to be

be informed of the Enemy's Situation, to watch their Motions, or to harraß them.

Often also a private Officer is detached with a small Party of Infantry or Cavalry, either for the same Purposes, or to carry off Forage, make Prisoners, or even to inform the General of something he wants to know, previous to the undertaking some Enterprizes.

The Officers who Command a Party, ought to be perfectly acquainted with the Country, the Roads, the Fords or Bridges over Rivers, the Defiles, Woods, Villages, Farm-Houses or Hamlets, in the Neighbourhood where they are to pass: They ought to make Acquaintance with the Mayors and Bailiffs, and other Magistrates there, and endeavour to have private Intelligence from them; for this Purpose, let him behave to them with Generosity, make them Presents, never permit any Harm to be done their Towns or Villages, and carefully protect every Thing which belongs to them. A Partizan who has taken these Precautions, will always march with Safety, and never can be surprized; for he will be exactly instructed of the smallest Parties the Enemy can send out, either from their Garrison or their Army.

A Party, composed only of Infantry, should never march but through a covered Country, and never expose themselves in a Plain, in the Day-time. By this Precaution, which is essential for their Safety, they are, at the same Time, less subject to be discovered, and may the more easily execute what they are ordered. The Partizan ought also to use all Sorts of Stratagems, by Marches and Counter-marches, to arrive at the Place he has in View, and return in the same Manner: He ought to be capable of resolving quickly, and at one Glance of his Eye to determine whether to engage or retreat, according to Times and Occasions. He must know, when weak, how to post himself to Advantage, how to dress an

Ambuscade properly, and how to avoid falling into those of the Enemy: He must preserve his Ammunition, and take particular Care that his Men's Arms are always in Order. He must, in short, keep his Troops in the most exact Discipline, and make them even observe strict Silence, which is absolutely necessary for Parties.

Let him give great Attention never to halt in Villages, Farm-Houses, or Gentlemen's Seats: If his Soldiers need Refreshments, let him send an intelligent sagacious Soldier to the nearest Village to seek them, and when brought out of the Village, detach one or two to fetch them to the Place he has chosen for his Halt; which should be proper for concealing his Men, which prevents the peasants seeing or counting his Numbers, and fit for Defence, if he is then attacked. He ought also to shun passing near Villages, Castles, &c. whether he marches by Day or Night, that he may not be discovered by the barking of Dogs, or seen by the Peasants, who may inform the Enemy; neither should he in the Day-time keep the high Roads, or march through a very open Country.

It is fit he should carry a Watch, Pen, Ink and Paper, with him, that he may be able to mark to the General, the Hour he sends him any Report; mentioning what has happened to him, or what he has discovered that is of Importance. The Soldier he sends with his written or verbal Report, ought to be privately instructed by him, where he will find the General, if the Army has marched concealing from the rest the Motions of the Army; whether it has made or is to make any, so that the Enemy can never be informed by those who may desert from him. If he wants to inform the General of something of very great Consequence, he ought to detach two or three Soldiers, who must take different Routes; so that one may arrive safe, in Case the rest, by Malice or Misfortune fall into the Enemy's Hands.

If

If two equal Parties engage in an open Field, it is the Courage and Hardiness of the Partizan which decides the Success: If to form an Ambuscade in a close covered Country, and then surprize the Enemy, who, for want of proper Precaution, has fallen into it, he owes his Success to his Judgment and Sagacity: If he takes any Prize or Booty, let him distribute it with the utmost Equality. Other Rules for the Conduct of a Partizan would be needless: He must find them in his own Capacity and Experience.

General Instructions to the Van-Guard.

[This is copied from BLAND's Discipline.]

The Van-guard is to march before the Regiment; the Distance which they are to be advanced cannot be absolutely determined, since it must depend on the Nature of the Country you march through; so that in an inclosed Country it cannot exceed two hundred Yards, without losing Sight of the Regiment, which they are by no Means to do, unless they have Orders: And in an open or champaign one, they ought not to be above three or four hundred Yards, lest they should be attacked and cut off by a superior Party, before the Regiment could come up to their Relief.

The Van-guard is to reconnoitre, or view every Place where any Number of Men can lie concealed; such as Woods, Copfes, Ditches, hollow Ways, straggling Houses or Villages, through which you are to march or pass near.

That the Regiment may not halt upon every Occasion of this Nature, the Officer who commands the Van-guard must order a Serjeant and six or twelve Men to advance before him, but not to march out of his Sight, who are to reconnoitre all suspected Places, and where there are more than one of those Places to be looked into at a Time, by having them both on

the Right and Left of the Road, he is to order out another small Party for that Purpose.

When there are any Woods or Villages which will require some Time to view, the Officer must halt his Guard at some Distance from them, and remain there till his advanced Parties have reconnoitred them thoroughly, and sent him an Account that all is safe, after which he is to march on.

Upon every Halt of this Kind he is to send one to the commanding Officer of the Regiment, to acquaint him with the Reason of his halting; upon which he should halt the Regiment as soon as they come in Sight of the Vanguard; and when it marches again, the Regiment is to do so too.

The Reason for the Van-guard halting at some Distance from a Wood or Village, till it is reconnoitred, is for fear of an Ambuscade; for should they march up too near, before it is viewed, they might be drawn too far into the Snare to be able to extricate themselves, and, by that Means, draw the Regiment into the same Misfortune; whereas, by halting at some Distance, that Danger is avoided, at least so far, that they cannot surprise you by falling upon you unprepared, which is all that can be expected from an Officer.

The same Reason holds good for the Regiment's halting, when the Van-guard does.

When the Van-guard discovers any Body of Men, it is to halt, and the Officer is to send back immediately and acquaint the commanding Officer with it, and to know what particular Commands he has for him: And when he discovers any Thing further, he is to do the same, whether it relates to their Numbers, Quality (as Horse or Foot) Movement and Disposition, that he may take his Measures accordingly. Thus I have given as full an Account of the Duty of a Van-guard as the Nature of the Thing will admit of, or that general Rules can direct.

General

*General Instructions to a Rear-Guard.**[This is copied from BLAND's Discipline.]*

The chief Instructions of a Rear-guard is to take up all the Soldiers who shall fall behind the Regiment, and march them Prisoners, in order to their being punished for leaving it, which but too many will do, without a great Deal of Care, in order to plunder or marode.

This Precaution is therefore absolutely necessary, without which a great many Men may be lost, and the Country suffer extremely by being left to the Discretion of those Gentlemen.

The Officer commanding the Rear-guard must therefore be very diligent in examining every Place in which the Soldiers can hide themselves, to prevent these Disorders.

As the Rear-guard is not to be at any great Distance from the Regiment, it will likewise prove a Security, in preventing their being fallen upon in the Rear, before they have Notice to prepare for their Defence; for the Moment that any Troops appear in the Rear, the Officer of that Guard must send and acquaint the commanding Officer with it, that he may have Time to make a Disposition suitable to the Occasion; to gain which, the Officer of the Rear guard is to oppose them in the best Manner he can: But if the Superiority of the Enemy obliges him to give Way before he can receive further Orders from the commanding Officer, he must endeavour to join the Regiment by a slow and regular Retreat, in making a Stand at every Spot of Ground than can be disputed. If he finds it impracticable for him to join the Regiment, by his Retreat being cut off, he must endeavour to gain the nearest Place of Security, whether Inclosures, Woods, hollow Ways, Morasses, Villages or Towns, in order to save himself and Party; but this should not be attempted while there are any Hopes left of his putting a Stop to the Enemy, or his

his joining the Regiment, since it will be weakened by his going off.

Of AMBUSCADES.

[This is copied from the Essay on the Art of War.]

Ambuscades are Snares set for the Enemy, either to surprize them when marching without Precaution, or by posting yourself advantageously, and drawing them there, by different Stratagems, to attack them by superior Force.

An active and vigilant General oftener employs Stratagem than open Force in War, and, by multiplying small Advantages, procures, at length, a decisive one. Ambuscades are the surest Means of procuring these small Successes; they are of two Kinds, great and small. It is very seldom the first Kind can be practised against an able cautious General; they may even be extremely dangerous, if discovered by the Enemy, and therefore, though we speak of the Manner of employing them successfully, we insist less on the Necessity of them than of small Ambuscades, which are frequently employed, and with little Risk. These small Ambuscades have different Objects in View; they serve to carry off Magistrates or Hostages for the Payment of Contributions; Merchants who transport Provisions to the Enemy, &c.

A Partizan may also form an Ambuscade when he is well assured, by good Spies, of the Day and Road one of the Enemy's Convoys is to pass, whether with young Horses to remount the Cavalry, Recruits, Provisions or Ammunition, and that the Escort is weaker than his Party. The Advice he receives from Spies or Friends, who give him Intelligence, gives him often the Facility of taking, by an Ambuscade, one of the Enemy's Generals, detached to reconnoitre some particular Place, to be cured of his Wounds, to receive some Person of Distinction, or otherways.

When

When you have a Spy intriguing enough to be instructed, and to give Advice of the Day and Road the Enemy are to go a foraging, an Ambuscade may be formed near the Road to carry off some of the Horses or Foragers: You may also lie in Ambuscade within the Chain of Forage, and fall on the Foragers when dispersed; but you must observe to plant your Ambuscade, in both these Cases, in a Place distant from the Enemy's Troops who form the Chain, that is to say, behind the Center of the Foragers, and have sure Retreat as soon as you have struck your Stroke.

You may also plant small Parties of Light-troops in Ambuscade in different Places, without the Chain of Escort, who, as soon as the Foragers disband, give the Alarm at the different Posts, so that the Enemy, not knowing on what Side the real Attack is, are obliged to re-assemble the Escort; and, as much Time is lost in this Way, Night comes on before the foraging is compleated, and the Cavalry are fatigued, weakened, and insensibly destroyed. Ambuscades may also be placed to carry off the Men or Equipages who remain behind when the Army disperses to go to Quarters, or when the Troops, who are to compose it, are assembling in the Spring.

Ambuscades are drest to carry off Prisoners or Inhabitants of the Country, in order to gain Intelligence. In this Case, the Prisoners ought not to be allowed to remain or talk together, lest they concert some false Intelligence to deceive you.

In short, Ambuscades may be employed to carry off Couriers, or small Convoys of the Enemy, who pass between their Army and their great Towns: But in all these Cases the Parties who form them must be attended by good Guides, who know all the Bridges, Rivulets, Fords, Passes, Marshes, Footpaths through Woods or over Mountains, that they may retire through Roads unknown to the Enemy.

It

It is not necessary that these Kind of Ambuscades should be composed of greater Numbers than the Escorts of the Enemy, especially if these Escorts must march through Defiles.

If you form an Ambuscade, where the Safety of your Retreat does not depend on your Numbers, but entirely on their Address and Celerity, it should be composed of light Cavalry, and of no more than are judged necessary to defeat that Part of the Enemy's Corps against whom they are intended.

When your Retreat is short, but through a rough covered Road, the Ambuscades should consist of more Infantry than Cavalry; but if the Retreat is to be long, and by a broad open Road, you must have no more Infantry than what the Half of your Cavalry can carry behind them, while the other Half, having nothing to embarrass them, form the front or rear Guard, and make Head against the Enemy. If you would disquiet and harra's the Enemy by small but frequent Ambuscades, you must, from Time to Time, form a great Ambuscade, to over-awe the Enemy, and prevent their sending out Detachments against your small Parties.

Ambuscades should march with great Secrecy, and generally in the Night-time; they ought never to carry Dogs with them, because they bark, nor Mares with Stone-horses, because of their neighing; they ought to take as few Servants with them as possible; and strictly forbid them, or the Party, to fire at Game, if it should spring.

They should endeavour to enter the Place of Ambush, so as to leave no Trace behind them; and for this Purpose they may turn the Shoes of the Horses of the Rear-guard, or throw down their Cloaks for the rest to walk along.

They should not arrive at the Place of Ambush long before they expect the Enemy, because Accidents may happen to discover them, or their Men if fatigued, may fall asleep.

It is needless to mention the Places fit for Parties to lie in Ambush; every Place is proper; a hollow Way, a small Wood, a dry Ditch, the Grotto of a Mountain, a Garden, a Court-yard, a Field of Corn, a thick Hedge, in short, every Place covered by Art or Nature. It is he who commands who must chuse the Spot where he is not exposed to be discovered, and at hand to carry off his intended Prize.

Great Ambuscades have so immediate a Connection with Marches, Surprises of Armies, and Battles, that to have a just Notion of the Manner of employing them with some Hopes of Success, it is necessary to combine what will be said hereafter on these three Subjects.

The Object of great Ambuscades is to carry off a Corps of the Enemy left to their own Strength; to surprize a Convoy, or the Equipages of the Army; the Attack of an Army on march; the carrying off a Part of a Garrison; or taking a Town by Escalade.

Great Ambuscades are formed in Woods or Vallies, and Care taken to place small Parties in Ambush all around, or on the neighbouring Eminences, to stop and arrest Hunters, Travellers, or other Passengers, who might discover your main Body.

Great Ambuscades may also be formed in a Village or Town, whose Inhabitants favour you; where, for Fear of being betrayed by some Spy, you leave Centinels all around, publishing a strict Order, on Pain of Death, not to pass beyond your Centinels. On a Steeple, or the highest Place, there you appoint an Officer for Centinel, who, with good Glasses, discovers the Approach of the Enemy, their Numbers, and the Road they keep; and informs you of these Particulars, that you may have your Troops in order of Battle in the Streets: But if the Officer on the Steeple informs you that the Enemy is superior, and that you have not Time to retire, you must draw up your Troops in an opposite Street, or in a Church, placing only a few of your Men, disguised and dressed like Towns-

Townsmen, in the Street through which the Enemy are to march, to try to prevent any Inhabitant informing them. This Sort of Precaution supposes you have taken all others proper for your Defence; for if the Enemy has the least Experience he will not enter the Village till he has searched and examined it.

Plains covered with Corn or Brushwood are very commodious for placing Infantry in Ambuscade, because from thence you can see at some Distance the Number of the Enemy, and the Manner in which they approach; you can march out in Order of Battle to attack them, or if you find them superior, you have a free Retreat on all Sides.

When you know the Enemy's Army is to march through a Country which produces little Water, especially if the Season is hot, you may, if the Ground permits it, dress a strong Ambuscade near some Fountain or Rivulet by the Road. The Success in this Case is the more certain, that the Soldiers, fatigued with the March, never fail to disband, each trying to be the first to quench his Thirst before the Water is troubled by the rest; and as the Current of the Water has dug a Course for itself, and has formed a hollow Way where the Corps are obliged to defile, this renders it the more easy to attack one Part of them before or after they passed, with great Advantage.

If it is necessary to keep in Ambuscade more than one Day, it is supposed they have brought Provisions with them, and they must chuse a Place where there is Water; lest, if at a Distance, the Soldiers are discovered going to fetch it.

The Troops in Ambuscade must be placed without Confusion, so as to be able to make their Sally in Order.

As soon as they have arrived at the Place where they are to form the Ambuscade, the commanding Officer of each Troop must review them: If any
Soldier,

Soldier, Servant, or others are missing, he must immediately inform the Commander in Chief, who ought, in that Case, to retire with the Party.

He must place his Centinels where they can see farthest on all Sides; but that they may not themselves be perceived at a Distance, by the Colour of their Regimentals, or the Shining of their Arms, the Centinels ought to place their Firelocks on the Ground, and lie themselves amongst the Leaves or Bushes on the Eminence where they are placed; for from the Summit of a little Hill or rising Ground, a Man sees more than a Mile: If there is no rising Ground, they can place the Centinels towards the Top of thick bushy Trees, behind Branches, or covered by some small Brush-wood they may have carried with them for the Purpose.

If the Centinel's Post is so far from the Ambuscade that they cannot be heard, or come, or send another with their Intelligence without the Risk of being perceived by the Enemy, in walking over some open Field betwixt the Ambuscade and the first or farthest off Centinels, other Centinels must be placed at smaller Distances, under the Cover of some hollow Way, Rock, or Bush, that the Intelligence may pass by Word of Mouth from one to the other.

But lest these Advices should not be clear, or to the Purpose, and may throw you into Confusion, these Centinels should be Officers, Serjeants, or intelligent Corporals. This is particularly necessary with regard to the Centinel the most advanced on each Side; that is to say, he who has the farthest View.

It is necessary to have on the Right, the Center, and Left of the Ambuscade, three small Parties of Cavalry, who on the first Advice from the Centinels are ready to ride after and arrest Deserters, or Peasants, who may discover your Ambuscade.

If you know the Road a Detachment of the Enemy intends to take, and that this March is through your Country, place at the Side opposite to your Centinels
some

some Flocks or Herds of Cattle scattered along the Hills, within Sight of your Ambuscade; the Desire of carrying them off will make the Enemy disband, or at least weaken themselves by sending Parties to carry them off. Instead of Shepherds, place Soldiers disguised to tend these Flocks, who seeing the Enemy advance, shall seem to retire with their Flocks; and when the Enemy have got very near, these Soldiers shall make their Escape, the best Way they can on Horses given them for that Purpose.

You may also draw the Enemy into your Ambuscade, by bribing their Guides, who, in Concert with you, may propose a Road where you shall be in Ambush; or may draw them there by giving false Advice of the Force of your Party, or of your Project. They may also be drawn into an Ambuscade, by detaching a Party to carry off Cattle, or make some Prisoners hard by the Enemy: In such a Case, this Party must be sent out before any of the Soldiers who compose it can suspect your Design; so that if any one should desert, he can never inform the Enemy of your intended Enterprize; the Officers of the Party must alone be informed of your Intentions, and you must mention the exact Hour at which they shall begin to shew themselves, lest the Enemy following them should arrive at the Place of Ambuscade before you are posted.

But this party must not retire so near the Ambuscade that the Enemy's Patroles may discover it before their main Body is engaged in it. The Centinels placed near the Road, by which the Enemy march, who are pursuing your small Party, shall retire before they are discovered, and the Party shall continue their feigned Flight, till they are got considerably beyond the Ambuscade, to oblige the Enemy to advance the farther; for the Troops which compose the Ambuscade ought not to begin to charge the Enemy till their main Body is opposite to your Front, in order

to attack their Flanks, that the Action may be complete and less dangerous.

To prevent your Ambuscade being discovered too soon, you must caution your Men to remain quiet and concealed till they get a certain Signal; even though they should hear some Shots fired by their Troops in Ambuscade, which may happen either by some Firelocks going off by Accident, or by some one firing at Game which may spring.

The Signal may be planting a Standard on some Eminence within Sight of your Troops, by sounding a Charge with several Trumpets or Drums united, or some other warlike Sound different from what the Enemy use on their March, and which may be easily distinguished by your own Troops.

You may also place some Straw, so as to be seen by all your Troops, and, by setting Fire to it, give the Signal for the Attack; or by firing a certain Number of Shots, or throwing one or more sky Rockets from an Eminence, which may be seen by the whole. But in all these Cases, the Persons destined to give the Signals must be People of Intelligence, who give them exactly at the proper Time, when the Enemy are thoroughly engaged in your Ambuscade.

When the Troops of the Ambuscade are greatly superior in Number to those of the Enemy whom you expect, divide them in two Corps, which you may place at a greater or smaller Distance from each other, in Proportion to the Breadth of the Road or the Ground the Enemy may occupy from his Vanguard to his Rear-guard; so that these two Corps may sally at once from their Ambuscade, and charge the Enemy when just between the two.

Even if the Troops are not numerous enough to be divided in two equal Bodies, each of which are superior in Number to the Enemy, the Defeat will still be the greater, if you charge their Van-guard with their main Body, and their Rear-guard with a

Detachment; but if the Nature of the Ground makes it easy for the Ambuscade to attack the whole Flank of the Enemy's Troops when defiling, it will be needless to divide the Troops, it being more advantageous to charge them in Flank.

If the Enemy have in their Rear a considerable Party at Hand, to sustain their Rear-guard as soon as engaged, it is necessary to preserve a Detachment of your Troops, in order to oppose this Party, in Case they should advance to charge your Troops who have attacked the Enemy's Rear.

When the Ground (because of its Inequality, it being covered with Woods, or any other Obstacle) prevents your seeing whether the Enemy have in their Rear such a Party as is just mentioned; in such a Case, you must have the Precaution to keep in Ambuscade a small Corps de Reserve; and your Troops the farthest advanced in the Ambuscade, must use the same Precautions, if the Front of the Enemy's main Body is preceded by a Detachment; without which, there would be great Danger that this Detachment, by wheeling to Right or Left, might take your Troops in Flank, when engaged by the Enemy's main Body.

In an Ambuscade, the best Marksmen should be placed in the front Line, and desired to fire at those whom they can distinguish to be Officers; for small Resistance can be expected from Troops surprized and thrown into Confusion and Disorder by an unexpected Attack, if the Loss of their Officers is added to it. The grenadier Officers, or such as carry Fuzes, should have the same Orders.

If the Officers who have been placed as Centinels report that they have discovered a more considerable Body of the Enemy than you expected, and more than you are able to defeat, let the commanding Officer repair to that Post; and if by the Help of good Glasses he is convinced of the Truth of the Report, he ought to hasten his Retreat; for it is then

to

to be presumed, that the Enemy, informed of your Design, comes with a strong Detachment to surprize you in your Ambuscade.

If the Enemy have a superior Body of Troops near you, and that you have Reason to believe your Ambuscade has been discovered, either by any of your People deserting, or that your March has been seen by any of the Enemy's Parties, who may inform their Camp or Garrisons; you ought in any of these Cases also immediately to form your Retreat.

If in Spite of retiring with all Promptitude, you shall be overtaken and attacked by the Enemy with superior Numbers, you must then take such necessary Precautions as Prudence requires, to assure your Retreat; or if you are near enough to hope for Succours, make a vigorous and gallant Defence till they shall arrive.

And if you have made any Detachments who are in Ambush at a certain Distance, that they may not be abandoned and lost, you should immediately send five or six Horsemen, who should take the most favourable Road, and inform them of your Retreat; having taken Care to mark to these Officers with the Detachments, the Route they are to pursue; either to join you, or form their own Retreat.

If you want to draw a Part of the Troops of one of the Enemy's Garrisons into an Ambuscade, you should conceal beyond your Ambuscade, and as near the Garrison as possible, a small Party of Cavalry, who must endeavour to carry off the Herds of Cattle, Flocks of Sheep, or Officers' Horses belonging to the Place, which come out to feed or water in the Morning; or in the Evening, try to carry off the Governor, the Officers, principal Citizens, or Ladies, who then come out to take the Air.

In this last Sort of Expedition, you should wait for a Fair or a Holiday, when many walk out, because the more People of Distinction you can surprize, the more will their Friends and Relations endeavour to

prevail with the Governor, and engage him to send out a Detachment against your Party, which ought not to retire too precipitately, lest the Enemy should abandon the Pursuit; but draw them on by Degrees towards the Ambuscade.

You ought not to place the main Body of your Ambuscade too near the town, in order to render the Retreat of the Enemy's Detachment more difficult after you have put them in Disorder.

You may also, if the Ground allows of it, place in Ambuscade a Corps of Cavalry, a little beyond the principal Ambuscade, towards the Town, to cut off the Enemy's Retreat when defeated. We suppose, however, that these two Ambuscades are not so far distant from each other, but that the principal one, which is the farthest from the Town, can easily come to the other's Assistance, in Case they have by any Accident been discovered and are attacked by the Enemy.

If the Environs of a Garrison are so intirely open that it is not possible to place a proper Number of Troops in Ambuscade, the Cavalry, in that Case, may serve to conceal the Infantry.

If you have Plenty of Troops, and have reason to believe the Commandant of a Town or Post is weak enough, or so ill advised as to allow himself to send out so great a Number of Troops on a Sally as to leave his Garrison unprovided, you may place an Ambuscade on the opposite Side of the Town, provided with the Necessaries for a Surprise-escalade, or by applying the Petard, who shall make their Attack when the Enemy are at some Distance in pursuit of your other Party.

The same Stratagem may be employed against a Town where there are no regular Troops, and whose unexperienced Inhabitants are easily deceived by all the common Stratagems of War.

Before

Before you try a great Ambuscade, it is very proper to have often formed small ones, or to have made Excursions into the Country with small Parties, so that the Governor or Commandant of the Post being accustomed to believe you have but a few Troops, is the more easily determined to detach a Part of his Garrison.

If you want to draw the Enemy's Army, or a great Part of it, into an Ambuscade, you must march with your Army towards the Enemy, so long as you are not afraid of being discovered by their Parties, or grand advanced Guards: There you must halt with all possible Silence, and detach a good Part of your Cavalry, which, without halting, shall charge that Flank of the Enemy nearest your Ambuscade; the first Charge being over, without giving the Enemy Time to attack them with too many Troops, they must retire to their main Body; so that if the Enemy shall inconsiderately pursue them, they fall into the Ambuscade.

And having given our Ideas on this Subject, we shall end it with observing, that with the Quantity of light Troops now in Use, and who are continually patrolling the Country, it is very difficult to surprize an Enemy with a great Ambuscade; the small ones only can succeed, and such particularly as are conducted by an able Partisan, who has good Intelligence, and who understands the Pettit Guerre.

The Defence of a Barrack, &c.

As I never have seen any Directions for putting a Barrack in a Posture of Defence, it may be thought a Presumption in me, who never have made that most useful Branch my Study; nevertheless, as far as my Capacity and small Experience will enable me, I shall endeavour to proceed:

I suppose the Barrack encompassed with a Wall (except the Entrance into it, which is generally a

weak Gate) the Wall may serve you for a Parapet, your Men must dig a Ditch round it (spare no Labour, it is of less Value than the Loss of Lives) the Earth to be thrown on the Inside, will form Part of a Banquette; this Earth must be hard rammed down, then place upon it your Barraek Bedsteads, your Banquette is then raised and formed with Expedition.

Upon every Bedstead have a Quantity of Stones, each Stone to be of such a Weight that a Man can but just throw it over the Wall, that in Case the Enemy should attempt to take Shelter under it, they may supply the Place of Ball.

Over every Bedstead where the Wall is too high to fire over, you must break two Holes by way of Loop-holes through the Wall, at three Feet asunder, where the Men are to fire through, whenever the Enemy present themselves.

To fortify the Gate, raise a semi-circular Intrenchment at the Gate, with a small Ditch, the Earth of which, together with Boughs of Trees and spare Lumber in the Barrack, will form your Parapet, which must be six Feet high, at least.

Post your Men in such a Manner in the Night as to prevent an Escalade, and provide Sticks, Pitchforks, &c. to overset the Ladders, in Case the Enemy should attempt it.

N. B. If there are any Houses which command the Barrack-yard, either occupy or pull them down.

Your next Consideration must be the Number of Men that will be in the Barrack, what Provisions you can lay in, what Quantity and Quality, Barrels of Beer, or Water, &c. (if you should have a Stream of Water in your Barrack-yard, it is likely the Enemy would find Means to cut it off; therefore, nothing should be left to Chance) No Person should be suffered to remain in the Barrack, except such as are able to oppose the Enemy, and are acquainted with the

the Use of Fire-arms; lest you may have too many Mouths for your Provision.

Attack of the Covert-way, Sword in Hand.

[This is copied from MULLER's Attack and Defence.]

When a Town is not strongly garrisoned, or the General thinks the foregoing Method too tedious, the Attack may be made as follows:

The third Parallel in this Case, should be made at least as forward as the Mid-way of the Glacis, having its Parapet made Step fashion, that the Troops designed for the Attack may pass easily over it, without any Confusion; a great Quantity of Fascines, Gabions, and other Materials, must be got ready and placed at the Back of this Parallel; a strong Party of Grenadiers is ordered, and placed in this Parallel, five or six deep, and the Workmen behind them, on the Reverse of the Parallel, having their Tools and Materials by them: Moreover, all the adjacent Parts of the Trenches must be well furnished with Troops to support the Grenadiers, if there is Occasion, and fire wherever the Enemy appears; the Grenadiers must be provided with Hatchets to cut the Pallisades, in Case the Guns should not have broke them.

Before the Attack is made, the Guns and Mortars are to fire briskly for some Time, at all the Defences of and into the Covert-way, to drive the besieged from thence, and to break the Pallisades, if possible, and to plough the Ridge of the Glacis in such a Manner as the Troops may enter the Covert-way without much Difficulty; then the Guns cease, in order to cool: When this is done, the Signal is given for the Attack, upon which all the Troops begin to move together, and passing quickly over the Parapet of the Parallel, march directly to the Covert-way, which they enter either through the Sally-ports or Passages

made by the Guns; or else the Grenadiers cut down the Pallisades with their Hatchets, and being entered, charge the Enemy so vigorously as to oblige them to retire; then the Engineers set the Workmen about making a Lodgment on the Ridge of the Glacis, opposite to that Part of the Covert-way which the besieged have abandoned.

These Lodgments are made with Gabions and Fascines, in the same Manner as the Saps; and Traverses are made every where to prevent the Enfilades. The Troops keep behind the Workmen, and kneel down till the Lodgment is so far advanced, that they may retire into it: Whilst this is doing, the Batteries fire continually upon all the Defences of the Covert-way, either to silence or abate the fire of the Enemy, as much as possible, and to oblige them to think more of their own Safety, than opposing the Besiegers.

If the Besieged should return to the Charge, as probably they will, and overthrow the Work and maintain their ground, nothing but a superior Force can make the Besiegers Masters of the Place.

When the Besieged find that they cannot possibly hold out any longer, they will set Fire to their Mines and retire; upon which Workmen are immediately sent to make a Lodgment in their ruins which is afterwards joined to the rest of the Trenches.

This was the Manner of attacking the Covert-way formerly; but since M. *Vauban*, by his great Experience and Knowledge, has brought the Art of Attack and Defence to so great a Perfection as it is now, the Covert-way has very seldom been taken Sword in Hand. His chief Study always was to preserve the Troops as much as possible, and never to expose them to any Danger, without the utmost Necessity.

However, when a Garrison is but weak, and the Army of the Besiegers very strong, the Guns of the
Besieged

Besieged may be silenced, and the Palisadoes torn to Pieces by the Batteries a Ricochet; in such a Case the Covert-way may be attacked with open Force, Sword in Hand, and that without much Danger; but if the Garrison is strong, and commanded by a Governor who knows his Business, it would be imprudent to make such an Attack; for it would prove one of the most bloody Actions of the whole Siege.

The taking a Place by Escalade.

[*This is copied from MULLER's Attack and Defence.*]

The Manner of taking a Place by Escalade, is much the same as that of surprising it by any other Stratagem; the only Difference is, in passing the Ditch and mounting the Rampart by Means of Ladders. The scaling Ladders used upon these Occasions, are of various Sorts, some are of Ropes, and some of Wood, some are made of several Joints, so as when put together, to make a Ladder of any Length, which in my Opinion, are the best Sort for the Height of the Walls is seldom known till you come upon the Spot; and therefore no proper Length can be given to the Ladders before-hand; there is another Sort used here in *England*, much of the same make as the common Ladder, only the Steps turn about Wooden Pegs, so that the Poles may be brought near each other, or to shut like a parallel Ruler; this Ladder is very convenient for Carriage, but as they are of a certain Length they are not so useful as those with Joints.

Being arrived before the Place in the Night, the first Thing to be considered is, where and in what Manner to pass the Ditch; when it is dry and deep, there needs no other Consideration than how to get into it; if it is muddy, Boards, Hurdles, or Fascines, are to be thrown in; but if it is full of Water, the Passage is like to be troublesome; but it of-
ten

ten happens that a Governor, because the Town seems to be in no immediate Danger of a Surprise, grows careless in his Duty, and negligent in Military Discipline, and by that very Means may be more easily surprized.

When a River passes by or through a Town, a great number of Boats must be provided in as private a Manner as is possible, and brought in the Dark, so as to be ready to carry the Troops over, in the middle of the Night or early in the Morning, about an Hour before Day.

But if there is a deep wet Ditch which has no Communication with any River, small Boats made of Tin should be provided, each to hold one Man only; sometimes Baskets covered with Skins or Oiled Cloth, have been used on such Occasions; these kind of Boats being very light, are easily carried by the Detachment; and when the first have passed the Ditch, they push the Boats back again for others to get over and so till all are passed.

Supposing then the Troops prepared to pass the Ditch, by some Means or other a Party must first be placed on the Counterscarp opposite to the landing Place, ready to fire at the Garrison, in Case they have taken the Alarm, and come to oppose their mounting the Rampart. If the Ditch is dry the Ladders are fixed, in some Place farthest distant from any Centry, and as soon as they are got upon the Rampart they put themselves in Order, to be ready to receive the Enemy, if they should appear, then the commanding Officer, or some trusty Man, who speaks the Language of the Garrison advances at some Distance before the rest, towards the Gate; if he meets with a Centry he goes up to him, under some pretence or other, as if he belonged to the Garrison, and if the Centry suffers himself to be thus surprized, claps a Pistol to his Breast, to keep him quiet; but should the Centry knowing his Duty, offer to keep him at a Distance, he must endeavour

to

to kill him with as little Noise as is possible, and then advance quickly with the Detachment towards the Gate, and either surprise or kill all who opposes them; immediately upon this they fall to Work breaking open the Gate, to let in the rest of the Party, and then proceed in the Manner described before.

If the Ditch is wet, the Rampart high, and has a Revetement, it will be a hard Matter to surprise the Town that way; but if there is no Revetement, the Troops may hide themselves along the out Side slope of the Rampart, till all are over, and then proceed as before.

REMARKS.

In the late War *Keiserlautern* was surprised by the *French* in the following Manner. A *German* deserter told the *French* Commander, that if he would send a Party with him, he would engage to surprise the Place; accordingly a Detachment was sent, which marched through the Woods, till within half a League of the Place, where they stopped till it was Dark, and provided themselves with as many Sheep and Horse Racks as they could get, to serve them for Ladders, the Ditch was dry and the Wall low, in the Dusk of the Evening they approached the Town, got into the Ditch, and fixed their Ladders; four hundred Grenadiers, provided with Hatchets mounted the Rampart, with the German at their Head; as soon as they were got up, he advanced, at some Distance before the rest, to the Centry, told him he went the round, that his Light was out and desired him to strike a Light for him, the Centry, not suspecting any Thing went to strike a Light, and whilst he was about it, the other gave him a blow with an Iron Bar, which he had ready for that Purpose, by which he threw him into the Ditch; the Grenadiers upon this immediately advanced to the

the Gate, surprised the Guard and opened it. The Garrison finding how Things went, withdrew into the Castle; when the Inhabitants had ransomed the Town from Plunder, the *French* retired as they could not keep it for want of the Castle.

In the Year 1676, *Loo*, a Town on the River *Dender*, belonging then to the *Spaniards*, was surprised by the *French*, the Ditch was wet, and the Rampart without a Revetement; half the Detachment passed the Ditch in small Baskets covered with Oil Cloths, while the other half stood ready to Fire upon those who should oppose their Passage, then followed the rest in the same Boats, and took the Place.

Camp for a Battalion of Foot nine Companies, with two Field Pieces.

Front one hundred and seventy Yards, divided as follows.

		Yards
For Pitching	8 double Rows of Tents at five	
	Yards each	40
	2 single Rows at 2 Yards and half each	5
The Breadth of	Grand Street	21
	8 lesser Streets at 13 Yards each	104
Total Front		170

Battalion Guns	From Side of the Serjeants Tent.		Yards
	to Centre of	1st. Gun	4
		2d. Gun	6
	Left of next Regiment		20
	Interval 30		30
	Front and Interval		200

N. B. The Muzzles of the Battalion Guns, are in a Line with Front of Serjeants Tents.

The

THE MEDLEY. 125

The Rearmost of the Gunners Tents, are in a Line with Rear of the Battalion Tents.

The Subalterns of the Artillery is in a Line with the Subaltern of the Battalion.

Depth 320 Yards.

	Yards
From Front Pole of Officers Tent of quarter Guard to Center of Bells of Arms of ditto	8
To Parade of quarter Guard	4
To 1st. Line of Parade of Battalion	50
To Center of Bells of Arms	30
From Center of Bells of Arms to Front Pole of Serjeant's Tents	4
For pitching 10 Tents with their Intervals at 3 Yards each	30
From Rear of Battalion's Tents to Front of Subalterns	20
From Front of { Subalterns Captains Field Officers Colonels Staff Officers }	To Front of { Captains Field Officers Colonels Staff Officers 1 Row of Bateman's Tents }
	24 24 12 16 18

	Yards
Front Row Batmen's Tents	1 ft pick's for Horses 2
{ 1 } Row { Picketts 2 } ditto 2 } Batmans }	To { 2 row 12 2 row Batmens Tents 2 Front of grand Sutler 14 Kitchens 20
Front Center Front } of { Grand Sutler Kitchens Petit Sutlers }	to { Center { Petit Sutlers 5 Front of { Bells of Arms 10 Center { of Rear Guard 15

Total Depth 320

N. B.

N. B. The Front Poles of the quarter Guard Tents are in a Line with the Poles of Center Company, and in a Line with Center of their Bells of Arms.

The { Bells of Arms Front of the Poles of Serjeants
Tents — — —
Colours are placed in Center of the grand
Street in a Line with the Bells of Arms

Each Company pitches 20 Tents of 10 in a Row.

The Lieutenant Colonel's and Major's Tents Front the Center of the 2d Streets from Right and Left of the Battalion.

The Colonels Tent is in the Line of the grand Street Fronting the Colours.

The Staff Officers Front the Center of the 2d Street on Right and Left of the grand Street.

The { Batemen's Tents Front towards their Horses.
Grand Sutlers in the Rear of the Colonels.

Inner Diameter of the Kitchens is sixteen Feet surrounded with a Trench three Feet broad, and the Earth thrown inwards, the Centers of the Kitchens Front the Centers of the Streets of their Company.

The Front Poles of the *Petit* Sutlers Tents or Hutts are in a Line with the Centers of the Kitchens allowing to each *Petit* Sutler six Yards in Front and eight in Depth enclosed with a Trench of a Foot in Breadth and the Earth thrown inwards.

The Rear Guard Front outwards, the Front Poles are in a Line with Center of their Bells of Arms and each six Yards Distance.

The Parade of the Rear Guard is four Yards from their Bells of Arms.

Of Bridges of Communication.

[This is copied from MULLER's *Attack and Defence*.]

As the Camp is generally divided by Rivers, Brooks or Marshes, it is of great Importance to make
a suf-

a sufficient Number of Bridges or Causeways, that the Communications between the several Parts of the Camp may be quite open and free; the Neglect of which has many Times occasioned the raising of a Siege, with the Destruction of a great Part of the Army.

These Bridges ought to be made as firm and secure as possible; there should, at least, be four of them, between each of the several Quarters, at about forty or fifty Fathoms Distance from one another; their Avenues of easy Access, and Guards placed near them, to see that they are constantly kept in Repair. These Bridges are always placed within the Lines of Circumvallation, so that those that pass and repass over them may be secure, and out of all Danger from the Enemy.

Of Battalion Field Pieces.

Each Battalion encamps with two Field Pieces.

A Serjeant and twelve Men of the Battalion who have been taught the Artillery Exercise to attend each Gun in the Field, on the March and in Quarters, who are exempted from all other Duties.

Six Men will draw a light six Pounder in the Field, backwards and forwards.

Number of HORSES.

A three Pounder requires but one Horse.

A six Pounder - - two,

A twelve Pounder - - three,

A twenty four Pounder - six

The three, six and twelve Pounders light are commonly charged with a quarter of the Shot's weight, therefore a three Pounder requires for one hundred Rounds twenty five Pounds of Powder, and three hundred Pounds of Shot neat Weight.

A six

A six Pounder for the same Number of Rounds one hundred and fifty Pounds of Powder, and six hundred Pounds of Shot; the twelve Pounder for the same Number of Rounds, three hundred Pounds of Powder and twelve hundred Pounds of Shot.

The twenty four light is loaded with five Pounds, therefore requires five hundred Pounds of Powder for one hundred Rounds and two thousand four hundred Pounds of Shot.

These four Pieces are the only Calibres used in the Field, require one thousand and twenty five Pounds of Powder and four thousand five hundred Pounds of Shot, for one hundred Rounds.

I shall now suppose an Encampment formed of a great Number of Battalions, and that it is necessary,

To prepare for the Attack.

[This is copied from MULLER's Attack and Defence.]

Therefore, Pickets, Gabions, Fascines, must be got in great Plenty, against the Trenches are opening, and are to be brought to Camp, by two or three thousand a Battalion, and ten or twelve thousand a Squadron, and then laid in the Front of their respective Camps.

Spades and Shovels and Pick-Axes in great Numbers, Iron Hooks, and Forks with long Poles fixed to them, for ranging and settling the Gabions: Mallets, wheel Barrows, Hand-baskets and Sand-bags in great quantities, as likewise Mantlets, stuffed Gabions and Saucissons; all these Articles must be ready at Hand before the Trenches are opened, the Guns mounted upon their Carriages, the Mortars on their Beds, the Materials for making the Batteries, and the Plat-forms in readiness with every Thing else required in the Attack.

Of

Of Spies and Guides.

[This is copied from M. SAXE's *Reveries*, concerning the Art of War.]

One cannot bestow too much Attention in the procuring of Spies and Guides; M. De Monticuculli says; that they serve as Eyes to the Head, and that they are equally as essential to a Commander; which Observation of his is certainly very just; Money therefore, should never be wanting upon a proper Occasion for the Acquisition of such as are good, is cheap at any Price. They are to be taken out of the Country in which the War is carried on; selecting those only who are active and intelligent, and dispersing them every where amongst the general Officers of the Enemy, amongst his Sutlers, and above all; amongst the Purveyors of Provisions; because their Stores, Magazines, and other Preparations, furnish the best Intelligence concerning his real Design.

The Spies are not to know one another; and are to consist of various Ranks or Orders, some to associate with the Soldiers, others to follow the Army, under the Disguise of Pedlars; but it is necessary that all of them should be admitted to the Knowledge of some one belonging to the first Order of their Fraternity, from whom they may occasionally receive any Thing that is to be conveyed to the General who pays them; this Charge must be committed to one who is both faithful and ingenious, obliging him to render an Account of himself every Day, and guarding as much as possible against his being corrupted.

I shall not insist any longer upon this Subject, which, upon the whole is a Detail that depends upon a great Variety of Circumstances, from which a General, by his Prudence and Intrigues, will be able to reap great Advantage.

Of SIGNS.

[This is copied from M. SAXE's *Reveries, concerning the Art of War.*]

There are certain Signs in War, which it is necessary to study, and by which you may form Judgments with a Kind of Certainty. The Knowledge you have of the Enemy, and of his Customs, will contribute a great deal to this. But there are some, at the same Time, which are common to all Nations.

In a Siege, for Example when as the Evening approaches you discover toward the Horizon, and upon the Eminences, Bodies of Men assembled together and unemployed with their Front facing the Town, you may take it for granted, that Preparations are making for a considerable Attack; because, upon such Occasions, every different Corps usually furnishes its Proportion of Men, by which Means the Assault is made known to the whole Army, and all those who are unengaged, and off Duty, resort to the high Grounds towards the close of the Day, in order to observe it from thence at their Ease.

When your Encampment is near that of the Enemy, and you hear much firing in it, you may expect an Engagement the Day following, because the Men are discharging and cleaning their Arms.

When there is any great Motion in the Enemy's Army it may be discerned by the Clouds of Dust raised by it; which is at the same Time, a certain indication of something extraordinary being in Agitation. The Dust occasioned by Foraging-parties is not the same as that of Columns in March; but then it is necessary that you should be able to distinguish the Difference.

You may judge likewise which way the Enemy directs his Course, by the Brightness of the Arms when the Sun shines upon them: If its Rays are perpen-

perpendicular he marches towards you; if they are varied and unfrequent, he retreats; if they dart from the Right to the Left, he is moving towards the Left; and if, on the contrary, from the Left to the Right his March is to the Right; if there is a great Quantity of Dust in his Camp, which appears to be general, and is not raised by Foraging-parties, he is sending off his Sutlers and Baggage, and you may be assured that he will march himself presently after. This Discovery furnishes you with an Opportunity of making your Dispositions to attack him on his March, because you ought to know how far it is practicable for him to come to you, as also whether that is his Intention, and what Way it is most probable he will march; of which you are to judge from his Position, his Magazines, his Preparations, the Situation, and in short from his Conduct in general.— It is sometimes usual for him to erect his Ovens upon the Right or Left of his Army: In which Case, if you happen to be covered by a small River, and in that Situation, can discover the Time of his baking any considerable Quantity of Bread, you can make some Movement towards the Side which is remote from his Ovens, in order to amuse him; after which you may suddenly return again, and send 10 or 12,000 Men to attack them, supporting that Detachment with your whole Army, as fast as it arrives. This Enterprize must be executed with so much Expedition as not to allow him Time to prevent its success, because you will have the Advantage of some Hours before your first Movement can arrive at his Knowledge, exclusive of what more Time may elapse between his Intelligence and the Confirmation of it; for which he will undoubtedly wait, before he puts his Army in Motion; so that, in all Probability, he may receive Information of the Attack of his Magazine, before he has even given Orders for his March.

There are an infinite Number of such Stratagems in War, which a skilful Commander may put in Practice with little, or even no Risk, and whose Consequences are equally as beneficial as those which attend a complete Victory, by obliging the Enemy either to attack him with a Disadvantage, or shamefully to retreat from him, with an Army even superior in Strength.

Relating to the Command of the Governor in his own Town, with the Respect and Obedience due to him from the Troops which compose the Garrison.

[The three Articles as follow copied from BLAND's Discipline.]

ARTICLE I.

Whoever is Governor of a Town, has the entire Command of the Troops which compose the Garrison, though Officers of a superior Rank to him in the Army should be ordered in with them; for the Town being committed to his Charge, he is answerable to his Master for it, and, consequently, cannot give up the Command, without express Orders from him, in due Form, or from him, to whom he shall delegate his Power.

In the Absence of the Governor, the Command devolves on the Lieutenant Governor; and if the Town-major has a Commission of Town-major Commandant (which is sometimes conferred on those abroad) the Command falls to him in the Absence of the Governor and Lieutenant Governor; otherwise it goes to the eldest Officer in the Garrison, whether he is of the Horse, Foot or Dragoons, who is called, during the Time, Commandant of the Garrison; this is the general Rule, but as they may be obliged, on particular Occasions, to throw a considerable Body of Troops into the Garrison (either for the Defence of it, or to annoy the Enemy) and
that

that a general Officer of a considerable Rank may be ordered in with them, it is usual to give him a Commission of Commandant of the Troops, in the Body of which is particularly specified how far his Power over them is to extend, to avoid all Disputes that might happen betwixt him and the Governor about it; and though this may, in a great Measure, lessen and divide the Governor's Power, yet the outward Marks of Distinction are generally left with him, such as giving the Parole, the Administration of the Civil Affairs, keeping the Keys of the Town, &c. as also the signing of the Capitulation, jointly with the Command of the Troops, in Case of a Surrender.

The Reason for appointing a Commandant of the Troops, I suppose, may arise from the Governor's not being of a Rank in the Army sufficient to give him a due Authority over them, or that he may not be thought equal to the Command; but, supposing him equal to it, both from his Experience and Ability, unless he is distinguished with Titles of Dignity, his Orders will not be so readily executed as if he was; and though a Commission of Governor creates him, in a Manner, Captain-General in his own Town, yet when Officers of an equal Rank to him in the Army are ordered into the Garrison, it is a hard Matter for him to keep up his Command as it ought to be, or get them to obey him with the same Deference as they would one of a superior Rank; And if it proves so, when only those of an equal Rank are commanded into the Garrison, it will be much more difficult for him to exert his Authority over those who are his Superiors in the Army as well as shocking to them to be commanded by an Inferior; the Truth of which, with the Detriment that arises from it to the Service, is so well known in *France*, that when the Case happens so there, and that they have no Mind to supersede the Governor, they always appoint an Officer of Rank and Ability in Proportion to the Number of Men, which, upon

Occasion of Danger, shall be ordered into the Garrison) Commandant of the Troops; in which Case, Care is generally taken, that the Person so appointed, be of such a Rank in the Army, that not only all Disputes about Command in relation to him, is out of the Question, but likewise any Contests of this Kind, that may arise in the Garrison, are terminated, and his Decisions more readily submitted to, than if they came from one of an inferior Character. I shall now proceed to the Command of a Governor, when there is no Commandant of the Troops appointed.

How far the Governor's Power extends over the Civil, must be determined by the Laws and Constitutions of the Country; however, all Persons in the Town, whether Ecclesiastical or Civil, are subject to his Jurisdiction, as far as it relates to the Order and Preservation of the Town; and whoever offends therein, though he may not have the Power of punishing, yet he may secure their Persons till they can be tried in a regular Manner for the Crimes they have committed.

His Power over the Military is very extensive; for all the Officers and Soldiers in the Garrison are obliged to obey him, without Controul.

He may order the Troops under Arms as often as he shall think proper, either to review them or upon any other Account.

He may send out Detachments or Parties, without being obliged to give a Reason to the Officers for it, or come to an Explanation with them on that Head, neither have they a Power to demand it; but if they think themselves aggrieved, they may represent it to him in a respectful Manner; that is, singly, and by way of Request, and not in a riotous Way, and in Numbers; since that will be deemed Mutiny, which by the Articles of War is Death.

Neither Officer nor Soldier must lie a Night out of the Garrison, without the Governor's Leave; but that the Colonels, or those who command Regiments, may have

have a proper Authority over their own Corps, a Governor seldom grants his Leave of Absence to either Officer or Soldier, but at their Request. A Governor who has a true Notion of the Service, will act according to this Rule; and appears to me reasonable that he should do so; otherwise, how can they answer for their Regiments, if their Officers and Soldiers have Leave of Absence given them without their Knowledge? Besides, as the Colonels are supposed to have a thorough Knowledge of those under their Command, they must be proper Judges, who ought or who ought not to have Leave given them, and therefore will not importune the Governor but when it is reasonable they should have it; which will not only ease him of a great Deal of Trouble but likewise prevent his being imposed upon, by their pretending they have Business, when perhaps Pleasure, or the Love of Idleness, is the chief Motive which induces them to ask it: The Truth of which cannot so easily be entered into by the Governor as the Colonels, who, in Justice to their Regiments, will limit the Number they ask Leave for, that the Duty may not fall too hard on those who remain.

What is abovementioned, without entering into the Deference due to Colonels, when it relates to those immediately under their Command, is so equitable, that it is generally followed; but however just this Rule may appear, yet a Governor has an undoubted Right to deviate from it when he shall think proper, by granting his Leave of Absence to either Officer or Soldier without the Consent of their Colonels; and though particular Regiments may suffer now and then by such a Proceeding, yet that Evil is of less Consequence to the Service, than what the limiting of the Governor's Power might produce, viz. the Loss of Subordination; which is of such Weight and Consideration, that it is the very Life and Soul (if I may be allowed the Expression) of Discipline, without a due Observance of which the Service can never

be carried on; for whosoever endeavours to weaken it, by making the Officers or Soldiers independent of the principal Persons who are placed over them, whether Governors or Generals must do it either through evil Design or Ignorance, since both produce the same Effect, Disorder and Confusion; a State which Soldiers may be easily brought into (from a natural Love of Independency, which reigns in all Mankind) but not so soon remedied; for, when a licentious, independent Humour has prevailed amongst Troops, it must be Time, infinite Pains, and Severity, to reduce them to their proper Obedience; the want of which may prove as prejudicial to the State, as the want of Troops; since the Loss of Subordination produces not only the Neglect of Orders, but, in a great Measure, the Power, or at least an imaginary one, to dispute them; the Consequence of which is too well known to be further enlarged upon.

The Practice of the Army in this Case, is, that when an Officer has Business that may require his Absence from the Garrison, he is to make his first Application to his Colonel, and to desire him to intercede with the Governor for Leave; and if the Colonel complies with the Officer's Request, he should wait upon the Governor in his Behalf; but if the Colonel refuses the Officer, he may then, no Doubt, apply to the Governor, though such a Step should not be taken without he is necessitated so to do, either from extraordinary Business, or that he finds himself hardly used by his Colonel; since the doing of it is, in a Manner, putting him at Defiance, and therefore not to be rashly undertaken.

When any of the private Men want Leave, they are to apply to their Captains first, the Captains to the Colonel, and, if he agrees to it, he is to send their Names by the Adjutant to the Town-major, that he may acquaint the Governor that they have his Consent, and to desire he would be pleased to grant them his Leave of Absence.

When

When the Soldiers have applied to their Captains, and are refused by them, they may then apply to their Colonels; but they ought not to do it till they have been with their Captains, for the same Reason that an Officer ought not to apply to the Governor till he has been with his Colonel.

ARTICLE II.

All Soldiers who have Leave to go out of the Garrison must have Passports, signed by the Governor, specifying the Regiment to which they belong, the Place they are to go to, and the Time they have Leave to be absent; the Particulars of which must be given in by the Adjutant to the Town-major. Whoever goes without one of these Passports, or is found taking a contrary Road to that which is expressed in it, will be looked upon as a Defserter, and, when taken, tried accordingly. It is therefore the Duty of the Officers on the Port-guards to examine all Soldiers who shall come into the Town, and do not belong to the Garrison; and when they find any of them without a Pass, or that they have taken a wrong Route, or have any Reason to suspect it forged, they are to send them to the Main-guard, in order to their being further examined by the Governor, or those whom he shall appoint for that Purpose; and if they are found to be Deserters, they should be secured till they can be sent to their Regiments to be tried as such.

When Officers on Party meet any Soldiers, they must examine their Passports; and if they have any Reason to suspect them, they must take them Prisoners, and deliver them over to the Main-guard when they return to their Garrison, and acquaint the Governor with it.

No Regiment can hold a Court-martial, or punish any of their Men, without first obtaining the Governor's Leave, or the Commandant's, in his Absence;

However,

However, it is customary, upon the first Application which the Colonel makes of this Kind to the Governor, to give him a discretionary Power to hold regimental Courts-martial, as often as he shall have Occasion, and to put the Sentence in Execution, provided the Regiment is not to be under Arms at the performing it, because no Colonel can order his Regiment under Arms, either for Exercise, punishing Offenders, or otherwise, without having Leave every Time of the Governor; therefore it is usual to punish the Soldiers on the regimental Parade, in the Presence of the Men who mount the Guard in the Morning, unless the Sentence directs otherwise.

When the Colonel or Commanding Officer would have the Regiment under Arms for Exercise, Review, or to punish any of his Men, he may send the Adjutant to the Town-major, that he may acquaint the Governor with it when he goes to receive the Night-orders; and, if granted, the Town-major is to give out in public Orders, that such a Regiment is to be under Arms, &c. to-morrow Morning.

The Ceremony of giving out in public Orders, when Regiments are to be under Arms, has an Appearance as if it was only to keep up the Authority of the Governor, and to shew his Command over the Troops in his Garrison; and, indeed, I never heard any Reason given for it, but that it was the Custom: However, it cannot be doubted but that a better Reason than Custom can be given for it; but since it has not come to my Knowledge, I beg Leave to offer my Opinion on that Head.

Should a Part of the Garrison draw out in the Morning, without the rest being apprised of it, they might imagine that it proceeded from some Attempt of the Enemy, who were going to surprise the Town, and, consequently, occasion their beating to Arms; therefore, to prevent these false Alarms, which would not only fatigue the Troops, but, by their being too often repeated, make them dilatory in repairing to
their

their Alarm-posts upon a real Occasion, as also cause a Bustle and Disturbance in the Town: It is therefore necessary that it should be given out in Orders by the Town-major, the Night before, when any of the Troops are to be under Arms, that all may know it: Besides, the assembling of Troops, without the Governor's Leave, must put the Town in the Power of those Officers who command them; especially if we will suspect any ill Intention or Correspondence with the Enemy; for, though it is to be presumed that Officers of their Rank are above Temptation, yet Instances of the contrary may be given, and in War particularly we ought not to rely on what they will not do, but on what they cannot do.

ARTICLE III.

In Case of an Alarm, the Officers and Soldiers who are not on Guard are to repair, with their Arms, immediately to their Alarm-posts.

Upon these Occasions the Colonel's Company may be ordered to assemble where the Colours are lodged, which is generally at the Colonel's Quarters, to guard them from thence to the Alarm-post of the Regiment.

Sometimes all the Field-officers Companies are ordered to assemble there; but unless the Garrison is very numerous, they will be of more Service with the Regiment; one Company being sufficient to guard them: The Ensigns who are to carry the Colours are to assemble there at the same Time. The Reason for the Troops being ordered to their Alarm-posts, may proceed from one of the three following Causes:

First, upon the Appearance of the Enemy before the Town, or Intelligence being brought that a Body of their Troops are marching towards it: Therefore to prevent a Surprize, it will be proper to

to order the Regiments to repair to their Alarm-posts.

Secondly, upon any considerable Rising of the Inhabitants, or Tumult in the Town, that the Governor may be able to disperse the Mob, and bring the Offenders to Justice.

Thirdly, upon a Fire breaking out in the Town, it is extremely necessary to have the Troops at their Alarm-posts; for, by their being assembled, they may be sent under the Command of their Officers to assist in the extinguishing of it, and to keep the Streets open, that the Engines may be brought to play; as also to keep the Mob from stealing the Goods which may be saved from the Flames. Besides, as the Town may be set on Fire by a Stratagem of the Enemy, and by lodging a Body of Troops at some Distance from the Town, they may endeavour to seize one of the Gates, during the Consternation, which, by the Assistance of the Inhabitants, might be easily effected, were the Precaution of shutting the Gates and assembling the Troops omitted.

But on whatever Occasion the Alarm may be given, when the Troops are assembled, no Colonel must dismiss his Regiment, though it should prove a false Alarm, till he receives the Governor's or Commandant's Orders for it. Thus far I have endeavoured to shew the Command which a Governor of a Town has over the Troops in it, and how the Officers and Soldiers are to conduct themselves towards him on that Head.

Of the Staff of the Army.

[*This is copied from the Essay on the Art of War.*]

The Staff properly exists only in the Time of War; the Quarter-master-general may be reckoned the first Person belonging to it: He works with
the

the General on whatever regards the Marches of the Army ; and the Evening before they are to move, he gives to each general Officer, who is to conduct a Column, a Copy of what regards him, and to the general Officers of the Day, a Copy of the whole Order of that Day, that they may cause every Thing to be executed which is ordered by the General. He also keeps a Roll of the general Officers, and makes them be advertised when there is any Thing new, which regards their Tour to march ; he marches to the new Camp with the Major-General of the Day, and distributes the Ground which the Major-General has marked out to be occupied by the Army, he makes the Fourier mark the Head-quarters, and the Quarters of the other general Officers ; he visits the Avenues of the Camp, reconnoiters the Country round about, and makes the Inhabitants give him exact Information ; and on the Report he makes the General, he receives his Orders for regulating the Marches of the Army, in the Manner the General intends they should be executed. It is he who delivers to each of the general Officers a Copy of the Order of Battle ; and he signs and distributes all the Orders for Foraging, and commonly reconnoiters the Quarters where the Army can forage. In short, though he has no direct Authority over the Troops, as he is continually with the General, whose Orders almost always pass through his Hands, and as he necessarily possesses the secret of the Movements of the Army, this Employment gives very great Consideration to him who exercises it, and requires an intelligent Officer, well versed in the great Parts of War ; he has commonly three or four Assistants to ease him in his Functions, and they are commonly gratified, at the End of some Campaigns, with a Colonel's Rank. The Quarter-master-general, in a Day of Action, stays close by the General, and on every other Day, he goes to receive the Parole from the Major-general of the Day, but, when necessarily employed, he
sends

sends one of his Assistants to receive the Parole, and fetch it to him.

The Adjutant-general makes the Detail of the Duty of the whole Infantry of the Army, with the Brigade-Majors. He keeps an exact State of each Brigade, of each Regiment in particular, and of the Companies of Grenadiers, with a Roll of the Colonels, Lieutenant-Colonels, and Majors of the Infantry.

He is every Day at the Head-Quarters to take the Orders which he receives from the Major-general of the Day; he then distributes them at his own Quarters to all the Majors of the Brigade, from whom he demands the Number of Men they are to furnish for the Duty of the Army, and informs them of any Detail which may concern them. In the Morning, he is at the Parade of the Guards, and sees them defile; he may, if he has Time, visit them at their Posts, and always see that the Piquets are in good Order: He also accompanies and follows the General, by whose Orders he commands all the Detachments of Infantry, and sees them march off from their Rendezvous, or leave this Care to his Assistants.

On marching Days, he follows the Major-general of the Day with the Encampment, and distributes to a Major of each Brigade the Ground of the Camp; he makes a daily Report to the General, of the Situation of all the Posts of the Infantry, placed for the Safety of the Army, and of any Changes made in their Posts. In a Day of Battle, the Adjutant-general sees the Infantry drawn up, after which he places himself by the General, to receive any Orders which may regard the Body of which he has the Detail. In a Siege, he orders the Number of Workmen demanded; he counts them when they return from Work, and signs the Billets for their Payment: He receives the Guards of the Trenches at their Rendezvous, and examines if they are in good Condition, he gives and signs all the Orders for skirmishing Parties.

Parties. As he is charged with all the Duty of the whole Infantry, he has Orderly men for that Body; that is to say, a Serjeant and Corporal from each Brigade of Infantry in the Line, to carry them the Orders which he may have Occasion to send from the General.

N. B. To avoid Repetition, the Duty of the Adjutants-General of the Cavalry and Dragoons, *mutatis mutandis*, the same with the Infantry.

In *France*, the Major of the oldest Regiment of each Brigade, is the Major of Brigade; in *England*, *Holland*, and elsewhere, it is a particular Officer appointed for that Purpose, and towards the End of the late War, the Prince of *Orange* gave them a Lieutenant-Colonel's Rank, that the Majors of the Regiments of each Brigade might receive the Parole and Orders from them.

The Majors of Brigade go every Day to receive the Orders from the Adjutant-general; there they write exactly whatever is dictated to them; from thence they go and give the Orders, at the Place appointed for that Purpose, to the different Majors or Adjutants of the Regiments which compose that Brigade; regulate with them the Number of Men and Officers which each are to furnish for the Duty of the Army, taking Care to keep an exact Roster, that one may not give more than another, and that each march in their Tour; in short, the Major of Brigade is charged with the particular Detail in his own Brigade, in much the same Way that the Adjutant-General is charged with the general Detail of the Army. The Major of Brigade sends every Morning, to the Adjutant-general an exact Return, by Battalion and Company, of the Men of his Brigade missing at the Retreat, or a Report expressing that none are absent; he also mentions the Officers with or without Leave.

As all the Orders pass through the Hands of the Majors of Brigade, they have infinite Occasions of making known their Talents and Exactness.

Of the Aides-de-camp.

[*This is copied from the Essay on the Art of War.*]

Of Aides-de-camp are, as has been said already, Officers attached to the Person of a general Officer, to carry his Orders: This Employment is of greater Importance than is generally believed; it is, however, often intrusted to young Men without Experience, and often without Capacity; but in some of the foreign Services, they give great Attention to this Article.

The Marechal *De Puyssegur*, says in his Art of War, on the Subject of Aides-de camp, that in the Time of the great Prince of *Conde* and Marechal *Turenne*, the Employment of Aid-de-camp was always filled with Officers of Character. The Reason is, that in Battle, a Moment may change the Face of Affairs; insomuch that an Order sent by the General to an Inferior Officer, to act in such or such a Manner, and which was properly given, with respect to the Situation of the Action, at that Moment, but before the Aide-de-camp arrives and delivers the Order, the actual State of the Action is so far changed, that the Order becomes improper, it is necessary, in this Case, that he who carries it, has comprehended the Spirit in which the General meant it, and takes Care not to deliver it in such a positive Manner, as to oblige him who receives it to act up to the Letter of the Order, and not leave him Liberty to change it. The Marechal says, he saw a Battle lost, because an Aide-de-camp had upon a false Representation of the Local made to the General, been sent to him who commanded the right Wing, to order him to change his Ground, who, knowing the Strength of it, tried to argue the Matter, but to no Purpose; the Aide-de-Camp delivered

vered the positive Order, and the Commander was obliged to obey: The Enemy immediately possessed themselves of his advantageous Post, and the Battle was lost.

Advice to a young Officer Commandant of a Corps, with a Scheme worthy of Attention.

Conduct on many Occasions is as necessary as Courage: He can never have too many Virtues, too much Knowledge, or Experience: He should have Affability to gain the Affections of his Corps; and endeavour to promote a perfect Harmony to subsist among them; and in order to obtain this, he must acquire their good Opinion and Confidence. The true way to succeed in this, is to support Discipline, with unshaken Firmness; but, on the other Hand, if the young or unexperienced Officer commits a Fault (not willingly) speak to him in private with Calmness and Solidity, it will have its proper Effect, putting him under an Arrest, is a most serious Thing; therefore avoid it, except Necessity or the Service requires it.

Do Justice to every one shewing the greatest Disinterestedness; if a Vacancy falls, use your Interest as their Commandant and Father, and be ever studious, for their Promotion and Happiness: Recommend the Officers in Succession, except those whose Incapacity or bad Conduct excludes; in that Case, endeavour to get them leave to sell, if that cannot be obtained, let them retire upon Half-pay.

The Commandant ought to be well acquainted with the Strength and Detail of his Corps, thoroughly Master of all *Manœuvres*, and the Principles of the Military Art. For despising our Foes, Want of Intelligence, reconnoitring and flanking Parties, have been the sole Cause of many a Defeat, and often occasions a shameful precipitate Retreat, even from an inferior Force.

A particular Attention he must pay to the Arms, Accoutrements, Cloathing, and all other Appointments of his Corps, Accounts to be kept regular, Complaints to be immediately redressed, the Sick to be well attended, and particular Care taken of them. Never to put his Captains to a superfluous Expence for the Ornaments of a Soldier, contenting himself with what is proper and has a Military Appearance; nor permit the Commanding Officer in his Absence to change the Officers Uniform, (their Pay is too small to afford it :) Spare not the Stock Purse to raise Men to mend the Corps. In Time of Peace, drum out with Infamy (by Sentence of a Court Martial) such Men who are of a dishonest, quarrelsome or mutinous Disposition. I would have him give Marks of his Liberality, to those who distinguish themselves in Time of Danger; for Rewards and Punishments are both necessary.

Scheme

Scheme for a Mess in Camp, for Dinner and Supper.

N ^o . of Officers.	Rank.	Each		Total		ESTIMATE.		
		per Day.	s. d.	per Day.	l. s. d.		l. s. d.	
1	Colonel . . .	3	0 0	3	0 0	A dining Tent	—	22 0 0
1	Lieut. Colonel	2	6 0	2	0 6	A Kitchen Tent	—	11 9 4
1	Major . . .	2	0 0	2	0 0	A Cart and two Horses	—	15 0 0
6	Captains . . .	1	6 0	9	0 0	Linen Utensils, &c.	—	13 0 0
10	Lieutenants	1	0 0	10	0 0			61 9 4
8	Ensigns . . .	0	9 0	6	0 0			
1	Chaplain . . .	1	3 0	1	0 3			
1	Surgeon . . .	1	0 0	1	0 0	Field Officers & Captains, 6 Guineas each	—	56 14 0
1	Adjutant . . .	1	0 0	1	0 0	Ten Lieutenants, at 4 s. 8 d. each	—	2 6 8
1	Quarter Master	1	0 0	1	0 0	Eight Ensigns, at 3 s. 8 d.	—	1 9 4
	Total					One Chaplain, at 6 s. 8 d.	—	0 6 8
						One Surgeon, at 4 s.	—	0 4 0
						One Adjutant, at 4 s.	—	0 4 0
						One Quarter Master, at 4 s. 8 d.	—	0 4 8
31				1 16 9		Total		61 9 4

By this Scheme each Field-officer and Captain is to contribute six Guineas, and each Subaltern and Staff Officer one Day's Pay each, towards the purchasing of a Dining-tent, Kitchen-tent, and also to enable a Sutler to buy a Cart and two Horses, Table-linen, Kitchen-furniture, &c. Wine, Punch, Ale, Cider, &c. being distinct Articles, must be paid for by those only who chuse to call for them; and for each Stranger's Dinner, one Shilling to be paid by the Inviter.

No Gentleman can have his Dinner sent him from the Mess, except in Case of Sickness, Duty, or when under an Arrest.

If this Scheme be disapproved of, upon a Supposition that the Sutler will be too great a Gainer, a Bill of his daily Expences may be delivered by him, to any Officer accepting that Trouble, who, with the Consent of the rest, may appropriate the Surplus to whatever Purpose is most agreeable to the Mess.

And if the Sutler be a Loser, such Sum must be made good to him by the Mess in general, as well as a Gratuity to him for his Fatigue and Trouble.

Part of a Captain's Duty.

When the Major is absent, the eldest Captain is to fill that Post: He ought, therefore, to be well acquainted with the Strength and Detail of the Corps, as it particularly falls on him: He should have a perfect Knowledge of all Manceuvres: He is to draw up the Battalion in order of Battle, in the Manner he is directed, and conduct them wherever he is ordered: He is to be mounted with his Sword drawn at the Head of the Grenadiers, when the Regiment is marching by Files, Companies, sub or grand Divisions: When the Battalion is prepared for the Attack, his Post is then in the Rear of the first right Hand grand Division.

The

The Multiplicity of Details which he is charged with, requires the utmost Attention to keep them clear and free from Confusion: He should be Master of the Attack and Defence of fortified Places, as sometimes a Command of that Nature may fall to him. When the Major acts himself, his Post is with his own Company, on the Right of the Battalion, on Foot, with a Fuzee or Esponton in his Hand. On a March, he should be attentive to keep his Division or Company at their proper Distance for forming, and allow none of the Men to quit their Ranks. He should be present when the non-commissioned Officers and private Men are accounted with for their Arrears and Stoppages; visit them often either in Barracks, Quarters, or Infirmary; see them properly taken Care of when sick, and gratify such as are exact and well-behaved. He should know every Man of his Company by Name and Character, and inspect his Company's Arms, Accoutrements, Ammunition, Cloaths and Necessaries, once a Week.

Part of a Lieutenant's Duty.

The Lieutenant, in the Captain's Absence, commands the Company, and is not only answerable to the Service, but to him also, for the Care and Management of it; nor is it at his Choice to exchange any Man from the Company, but by Leave of the commanding Officer of the Corps, or his Captain. He must pay a particular Attention to the Arms, Accoutrements, Ammunition, Cloaths, Necessaries and Dress of the Soldier, and to every Circumstance which may contribute to their Health, &c. oblige the non-commissioned Officers, commanding Squads, to give him a Return every Market-day, specifying what Quantity of Provisions, and of what Kind they have laid in, and the Amount thereof; after which, visit their Messes, and see if the Quantity answers their Returns; also visit the Sick, and see that they are properly

properly attended and well taken Care of; attend Roll-calling at least once a Day, and make the non-commiffioned Officers give an exact Return every Morning, wherein they are to insert all Occurrences that have happened during the preceding twenty-four Hours.

Redrefs all Complaints from the Soldier with Readinefs and Exactnefs.

When on Guard, Party, or other Duty with a Captain, obferve the Precautions taken by him, that you may be able to execute the fame when you come to command.

A Lift of Things neceffary for a young Gentleman to be furnifhed with, upon obtaining his firft Commiffion in the Infantry; a Scheme of his conftant Expences, with Advice.

Lift of Things.

A Suit of Cloaths,	-	-	} All Regimental.
Two Frock-fuits,	-	-	
One Pair of leather Gloves,	-	-	
Sash and Gorget,	-	-	
Fuzee, or Esponton,	-	-	
Sword, Sword-knot and Belt,	-	-	
Two Pair of white Spatterdashes,	-	-	
One Pair of black and Tops,	-	-	
One Pair of Garters,	-	-	
One Pair of Boots,	-	-	
A blue Surtout-coat,	1	Black Stock,	
A <i>Portugal</i> Cloak,	1	Doz. of Handkerchiefs,	
6 White Waistcoats,	$\frac{1}{2}$	Dozen of Towels,	
1 Pair of leather Breeches,	3	Pair of Sheets,	
6 Pair of Shoes,	3	Pillow-cases,	
2 Dozen of Shirts,	4	Linen Night-caps,	
2 Dozen of Stocks,			
A field Bedstead, a painted canvas Bag to hold it,			
Bed-curtains, Quilt, three Blankets, Bolster, Pillow,			
one Matrafs, and a Pailace; those Articles to be			
carried			

carried in a leather Valise; a travelling Letter-Case, to contain Pens, Ink, Paper, Wax, and Wafer; a Case of Instruments for Drawing; and the following Books: *Muller's* Mathematics, Fortification, and the Field Engineer, by Major *Vallancey*. It is also essential that he should have a Watch, that he may mark the Hour exactly when he sends any Report, or what he may have discovered that is of Consequence.

If you are to provide a Tent, the Ornaments must be uniform, according to the Facing of your Corps.

Dimensions of the Tent.

	Feet.	Inch ^s .
Length of the Ridge Pole —	7	0
Height of the Standard Pole —	8	0
Length from Front to Rear of the Marqueé		
between the half Walls — —	14	0
Breadth of the Marqueé between the half		
Walls — — —	10	6
Height of the half Walls of the Marqueé	4	0

Scheme of an Ensign's constant Expenses.

EXPENSES.	By a Day			By a Week			By 4 Weeks			By 52 Weeks		
	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Breakfast	—	—	—	0	0	6	0	0	0	9	2	0
Dinner	—	—	—	0	1	0	0	1	8	18	4	0
Gill of Wine, or Quart of Ale	—	—	—	0	0	3	0	0	0	4	11	0
Four Shirts, & 4 Handkerchiefs a Week	—	—	—	0	0	2	0	0	8	3	0	8
Four Pair of Stockings and 2 Night Caps a Week	—	—	—	0	0	1	0	0	4	1	10	4
Hair Powder, Pomatum, Soap, Blackball, Pens,	—	—	—	0	0	1	0	0	2	3	0	8
Paper, Ink, Wax, and Wafers	—	—	—	0	0	2	0	0	4	3	0	8
Soldier to dress your Hair, shave you, &c.	—	—	—	0	0	1 ¹ / ₂	0	0	4	2	12	0
Total	—	—	—	0	2	3 ¹ / ₂	0	16	2	42	0	8
Your Substinance	—	—	—	0	3	0	1	1	0	54	15	0
Ballance	—	—	—	0	0	8 ¹ / ₂	0	4	10	12	14	4
Arrears about	—	—	—	0	0	5 ¹ / ₂	0	3	0 ¹ / ₂	7	19	3
Ballance in all	—	—	—	0	1	1 ¹ / ₂	0	7	10 ¹ / ₂	20	13	7

If in Barracks you'll have an additional Expence for washing of Bed Curtains, Sheets, Pillow-cases, Towels ~~and Night-caps~~—You see how necessary it is for you to be an Oeconomist, and what a small Ballance you have to support the Character of an Officer and a Gentleman. To buy Cloaths and defray unforeseen Expences, and that upon a Supposition, that the Ar-rears are paid yearly, which I am sorry to say, are not.

A D V I C E.

Consider the Trust and Confidence reposed in you, and when you have the Honour to carry the Colours in Action, rather die than lose them; for Courage is admired, and Cowardice detested; and by the Articles of War, whatsoever Officer shall misbehave before the Enemy, shall suffer Death. Pay the same Attention to your Duty in Time of profound Peace as when in the Theatre of War: Pay and punish where due; but on no Account be free with them, or suffer them to be free with you; treat them as Soldiers, with Humanity and Respect, assist them when they are in Sickneſs or Distreſs, and they will obey and eſteem you as their Officer; too much Lenity they will abuſe, as they know when they commit a Crime deſerving of Punishment.

Be attentive that the Serjeants and Corporals ſupport a proper Authority; but let it be carried with Decency and good Order.

Above all Things avoid thoſe given to Slander, Scandal, perſonal or national Reflections, as they are a Peſt to Society.

Honour is the peculiar Characteriſtick of an Officer; conſequently, all your Actions ſhould be guided by it: A true Man of Honour would rather exert his Patience than his Courage, except in Defence of his King or his Country; for he that acts on Principles of Religion and Juſtice, eſtabliſhes his Character and

recommends himself to the Favour of his Prince, who rewards the Deserving.

Sobriety is very becoming in all Officers, but I would in particular recommend it to you; it will preserve your Health and Understanding, and intitle you to a respectful Regard from your Superiors. On the other Hand, Drunkenness will weaken the Mind and ruin the Constitution; and by the Articles of War, whatever commissioned Officer shall be found drunk on his Guard, Party, or other Duty, under Arms, shall be cashiered for it.

Attention in Duty, is both proper and commendable; it will improve your Mind and cultivate your Understanding, tho' at first it may seem severe; if you do it calmly and chearfully, a little Perseverance will conquer what seemed so difficult.

Nothing will recommend you sooner to the Favour of a General than having gained Preferment by Merit; Time, Experience, and a proper Attention, are the sure Paths to it. By such a Conduct you'll add to your Reputation, and confirm your Character.

I have a Regard for the Honour of the Army in general, but in particular for the Ensigns, and have taken this Occasion, through the Channel of my Treatise, to submit a State of their constant Expences, and their very small Ballance remaining; and have not the least Doubt, but some Military Gentleman of Experience, Consequence and Ability, will represent this Matter, in a most serious Manner, before an august Ass—bly, in order to obtain them some Addition to their Pay.

I must beg Leave to remark, that when the present Pay of an Ensign was established, it was very ample, and would go as far, at that Time, as three Times that Sum now.

Young.

Young Officers apt to exceed their Orders, from a mistaken Zeal.

[*Copied from BLAND's Discipline.*]

Young Officers are but too apt to commit Mistakes, by exceeding their Orders, being hurried on by the Heat and Impetuosity of their Temper, to do something that is great and noble, without considering the Consequence that may attend it. I own it is an Error on the right Side; but still it is an Error; for Orders are for the most Part positive, and leave us no Room to act according to our own Inclination; a Restraint that proves rather indulgent than hard in Cases of Danger, into which Youth would precipitate themselves and others, were it not checked by the cool Reason of Men of Experience: Let us, therefore, be subservient to the Commands of our Superiors, and submit to their Judgment in all Things relating to the Service. We shall gain Honour and Reputation enough, if we adhere strictly to our Orders; but Disgrace may attend the exceeding of them, as well as the falling short; the one, however, is more excusable than the other, though the Consequences may prove as fatal, since it proceeds from a mistaken Zeal; but the other from the want of Courage: To blame a Man for want of Courage, when Nature has not bestowed it on him, is not only hard, but unjust; but a Man that continues in the Service, when he knows himself defective in that Point, betrays both his King and Country; and, therefore, merits the severest Punishment.

Of SUBORDINATION.

[*This is copied from the Regulations for the PRUSSIAN Infantry.*]

His Majesty is highly displeased to understand, that a right Harmony and Agreement does not subsist in some Regiments; from whence Factions and Animofities

sities have been produced, which are quite repugnant to Subordination, and prejudicial to the Service in general, as well as the particular Good of those Regiments.

His Majesty is likewise informed, that the Orders given by superior Officers to their Inferiors, are not executed with that Respect, Alacrity and Application which is required. Nay, that some Officers have even presumed to dispute the Orders of their Commanders, and to argue first of all, whether they were right or wrong, according to their own Opinions: He has, therefore, found it very necessary to forbid the like unmilitary Behaviour, on Pain of incurring his highest Displeasure, and to give his Commands in the most urgent Manner, that Subordination be kept up amongst the Officers of every Regiment, from the General down to the youngest Ensign, with the utmost Strictness.

When a General Officer thinks proper to give any Orders relating to his Regiment, and to His Majesty's Service, and the Colonel-Commandant is of Opinion that such Orders are contrary to His Majesty's gracious Will and Intention, the Commandant may then state his Exceptions to the General, in a decent and submissive Manner; but if the General, notwithstanding, insists on their being performed, it becomes his Duty to comply without further Contradiction; nevertheless, he is afterwards at Liberty to make a Representation thereof to His Majesty, who, in Case it be founded on Justice, will render the General responsible.

N. B. All Orders given to a Regiment while under Arms, are to be immediately executed, and no Objections made till afterwards; because it would derogate from the Respect and Obedience which is due to every commanding Officer, and might be also attended with bad Consequences to the Service in general, to dispute his Orders in the Presence of all the
the

THE MEDLEY. 157

the Officers, and in the Face of the whole Regiment.

Regulations for Officers Leave of Absence, &c.

G. R.

Whereas the good Order and Discipline of our Forces in our Garrisons and other Places, within our Dominions of *Great-Britain*, much depend on the Presence and constant Attention of a proper Number of the Field and other Officers belonging to our said Forces. Our express Will and Pleasure, therefore, is, that the several Officers of our Regiments of Foot, within *Great-Britain*, do from Time to Time hereafter attend their respective Duties, in such Manner as our Service requires: And for the better Guidance in the same, and for the more effectual Maintenance of good Order and Discipline, WE, therefore, thought fit to settle the following Rules; which are to be strictly observed, and for the Execution of which the Field Officers commanding each Regiment is to be responsible.

1st. That with each Regiment of Infantry, there be always one Field Officer and two Thirds of the Captains present, besides such Field Officer; and also one Subaltern with each Company, whereof the Captain is present; and two Subalterns with each Company, whereof the Captain is absent.

2d. That when a Regiment by Detachments, or the Company shall happen to be divided, in which Case it may be proper to have more Officers with the Regiment than above ordered, then the commanding Officer is to be responsible that there is a sufficient Number of Officers present to answer every Purpose.

3d. If at any Time the Colonel or Commanding Officer of the Regiment, thinks it necessary to keep more Officers present for the Discipline of the Regiment,

ment, that the young Officers may be perfect in their Duty, he is to give Orders accordingly.

4th. That all Officers be present with the Regiment yearly on the 10th Day of *March*, and remain with it until the Spring Review.

And Our further Will and Pleasure is, that the several Governors or Commanding Officers of our Garrisons, and the Officers commanding in Chief in each respective Quarters of any of the Companies of our Regiments of Foot, do send unto our Secretary of War, and to the Adjutant General of our Forces, on the 14th Day of every Month, a Return, specifying the Names of the absent Officers belonging to the Regiment under their Command, since what Time they have been absent, by whose Leave and for what Time; to the Intent that they may be satisfied of the due Performance of our Commands herein.

And we do hereby direct our Rules abovementioned to be punctually observed, upon Pain of our highest Displeasure.

Given at our Court at *James's*, this 27th Day of *July*, 1764, in the 4th Year of our Reign.

By His Majesty's Command,

WILLIAM ELLIS.

Orders to empower the Commanding Officers of Corps to post Subaltern Officers in such Manner as they shall think may best conduce to the Good of His Majesty's Service.

G. R.

Whereas it has been humbly represented unto us, that Disputes have frequently arisen amongst our Forces, concerning the posting Subaltern Officers to Troops and Companies, whereby our Service hath
suffered

suffered or may suffer ; We have, therefore, taken the same into our Royal Consideration, and have thought fit, in order to remedy the same Inconveniences for the future, hereby do authorise and give full Power to the Colonels and Commanding Officers of every Regiment in our Service, to post the Subaltern Officers in such Manner as he or they shall think may best conduce to the Good of our Service, and the regular Discipline and due Government of the Troops and Companies under their Command, having Regard always to the Seniority of such Subaltern Officers as far as may be ; to the End, that no Prejudice may happen to our Service or to them. And this our Pleasure, the Colonels, Field Officers, and every other Commission Officer in our Service, are to observe and pay due Obedience to accordingly.

April 23, 1736.

Position of a Soldier under Arms, as lately directed.

Every Soldier must give the greatest Attention, remaining perfectly silent and steady, not making the least Motion with Head, Body, Feet or Hands, but such as directed. To stand straight and firm upon his Legs, Head turned to the Right, Heels close, Toes a little turned out, the Belly drawn in a little, but without Constraint, the Breast a little projected, Shoulders square to the Front and kept back, the right Hand hanging straight down the Side, with the Palm close to the Thigh, the left Elbow not to be turned out from the Body ; the Firelock to be carried on the left Shoulder, as low down as can be admitted without Constraint, the three last Fingers under the Butt, the fore Finger and Thumb before the Swell, the Flat of the Butt to be supported against the Hipbone, and to be pressed so that the Firelock may be felt against the left Side, and that it may stand before the

the Hollow of the Shoulder, not leaning towards the Head, nor from it, the Barrel almost perpendicular.

REMARKS.

A Soldier should have Strength, Activity, and Courage, obedient to the Orders of the Corporal, as if given him by the Commanding Officer, the Corporal being the Means by which they are conveyed to him; the Soldier should be Master of all the Beatings of the Drum and Tunes of the Fife, and instantly to obey them and attend his Colours; the Expiration of his Furlow he should strictly observe.

When Centry he should be vigilant, and observe his Orders punctually and inviolably, and have them foremost in his Thoughts.

Turning out of the Line.

The Line to turn out without Arms whenever the General commanding in Chief comes along the Front of the Camp.

When the Lines turn out, the private Men are to be drawn up in a Line with the Bells of Arms; the Corporals on the Right and Left of their respective Companies, the Picquet forms behind the Colours, their Accoutrements on, but without Arms.

The Serjeants to draw up one Pace in the Front of the Men, dividing themselves equally.

The Officers to be drawn up in Ranks according to their Commissions, in the Front of the Colours; two Ensigns taking hold of the Colours.

The Field-officers to be advanced before the Captains.

When the Commander in Chief comes along the Line, the Camp-colours on the Flanks of the Parade are to be struck.

Forming

Forming and Returning the Picquets of the Infantry.

The Officers and Men for the Picquet being ready dressed and accoutred, as soon as the Drummers Call is beating, the Men take their Arms and form in the Streets before the Tents, the orderly Serjeants and Corporals having likewise their Arms, are then to examine the Men and form those of their respective Companies in their Ranks with the Line of Tents.

When the Retreat begins, they are to march them forward, the front Rank even with the Bells of Arms, each orderly Serjeant and Corporal advancing three Paces, and remain at the Head of his Men. The Officers, Serjeants, Drummers and Fifers, for the Picquet go to the Head of the Colours, and, taking their Arms, wait there. As soon as the Retreat is ended, the Adjutants order, advance to form the Picquet: Upon this, the whole march forward in three Ranks to the Lines of Parade, the Officers, Serjeants, Drummers and Fifers of the Picquets, as well as the orderly Serjeants and Corporals, advancing twelve Paces before the front Rank, and when they are come to the Ground, the Adjutants order, *halt*, upon which the Officers, Serjeants, Drummers and Fifers, face to the Right about: *Form the Picquet*; at this Command the whole, except the Officers, Serjeants, Drummers and Fifers, of the Picquet, face to the Right and Left inwards to the Center. *March*; they march together, closing to the Center, and the Officers, Serjeants, Drummers and Fifers, take their Posts; the orderly Serjeants and Corporals close likewise, but so as to be opposite to the Men of their respective Companies, to answer for what may be wanting or amiss. *Halt*; the Picquet faces to the Front, and the orderly Serjeants and Corporals to the Picquet.

The Adjutant is then to go through the Ranks, and after having examined the whole, and found all compleat, he orders all the orderly Serjeants and Corporals to their respective Companies to call the Rolls. They are to face to the Right and Left outwards, and march regularly with Halberds and Firelocks recovered. The Adjutant is then to acquaint the Captain that his Picquet is ready.

The Captain and his Officers are then to examine the Men's Arms and Ammunition, which being done, he orders, *Prime and Load*.

As soon as the Colonel or Field-officer of the Picquet has acquainted the Captain that he may return the Picquet, the Captain, having cautioned the Men to be ready to turn out at a Moment's Warning, orders, *Picquet to the Right and Left to your Companies*, upon which the Officers, Serjeants, Drummers and Fifers, move three Paces to the Front, and the Men face to the Right and Left outwards. *March*; they march until they come opposite to the Bells of Arms of their respective Companies, waiting for the next Word of Command, *Halt*, upon which they face to the Bells of Arms, and the Officers, Serjeants, Drummers and Fifers, face to the Colours. *Lodge your Arms*; they march together, and having carefully lodged their Arms, return to their Tents; the Officers, Serjeants, Drummers, and Fifers, doing the same.

STANDING

STANDING ORDERS *for a Guard who mount over
Prisoners of War.*

A Counter-part of the Muster-roll of the Prisoners of War, the Officer of the Guard is to have, and the said Roll to be called over at the setting of the Watch, or Relief of the Guard, or both, as the Officer of the Guard shall direct. No Prisoner to be received, or admitted to Liberty on Parole, without previously acquainting the commanding Officer. No Person to enter into the Prison, or converse with the Prisoners, without Permission of the Officer of the Guard, who, on such Occasion, is to direct the necessary Attendance. Centinels posted Within-side of the Prison to be relieved every Hour during the Day-time, and every half Hour after dark; those without as customary, and not to obey any Orders but those of the Officer of the Guard, Field-officer of the Day, and Officer commanding. Patroles alternately to go by a Serjeant or Corporal of the Guard, during the Night, to keep the Centinels alert. The Guard to be mustered often, and the Name of every Absentee to be returned to the commanding Officer. It is to be expected the OEconomy of the Prisoners of War, regarding Victuals and Place of Confinement, should be such as Humanity, Security, and the Credit of Government require.

Whatever Centinel misbehaves on his Post will be severely punished: They are not to quit their Post or Arms on any Pretence whatever, nor to sit down, whistle, sing, or smoke Tobacco, nor to suffer anybody to come into their Centry-box, except the Officer and non-commissioned Officers of the Guard: They are to be very vigilant on their Post, and exact in passing the Word *All's Well*; nor is he to suffer

any People to assemble on his Post, nor himself to hold the least Conversation; but to be perfectly attentive to what he is planted there for, in which the Corporal at posting him is fully to instruct him.

Directions for Picquets and Village Guards.

All Posts stationed behind Rampart, Wall, Hedge or Ditch, are to be drawn up two deep in close Order. If behind a River, Trench, or Chevaux-de-frize, three deep; the Ranks also in close Order. The Officers to be posted according to Situation and Circumstances.

The Method of going and receiving the Rounds in a Garrison.

When the Town-major goes his Round, he comes to the Main-guard and demands a Serjeant and four Men to escort him to the next Guard; and one of the Men is to carry a Lanthorn. He may go to which Gate first he pleases; whereas, all the other Rounds, except the Governor's or Commandant's, are to go according to the Method prescribed them. As soon as the Centinel at the Guard-room-door perceives the Round coming, he should give Notice to the Guard, that they may be ready to turn out; and when the Round comes within twenty Paces of the Guard, he is to challenge, and when he is answered by the Serjeant who attends the Town-major's Round, he is to say, stand Round; after which he is to call out immediately, Serjeant, turn out the Guard, Town-major's Round. No Round is to advance after the Centinel has challenged and ordered them to stand. Upon the Centinel's calling, the Serjeant is to turn out the Guard immediately, with shouldered Arms, and the Officer is to post himself at the Head of it;
after

after this, he is to order the Serjeant, and four Men, to advance towards the Round, and challenge. When the Serjeant of the Guard comes within six Paces of the Serjeant who escorted the Round, he is to halt and challenge briskly; the Serjeant of the Escort is to answer, Town-major's Round: Advance Serjeant with the Parole; and then orders his Men to rest their Firelocks: The Serjeant of the Escort advances alone, and gives the Serjeant of the Guard the Parole in his Ear; and while he is giving it, the Serjeant of the Guard holds the Spear of his Halberd at the other's Breast: He then orders the Serjeant to return to his Escort, and, leaving the Men he brought with him to keep the Round from advancing, goes to his Officer, and gives him the Parole he received from the Serjeant; the Officer finding the Parole to be right, orders his Serjeant to return to his Men, and then says, Advance, Town-major's Round, and orders the Guard to rest their Firelocks; upon which the Serjeant of the Guard orders his Men to wheel back from the Center and make a Lane, through which the Round is to pass, the Escort remaining where they were, and go up to the Officer, and give him the Parole, laying his Mouth to his Ear; the Officer holds the Spear of his Esponton at the Town-major's Breast, while he gives him the Parole. The Town-major having given the Officer of the Guard the Parole, he is then to examine if the Gates are locked and well secured; whether they have taken Possession of their Night-posts, and placed the additional Night-centinels, and count the Men who are under Arms, to see if they are all on Guard, and if not, to enquire into the Reason of their Absence. He may likewise enquire into the Night-orders, as also all others relating to the Guard, that if there should be any Mistake in them, he may then rectify them. After these Things are done, he should send back the Serjeant and Men, who attended him,

to the Main-guard, and take the same Number from this Guard to escort him to the next; and so from one Guard to another, till he has finished his Round.

As the Town-major's Round is designed to see if the Gates are locked, the Night posts posted, and the Orders delivered right, I presume he may go either along the Ramparts or through the Streets, from one Guard to another, as he shall think proper; but all the other Rounds, except the Governor's, must go along the Ramparts.

As soon as the Round is gone, the Officer is to order his Men to lodge their Arms.

When it was said, that the Town-major is to go his Round when the Night-orders were delivered, it is to be understood, that he is not to go till they are, and that the Gates are shut; after which he may take his own Time, there being no certain Hour prescribed him, provided he goes and finishes before twelve o'Clock: Besides, it is even necessary for him to go at uncertain Hours, and change his Way of going, in order to keep the Guards alert; however, he must always go the first Round, to verify the Night-orders.

When the Town-major has finished his Round, he is to wait on the Governor (the next Morning) and make him a Report of the State of all the Posts, and the Condition he found them in.

All other Rounds must be received in the same Manner as is directed for the Town-major's, only with this Difference, that the Officers on Guard are to give the Parole to the grand Round; but all other Rounds are to give it to them: And though the Governor should go his Round, after the grand Round is made by the Captain of the Main-guard, he is to give the Parole to the Officers on Guard; but, in this Case, the Governor may carry an Officer to give the Parole for him.

The Captain of the Main guard is to go the grand Round, and the Lieutenant is to go the visiting Round,

When the Governor intends to go the grand Round, he is to send Notice of it to the Captain of the Main-guard, to prevent his going it, and that he may be prepared to receive him; it being usual for the Governor to come to the Main-guard first, and take an Escort along with him from thence to the next Guard, or to conduct him quite round, if he thinks proper, and order the Lieutenant of the Guard to attend him. The Governor may order what Number of Men for his Escort he pleases.

When the Governor goes the grand Round, the Captain of the Main-guard is to go the visiting Round.

The grand Round, or any Round which the Governor or Commandant shall make, may begin where they please; because, whatever Round they meet, is to give them the Parole; whereas, when two other Rounds meet, that which challenges first has a Right to demand the Parole of the other; but as this might occasion Disputes in the giving the Parole, should both challenge together, or imagine they did, the Place where they are to begin, and the Hour which each Round is to go at, must be particularly mentioned; by which Method they cannot possibly meet, but will follow one another in a regular Manner, provided they are punctual in the Execution.

N. B. All Rounds should be reported by the several Guards, the Officers Names that went them, and the Hours; as also, every Thing that happened extraordinary to them in the going their Rounds, such as Officers being absent from their Guards, or negligent in their Duty; Centinels drunk, asleep, not alert, or off their Posts; if they dis-

covered any Thing of Consequence, or heard any Noise in the Country, or saw any Number of People assembled together, or found any Disturbance.

The Method of going and Receiving the Rounds in Camp.

The Field Officer to be escorted by a Serjeant and four Men, with a Drummer, to carry the Lanthorn, every Centry is to challenge the Rounds, who are to answer grand Round and is to rest his Firelock; when the grand Rounds is challenged near the quarter or rear Guards, the Centinel upon being answered grand Rounds, is to reply stand grand Rounds, and to call to the Guard to turn out, and not to suffer the Rounds to advance.

The Officer commanding the quarter Guard is to order a Serjeant and a File of Men to advance within six Paces of the Rounds, and there to halt and challenge again, when answered grand Rounds, he replies stand grand Rounds advance Serjeant with the Parole, and then Orders his File of Men to rest their Firelocks, the Serjeant of the grand Rounds advances unattended and gives the Parole to the Serjeant of the Guard, who at the same Time is to hold the Spear of the Halberd at the others Breast.

The Serjeant of the Rounds returns, and the Serjeant of the Guard leaving his Escort to prevent the Rounds advancing and goes to the Officer of the Guard and delivers to him the Parole he received from the Serjeant of the Rounds.

The Officer finding the Parole to be right orders his Serjeant back to his Escort, and says advance grand Rounds and orders his Guard to rest their Firelocks, at the same Time the Serjeant orders his Men to wheel back from the Center and makes a Lane for the Rounds to go through, the Field-officer goes along the Front of the Guard and when he comes to the Officer he receives the Parole from him.

He may count the Number of Men under Arms, and when he has asked such Questions and given such Orders as he judges necessary he passes on and the
Officer

Officer of the Guard orders his Men to lodge their Arms.

N. B. If more than grand Rounds go, they are to give the Parole.

Military Honours due to Crowned Heads.

All Armies salute crowned Heads in the most respectful Manner; Drums beating a March, Colours and Standards dropping, and Officers saluting: Their Guards pay no Compliment, except to Princes of the Blood, and even that by Courtesy, in the Absence of the crowned Head.

Due to the Captain-General of Great-Britain, Field-Marshal, General of the Empire, or of the Dutch.

All those Denominations, meaning almost the same Thing, are treated in the Army with equal Ceremony: Their Guards give them all the Honours due to the Representatives of Sovereigns; the Army in which they command shew them, conjunctly and separately, the same Respect, except when any of the Royal Family shall be present.

Regulations of Honours to be paid by his Majesty's Forces to the General Officers of the Army.

GEORGE R.

Our Will and Pleasure is that the following Rules be duly observed and put in Execution.

Generals of Horse and Foot, upon all Occasions, to have the March beat to them, and are to be saluted by all Officers, the Colours excepted; they are likewise intitled to a Guard of a Captain, Lieutenant and Ensign, and fifty Men, with Colours and Standards. Lieutenant-generals of Horse and Foot, upon all Occasions, to be saluted by all Officers; they are to have three Ruffles given them, and are entitled to a Guard of a Lieutenant and thirty Men. Major-generals are

to

to have two Ruffles, and not saluted by any Officer, and are entitled to a Guard of an Ensign and twenty Men. Brigadiers one Ruffle, and are intitled to a Guard of a Serjeant and twelve Men.

A Lieutenant-general, who is a Commander in Chief, by Virtue of a Commission from Us, is to have the same Respect paid him, on all Occasions, as a General of Horse and Foot: A Major-general as a Lieutenant-general, and a Brigadier as a Major-general.

All Governors, that are no general Officers, shall, in all Places where they are Governors, have one Ruffle given them, with rested Arms; but for those that have no Commission as Governors, no Drum shall beat.

A Lieutenant-governor, or the Officer who commands in his Absence, shall have the Main-guard turned out to him with shouldered Arms.

A Town or Fort-major, in a Garrison, is to command according to the Rank he now has, or has had, in the Army; and if he never had any other but that of Town or Fort-major, he is to command as youngest Captain.

A General of Horse or Foot to be received with Swords drawn, Kettle-drums beating, Trumpets sounding, and all the Officers to salute, except the Cornet bearing the Standard.

A Lieutenant-general to be received with Swords drawn, Trumpets sounding, and all the Officers to salute, except the Cornet who bears the Standard, and the Kettle-drums not to beat.

A Major-general to be received with Swords drawn, one Trumpet of each Squadron sounding; no Officers to salute, nor Kettle-drums to beat.

A Brigadier-general to be received with Swords drawn; no Trumpet to sound, nor any Officer to salute, nor Kettle-drum to beat.

As to the Dragoons, they are to pay the same Respect, according to the Nature of their Service.

And

And our further Will and Pleasure is, that our several Troops of horse and grenadier Guards, and our several Regiments of Foot-guards, be exempted paying any Honours to the Generals, unless when they shall be in Line with other Troops, or mixed with them in Detachments, or when they shall be received by any General, by our special Orders.

Honours to be paid to the Generals by the Horse and Grenadier Guards, when mixed with other Troops.

A General of Horse or Foot is to be received with Swords drawn, Trumpets founding; all the Officers to salute, except the Cornet bearing the Standard; the Kettle-drum not to beat.

A Lieutenant-general to be received with Swords drawn; one Trumpet of each Squadron founding; no Officer to salute, nor Kettle-drum beat.

A Major-general to be received with Swords drawn, no Trumpets founding; no Officer to salute, nor Kettle-drum to beat.

N. B. The Troops of Horse-grenadier Guards to beat a March to a General, but Bayonets not to be fixed: Three Ruffles to a Lieutenant-general; two Ruffles to a Major-general, &c.

Honours to be paid to the Generals by the Foot-Guards.

A General of Horse or Foot to be saluted by all the Officers, except the Ensigns with the Colours; a March is to be beat to him as he passes, but Bayonets not to be fixed.

A Lieutenant general to have three Ruffles, and to be saluted by all the Officers, except the Ensigns with the Colours.

A Major-general two Ruffles, and not to be saluted by the Officers.

Regulations

*Regulations for the Duty of our Horse and Foot-Guards,
when joined with other of our Troops.*

That our Foot-guards are to give no Guard to any General Officer, only to the General commanding in Chief, supposing him to be of the Degree of a General or Lieutenant-general, in which Case they are to furnish, for a General's Guard, a Lieutenant, Ensign, and fifty Men : For a Lieutenant-general's Guard, so commanding in Chief, an Ensign and forty Men.

That the Quarter-guard be commanded by an Ensign, who is to do no Honours, but to the Commander in Chief ; but is to turn out his Guard to all the Generals above the Degree of a Major-general, and to stand at the Head of his Guard, with his Pike in his Hand, and the Guard shouldered ; that the Horse-guards are never to mount any General's Guard.

That their Standard-guard do turn out only to the General commanding in Chief, supposing him to be of the Rank of a General or Lieutenant-general.

That both Horse and Foot are to turn out at the Head of their Camp, when the General, commanding in Chief, passeth along the Line.

That, in all Cases, when they shall be detached in the Manner above-mentioned, both Officer and Soldier, as well Horse as Foot, do equal Duty, in Proportion with other Troops with whom they shall be joined.

Given at our Court at St. James's
this 30th Day of *April*, 1729,
in the second Year of our
Reign.

C O L O U R S.

The first Standard, Guidon or Colours of a Regiment, is not to be carried on any Guard but that of his Majesty, the Queen, Prince of Wales, or Captain General

General, and, except in these Cases, shall remain always with the Regiment.

Honours to the Master-General of Ordnance.

The Master-general of the Ordnance shall have the same Respects from the Troops with Generals of Horse or Foot; that is, upon all Occasions to have the March beat to him, and is to be saluted by all Offices, the Colours excepted.

Honours paid Governors, General Officers, Colonels, Lieutenant-Colonels, &c. in Garrison.

All Governors, whose Commissions in the Army are under the Degree of General Officers, shall have, in their own Garrisons, all the Guards turn out with rested Arms, and beat one Ruffle; and though the Main-guard turns out with rested Arms, every Time he passes, yet they give him the Compliment of the Drum but once a Day; but all the other Guards beat as often as he appears near them.

If they are General Officers likewise, they are then to have the further Compliments paid them by the several Beatings of the Drum, as is practised in the Army, and are as follow.

To Generals of the Horse and Foot, the Guards turn out, rest their Arms, beat a March, and the Officers salute.

To Lieutenant-generals they turn out, rest their Arms, beat three Ruffles, and the Officers salute.

To a Major-general they turn out, rest their Arms and beat two Ruffles, but not salute.

To Brigadier-generals they turn out with rested Arms only, but of late they have added one Ruffle to the Compliment.

To Colonels, their own Quarter-guards turn out, and rest their Arms once a Day; after which they only turn out with ordered Arms.

To

To Lieutenant-colonels, their own Quarter-guard turn out with shouldered Arms once a Day, at other Times they only turn out, and stand by their Arms.

To Majors, their own Guard turn out with ordered Arms once a Day, at all other Times they stand by their Arms.

When a Lieutenant-colonel, or a Major commands a Regiment, their own Quarter-guard pay them the same Compliment, as is ordered for the Colonel.

All Centries rest their Arms to Generals, Colonels, Lieutenant-colonels and Majors: This Ceremony is the same both in Camp and Garrison.

The Main-guard are to rest their Arms to the Governor, and pay him the Compliment with the Drum, as before directed: If he continues to walk on the Parade, or before the Guard, they may lay down their Arms.

All Centries are to rest their Arms as he passes them, or comes near their Posts.

A General of the Horse and Foot, when in Garrison, has a Serjeant and two Centries at his Door.

All Lieutenant-generals have the same.

A Major-general is to have two Centries at his Door, and the same Compliment paid him by the Guards as in Camp.

A Brigadier is to have one Centry at his Door, and one Ruffle from all the Guards in the Garrison.

All Colonels, or Officers who command Battalions, are to have one Centry, which they are to take from their own Regiments; but those Colonels, who have no Regiments in the Town, are to have the Centry from the Main-guard, or one of the Port-guards, if their Lodgings lie more convenient for them.

The Main-guard is to turn out and stand by their Arms once a Day to all Colonels; but all other Guards must order their Arms for them as often as they pass.

The Main-guard is to pay no Compliment to the Lieutenant-colonel or Majors; but the other Guards are to stand by their Arms for them.

Lieutenant-colonels are to be treated in their own Garrisons as Colonels, and the Majors Commandant as Lieutenant-colonels, unless their Rank in the Army entitles them to a greater Compliment; but when either of them command the Garrison, they are then treated in all Respects as Governor.

When the Governor, Lieutenant-governor, and the Major Commandant, are absent, or by Sickness rendered incapable of acting, the eldest Officer in the Garrison is to take the Command upon him, who is called Commandant of the Garrison, and has all the Respect paid him by the Guards as Governor, except that of the Drum, unless his Rank in the Army entitles him to it before.

Engineers Rank.

Chief, as Colonel.

Director, as Lieutenant-colonel.

Sub-director, as Major.

Engineer in Ordinary, as Captain.

Engineer Extraordinary, as Captain-lieutenant.

Sub-engineer, as Lieutenant.

Practitioner Engineer as Ensign.

Rank and Precedence between Land and Sea Officers.

1. That the Admiral or Commander in Chief of his Majesty's Fleet have the Rank of a Field-marshal of the Army.

2. That the Admirals, with their Flags on the Maintop-mast-head, have Rank with Generals of Horse and Foot.

3. That Vice-admirals have Rank with Lieutenant-generals.

N

4. That

4. That Rear-admirals have Rank as Major-generals.

5. That Commodores, with broad Pendants, have Rank as Brigadiers-general.

6. That Captains commanding Post-ships, after three Years from the Date of their first Commission, for a Post-ship, have Rank as Colonel.

7. That all other Captains commanding Post-ships have Rank as Lieutenant-colonels.

8. That Captains of his Majesty's Ships or Vessels, not taking Post, have Rank as Majors.

9. That Lieutenants of his Majesty's Ships have Rank as Captains.

10. That the Rank and Precedence of Sea-officers in the Classes above-mentioned, to take Place according to the Seniority of their respective Commissions as Sea-officers.

11. That Post-captains commanding Ships or Vessels that do not give Post, rank only as Majors during their commanding such Vessel.

12. That nothing in this Regulation shall give any Pretence to any Land-officer to command any of his Majesty's Squadrons or Ships, nor to any Sea-officer to command at Land, nor shall either have a Right to demand the military Honours due to their respective Ranks, unless such Officers are upon actual Service.

BREVETS.

His Majesty's Pleasure.

That any Officer that at any Time, who, by his Majesty's Leave, shall quit a Commission which he has in any Regiment or Corps, and who, at that Time, shall enjoy a Rank in the Army, superior to his said regimental Commission, shall not be considered as entitled to any Rank whatsoever in the Army, unless his Majesty shall expressly signify his Pleasure to be otherwise: And that Officers (not being general Officers) having a Rank in the Army superior to that of the Commission which they bear in any Regiment

or

or Corps, are not thereby exempted from their several Attendance at Quarters, and doing regimental Duty, according to their Rank in the Corps to which they belong.

Points of Command.

All Commands fall to the eldest in the same Circumstance, whether of Horse, Dragoons, Foot, or Marines, among the Officers of the Corps of the *British* Troops, entire or in Parts: In case two of the same Date interfere, a Retrospection of former Commissions, or Length of Service, is to be examined, and ended by the Judgment of the Rules of War.

Articles of Agreement.

Agreement between _____ of
the _____ Regiment, and
of the said Regiment, _____ the said
doth hereby consent and agree
to resign his Commission in Favour of _____
for and in Consideration of the Sum
of _____ to be lodged in the Hands
of _____ and as soon as His Majesty's
Approbation and Royal Consent shall be obtained,
and the Commission made out, the said Sum of
_____ to be paid to the said
to all which, the said Parties have interchangeably set
their Hands and Seals, this _____ Day of
17 _____

A. B.

Witness,

C. D.

E. F.

N. B. Previous to the above Agreement, the Commanding Officer of the Regiment at Quarters, is to be consulted, and if approved of by him, is to be

be laid before the Colonel of the Regiment for his Approbation.

There is no Order for the above Form, but something formed in that Manner is necessary.

Form of a Warrant.

Whereas it has been humbly represented unto us, that Major *A.* of our Regiment of commanded by our trusty and well beloved *B. C. D.* is now after Years Service, rendered unable to do his Duty; we have, therefore, thought fit, at his own Request, and for the Good of our Service, by our Commission, bearing Date Day of 17 last, to promote Captain *E.* of our said Regiment, to succeed the said *A.* as Major; Captain-Lieutenant *F.* of our said Regiment, to succeed the said *E.* as Captain; Lieutenant *G.* of our said Regiment, to succeed the said *F.* as Captain Lieutenant; Ensign *H.* of our said Regiment, to succeed the said *G.* as Lieutenant; and *I.* Gentleman, to succeed the said *H.* as Ensign.

Notwithstanding which Promotion, our Will and Pleasure is, that the said *E.* and the Major to our said Regiment, without Purchase, for the Time being, shall continue to receive pay as Captain only; that the said *F.* and youngest Captain, for the Time being, in our said Regiment, without Purchase, shall continue to receive Pay as Captain-Lieutenant only; the said *G.* and the Captain-Lieutenant of our said Regiment, for the Time being, without Purchase, shall continue to receive Pay as Lieutenant only; and the said *H.* and the youngest Lieutenant in our said Regiment, for the Time being, without Purchase, shall receive Pay as Ensign only; and the said *I.* youngest

THE MEDLEY.

181

youngest Ensign in our said Regiment, for the Time being, without Purchase, shall receive no Pay.

To the End that the said *A.* may for his future Support and Maintenance, hold and enjoy during his Life the full Pay of a Day; the same to commence from the said Day of

17 last, inclusive, and to be issued him or his Assigns during his Life; and that upon the Death of the said *A.* the said *E.* and the Major to our said Regiment, for the Time being, without Purchase; the said *F.* and the youngest Captain thereof, for the Time being, without Purchase; the said *G.* and the Captain-Lieutenant in our said Regiment, for the Time being, without Purchase; and the said *H.* and the youngest Lieutenant thereof, for the Time being, without Purchase; and the said *I.* and the youngest Ensign thereof, for the Time being, without Purchase; shall receive Pay conformable to our Establishment; and for so doing, this, with the Acquittance of the said *A.* or his Assigns, shall be, as well to you as to all others whom it may concern, from Time to Time, a sufficient Warrant, Authority and Discharge.

Given at our Court at St. James's, the
Day of 17 in the Year of
our Reign.

By His Majesty's Commands,

K. L.

To the Agent of our
Regiment of commanded
by our trusty and well beloved
B. C. D. and to the Agent of our
Regiment, for the Time being, in
Great-Britain or Ireland, or to whom
the Payment thereof shall or may
concern.

N 3

BACK-

BACKED.

Warrant for Major A. of the Regiment
 of to retire upon
 a Day.

What Officers are to pay for Tent, to prevent Disputes.

We the following Officers of the Re-
 giment of Foot, commanded by
 being ordered to ascertain in what those who have
 been appointed Officers since
 ought to pay the Predecessors for their Tents, or
 Shares of Tents: It is our Opinion, that those Offi-
 cers who have succeeded to a Tent, should pay l.
 and those who have succeeded to Half a Tent, should
 pay l.

Dated

17

A. B. Captain.

C. D. Captain.

E. F. Captain.

*Attorney General's Opinion concerning Soldiers making
 away with their Cloaths or Necessaries.*

Captain A. B. of the Regiment, repre-
 sents in a Letter of the June, from
 that he has had several Hearings before the Civil Ma-
 gistrates, with the Inhabitants, for buying and taking
 in Pledge from the Soldiers, their Shirts, Shoes and
 Stockings, particularly in regard to one
 of Captain Company, who sold four
 Shirts, two Pair of Stockings and a Pair of Shoes,
 leaving himself destitute of Linen, &c. &c.

By

By the Objections made by the Attorney, in Behalf of the Defendant, neither the expected Penalty nor Punishment is inflicted, pursuant to the 45th Clause in the Mutiny and Desertion Bill, which enacts, "that if any Person shall knowingly detain, buy or exchange, or otherwise receive Arms, Cloaths, Caps, or any other Furniture belonging to the King, from any Soldier or Deserter, upon any Account or Pretence whatever, or cause the Colour of such Cloaths to be changed, the Person so offending, shall forfeit for every such Offence, the Sum of five Pounds, and upon Conviction of the Oath of one or more credible Witnesses, before any of His Majesty's Justices of the Peace, the Penalty of five Pounds be levied by Warrant, under the Hand of the said Justice or Justices of the Peace, by Distress and Sale of the Goods and Chattles of the Offender.

OBJECTIONS.

The Attorney in Behalf of the Defendant, will not admit the Soldier who sells his Linen, Necessaries, or Cloathing, &c. to be an Evidence against the Person who buys or receives them, neither will the Attorney allow what a Soldier is provided with to belong to the King, except his red Cloaths and Hat; alledging, that Shoes, Linen and Stockings are the Soldiers Property, being bought out of his Pay, so that he may do with them what he pleases.

ANSWER.

Every Soldier is provided with a compleat Cloathing; the Fund whereof, arising from his Pay, in which is included his Cloaths, Hat, Shirts, Shoes and Stockings; the three last Species come within the Denomination of small Cloathing; but these being of a more perishable Kind, the Soldier is to be provided with them, from Time to Time, as Necessity may require; and, for that End, there is a Deduction of

Six-pence out of his Pay, pursuant to the 14th Clause in the Mutiny Act.

QUERIES.

Whether the Soldier who sells, may not be admitted an Evidence against the Person who buys his Cloathing, Linen, &c. ?

Whether Linen, Shoes and Stockings are not as much a Part of his Cloathing, and belonging to the King, as the Cloaths and Hat; the whole being bought out of the Soldier's Pay ?

As there is a criminal Prosecution, I am of Opinion, that the Soldier may be a Witness against the Person who buys and sells his Cloathing: The Linen, Shoes and Stockings are, I conceive, within the Intent of the recited Clause; the detaining, buying, or exchanging them knowingly, is an Offence punishable in the Manner therein directed.

D. RIDER.

MEMORANDUM.

If the afore-recited Clause is not clear and express, with regard to the Person buying the several Species of small Cloathing beforementioned, every Soldier may embezzle them, or be seduced so to do, by evil and designing Persons.

Form of a Regimental Court Martial, &c.

Proceedings of a regimental Court Martial of the
Regiment of Foot, commanded by

held at this
Day of 17 By Order of

Captain

Captain *A. B.* President.

Lieutenant *C.* } Members { Lieutenant *D.*
Ensign *E.* } Ensign *F.*

Prisoner's Crime.] *G. H.* of the above Regiment
and Captain *I's* Company, confined by *K. L.* . . .
. . . for

Evidence.] *M. N.* informs the Court

Prisoner's Defence.] *G. H.*

Sentence.] The Court having duly considered the
Evidence for and against the Prisoner, are of Opinion,
that he is guilty of a Breach of the Article
of the Section; and also a Breach of
the Article of the Section of the
Articles of War; and do sentence him to receive
hundred Lashes with a Cat-and-nine-tails
on his bare Back.

A. B. Capt. & President.

If the Delinquent is to be drummed out of the
Regiment, it is proper to annex, that it is the further
Opinion of the Court, that the Prisoner *G. H.* is,
and he is hereby adjudged unfit to have the Honour
of being a Soldier; and, therefore, do order, that he
shall be drummed out of the Regiment, with a Hal-
ter hung about his Neck, and a Libel pinned on his
Breast and Back, upon which is to be wrote in large
Characters, the Crime for which he is brought to
publick Infamy; and to prevent his being entertain-
ed in another Corps, the Sentence of the Court Mar-
tial is to be inserted in his Discharge.

A. B. Capt. & President.

I ap-

I approve of the above Proceedings, this
Day of 17

*[The Commanding Officer to
sign his Name and Rank.]*

R E M A R K S.

I am sorry to say, when a Soldier commits a Crime, his common Excuse is Drunkenness; that surely is not sufficient; for a Crime, which is the Forerunner of all Evils, viz. mutinous Behaviour to their Superiors, Quarrels, and that even among themselves, Neglect of Duty, Desertion, and often Theft; therefore, the Crime of Drunkenness should be punished with Severity.

A Court Martial should assume a Formality, Decorum, and a respectful Behaviour; I would recommend to young Officers never to be biased by any Person, but adhere strictly to Justice, and rather of the two, incline to Mercy.

Let their own Discretion, and the Custom of the Service in the like Cases, direct them in their Opinions. Equity judgeth with Lenity; Laws with Extremity. Therefore, pass not your Sentence hastily.

Says a very learned Man, a Judge that is prepossessed in any Cause, and does not hear both Sides indifferently, tho' the Judgment he gives be right, yet himself errs; for there can be no Integrity where there is any Partiality.

Alexander, when he heard any one accused, would stop one Ear with his Hand; thereby reserving Audience for the Defendant.

Regulations

*Regulations for the Colours, Clothing, &c. of
marching Regiments of Foot.*

No Colonel to put his Arms, Crest, Device, or Livery, on any Part of the Appointments of the Regiment under his Command.

No Part of the Clothing or Ornaments of the Regiments to be altered after the following Regulations are put in Execution, but by Us or our Captain General's Permission.

C O L O U R S.

The King's or first Colour of every Regiment is to be the Great Union throughout.

The next Colour to be the Colour of the facing of the Regiment, with the Union in the upper Canton, except those Regiments which are faced with red or white, whose second Colour is to be the *Red Cross* of St. George, in a white Field, and the Union in the upper Canton.

In the Center of each Colour is to be painted or embroidered in gold *Roman* Characters, the Number of the Rank of the Regiment within a Wreath of Roses and Thistles on the same Stalk; except those Regiments which are allowed to wear Devices, or antient Badges, on whose Colours the Rank of the Regiment is to be painted towards the upper Corner.

The Size of the Colours and the Length of the Pike to be the same as those of the royal Regiments of Foot-guards.

The Cords and Tassels of all Colours to be crimson and gold mixed.

Drummers Cloathing.

The Drummers of all the royal Regiments are allowed to wear the royal Livery, viz. red, lined, faced,
and

and lapelled on the Breast with blue, and laced, with a royal Lace. The Drummers of all the other Regiments are to be cloathed with the Colour of the facing of their Regiments, lined, faced, and lapelled on the Breast with red, and laced in such Manner as the Colonel shall think fit, for Distinction sake, the Lace however being of the Colours of that on the Soldiers Coats.

Grenadiers Caps.

The Front of the Grenadiers Caps to be the same Colour of the facing of the Regiment, with the King's Cypher embroidered and Crown over it; the little Flap to be red, with the *White Horse* and Motto over it, *Nec Aspera Terrent*: The back Part of the Cap to be red; the Turn-up to be the Colour of the Front, with the Number of the Regiment in the middle Part behind. The royal Regiment, and the six old Corps, differ from the foregoing Rule, as specified hereafter.

The Front or Forepart of the Drums to be painted with the Colour of the facing of the Regiment, with the King's Cypher and Crown, and the Number of the Regiment under it.

Bells of Arms.

The Bells of Arms to be painted in the same Manner.

Camp Colours.

The Camp Colours to be square, and of the Colour of the facing of the Regiment, with the Number of the Regiment upon them.

Devices and Badges of the Royal Regiments, and of the Six Old Corps.

First Regiment, or the Royal Regiment: In the Center of their Colours, the King's Cypher within the Circle

Circle of St. *Andrew*, and Crown over it ; in the three Corners of the second Colour, the Thistle and Crown : The Distinction of the Colours of the second Battalion, is a flaming Ray of Gold descending from the upper Corner of each Colour towards the Center.

On the Grenadiers Caps, the same Device as in the Center of the Colours : White Horse, and the King's Motto over it, on the little Flap.

The Drums and Bells of Arms to have the same Device, painted on them, with the Number or Rank of the Regiment under it.

Second Regiment, or the Queen's Royal Regiment : In the Center of each Colour the Queen's Cypher, on a red Ground, within the Garter, and Crown over it : In the three Corners of the second Colour, the Lamb, being the ancient Badge of the Regiment.

On the Grenadiers Caps, the Queen's Cypher and Crown, as in the Colours : White Horse, and Motto, *Nec Aspera Terrent*, on the Flap.

The Drums and Bells of Arms to have the Queen's Cypher painted on them, in the same Manner, and the Rank of the Regiment underneath.

Third Regiment, or the Buffs : In the Center of their Colours the Dragon, being their ancient Badge, and the Rose and Crown in the three Corners of their second Colour.

On the Grenadiers Caps the Dragon : White Horse and King's Motto on the Flap.

The same Badge of the Dragon to be painted on their Drums and Bells of Arms, with the Rank of the Regiment underneath.

Fourth Regiment, or the King's own Royal Regiment : In the Center of their Colours, the King's Cypher on a red Ground, within the Garter, and Crown over it : In the three Corners of their second Colour, the Lion of *England*, being their antient Badge.

On

On the Grenadiers Caps the King's Cypher, as on the Colours, and Crown over it: White Horse and Motto on the Flap.

The Drums and Bells of Arms to have the King's Cypher painted on them, in the same Manner, and the Rank of the Regiment underneath.

Fifth Regiment: In the Center of the Colours, St. George killing the Dragon, being their ancient Badge; and in the three Corners of their second Colour, the Rose and Crown.

On the Grenadiers Caps, St. George killing the Dragon; the White Horse and Motto, *Nec Aspera Terrent*, over it, on the Flap.

The same Badge of St. George and the Dragon to be painted on their Drums and Bells of Arms, with the Rank of their Regiment underneath.

Sixth Regiment: In the Center of their Colours, the Antelope, being their antient Badge; and in the three Corners of their second Colour the Rose and Crown.

On the Grenadiers Caps, the Antelope, as in the Colours: White Horse and Motto on the Flap.

The same Badge of the Antelope to be painted on their Drums and Bells of Arms, with the Rank of the Regiment underneath.

Seventh Regiment, or the Royal Fuzileers: In the Center of their Colour, the Rose within the Garter, and the Crown over it; the White Horse in the Corner of the second Colour.

On the Grenadier Caps, the Rose within the Garter and Crown, as in the Colours: White Horse and Motto over it, *Nec Aspera Terrent*, on the Flap.

The same Device of the Rose within the Garter and Crown, on their Drums and Bells of Arms: Rank of the Regiment underneath.

Eighth Regiment, or the King's Regiment: In the Center of their Colours, the White Horse on a red Ground, within the Garter, and Crown over it: In the

the three Corners of the second Colour, the King's Cypher and Crown.

On the Grenadier Caps, the White Horse, as on the Colours: The White Horse and Motto, *Nec Aspera Terrent*, over it on the Flap.

The same Device of the White Horse within the Garter, on the Drums and Bells of Arms: Rank of the Regiment underneath.

Eighteenth Regiment, or the Royal *Irish*: In the Center of their Colours, the Harp in a blue Field, and the Crown over it; and in the three Corners of their second Colour, the Lion of *Nassau*, King *William* the Third's Arms.

On the Grenadier Caps, the Harp and Crown, as on the Colours: White Horse and Motto on the Flap.

The Harp and Crown to be painted, in the same Manner, on the Drums and Bells of Arms, with the Rank of the Regiment underneath.

Twenty-first Regiment, or the Royal *North British* Fusileers: In the Center of their Colours, the Thistle, within the Circle of St. *Andrew*, and Crown over it; and in the three Corners of the second Colour, the King's Cypher and Crown.

On the Grenadier Caps, the Thistle, as on the Colours: White Horse and Motto over it, *Nec Aspera Terrent*, on the Flap.

On the Drums and Bells of Arms, the Thistle and Crown to be painted as on the Colours: Rank of the Regiment underneath.

Twenty-third Regiment, or the Royal *Welsh* Fusileers: In the Center of their Colours, the Device of the Prince of *Wales*, viz. three Feathers issuing out of the Prince's Coronet; in the three Corners of the second Colour, the Badge of *Edward* the Black Prince, viz. Rising Sun, Red Dragon, and the three Feathers in the Coronet: Motto, *ICH DIEN*.

On

On the Grenadier Caps, the Feather, as in the Colours : White Horse and Motto, *Nec Aspera Terrent*, on the Flap.

The same Badge of the Feathers and Motto, *Icb Dien*, on the Drums and Bells of Arms, Rank of the Regiment underneath.

Twenty-seventh Regiment, or the *Inniskillen* Regiment, allowed to wear in the Centre of their Colours, a Castle with three Turrets, *St. George's* Colours flying in a blue Field, and the name *Inniskillen* over it.

On the Grenadier Caps, the Castle and Name, as on the Colours : White Horse and King's Motto, on the Flap.

The same Badge of the Castle and Name on the Drums and Bells of Arms, Rank of the Regiment underneath.

Forty-first Regiment, or the Invalids. In the Center of their Colours, the Rose and Thistle on a red Ground, within the Garter, and Crown over it : In the three Corners of the second Colour, the King's Cypher and Crown.

On the Grenadier Caps, Drums, and Bells of Arms, the same Device of the Rose and Thistle conjoined, within the Garter, and Crown as on the Colours.

Forty-second, or Highland Regiment, the Grenadiers of the Highland Regiment are allowed to wear Bears-skin Fur-caps with the King's Cypher and Crown over it on a red Ground, in the Turn-up or Flap.

Facings

Facings of the Foot.

Facings.]	Rank and Title.	[Distinctions.
Blue.	1st or the Royal	—
	4th or the King's own Regiment	—
	7th or the Royal Fuzileers	—
	8th or the King's Regiment	—
	18th } or Royal { Irish	—
	21st } { N. B. Fuzileers	—
	23d or Royal Welch Fuzileers	—
	41st or the Invalids	—
	42d or the Royal Highlanders	—
	60th or Royal American Regim.	—
	71st	—
	72d	—
	73d } Invalids	—
	74th	—
Green.	75th	—
	2d or Queen's Royal Regiment	Sea Green.
	51st Regiment	Goslin Green.
	5th Regiment	Full Green.
	11th Regiment	
	49th Regiment	Deep Green.
	45th Regiment	
	55th Regiment	Willow Green.
	57th Regiment	
	66th Regiment	Yellowish Green.
	68th Regiment	
Buff.	69th Regiment	Buff.
	36th Regiment	
	39th Regiment	Buff.
	24th Regiment	
	19th Regiment	Buff.
	3d Regiment or Old Buffs	
	52d Regiment	Buff.
	54th Regiment	
	61st Regiment	Buff.

Facings of the Foot.

<i>Facings.]</i>	<i>Rank and Title.</i>	<i>[Distinctions]</i>
<i>Buff.</i>	14th Regiment	<i>Paleish Buff.</i>
	22d Regiment	
	27th Regiment of Inniskillin	
	31st Regiment	
	40th Regiment	
	48th Regiment	
<i>Yellow.</i>	62d Regiment	<i>Deep Yellow.</i>
	6th Regiment	
	9th Regiment	
	25th Regiment	
	29th Regiment	
	46th Regiment	
	10th Regiment	<i>Bright Yellow</i>
	12th Regiment	
	15th Regiment	
	16th Regiment	
	28th Regiment	
	34th Regiment	
<i>White.</i>	37th Regiment	<i>Pale Yellow.</i>
	38th Regiment	
	44th Regiment	
	20th Regiment	
	26th Regiment	<i>Philepot Yellow.</i>
	30th Regiment	
	67th Regiment	<i>White.</i>
	13th Regiment	
	65th Regiment	<i>Greyish White</i>
	17th Regiment	
<i>Red.</i>	32d Regiment	
	43d Regiment	<i>Red.</i>
	47th Regiment	
	33d Regiment	<i>Red.</i>
	53d Regiment	

Facings of the Foot.

Facings.]	Rank and Title.	[Distinctions.
	50th Regiment	
	58th Regiment	
	63d Regiment	
	64th Regiment	
<i>Black.</i>		<i>Black.</i>
	35th Regiment	
<i>Orange.</i>		<i>Orange.</i>
<i>Purple.</i>	50th Regiment	<i>Purple.</i>
<i>Pompadour.</i>	59th Regiment	<i>Pompadour.</i>
<i>Grey.</i>	70th Regiment	<i>Grey.</i>

Blue,	—	—	15
Green,	—	—	15
Buff,	—	—	11
Yellow,	—	—	19
White,	—	—	5
Red,	—	—	2
Black,	—	—	4
Orange,	—	—	1
Purple,	—	—	1
Pompadour,	—	—	1
Grey,	—	—	1

Total, — 75

Blue, faced with red. } Royal Regiments of Artillery.

Red, faced with black. } Corps of Engineers.

Red, faced with white. } The Divisions of Marines.

To be of the Colour of the Facings of their Corps, } Majors and Adjutants Horse-furniture.

1. The Division of Artillery
 2. The Division of Cavalry
 3. The Division of Infantry
 4. The Division of Engineers
 5. The Division of Medical
 6. The Division of Quartermaster
 7. The Division of Signal
 8. The Division of Transport
 9. The Division of Ordnance
 10. The Division of Commissary
 11. The Division of Provost
 12. The Division of Prisoners
 13. The Division of Public Works
 14. The Division of Public Health
 15. The Division of Public Safety
 16. The Division of Public Education
 17. The Division of Public Finance
 18. The Division of Public Administration
 19. The Division of Public Information
 20. The Division of Public Relations

PARTICULARS.		Serjeants.			Drum- mers.			Rank and File.			Grena- diers.			Pioneers.			Fifers.		
		l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Cloathing.	Coat and Breeches, —	3	1	8	1	15	9	1	5	6	1	8	10				1	15	9
	Waistcoat-Lace, —							0	0	6	0	0	6½						
	Hat, —	0	16	7	0	2	11	0	2	11	0	2	11	0	2	11	0	2	11
	Cap, Grenadier's, —	2	0	0	0	10	0				0	10	0	0	16	3	0	10	0
	Sash, —	0	8	0															
	Knot, —							0	1	0	0	1	0						
	Halberd, —	0	9	0															
	Firelock, —							1	10	0	1	10	0	1	10	0			
	Ramrod, —							0	2	0	0	2	0	0	2	0			
	Bayonet, —							0	5	0	0	5	0	0	5	0			
Arms and Accoutrements.	Sword, —	1	12	6	0	4	10½	0	4	10½	abt. 7	6	0	4	10½	0	4	10½	
	Shoulder-belt, —				0	6	0	0	4	0	0	4	0	0	4	0			
	Pouch, —							0	4	0	0	4	0	0	4	0			
	Waist-belt, —				0	5	0	0	5	0	0	5	0	0	5	0	0	5	0
	Sling, —							0	2	0	0	2	0	0	2	0			
	Cartridge-box, —							0	2	6	0	2	6	0	2	6			
	Belt and Frog, —							0	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	0			
	Match-case, —										0	1	6						
	Match-yard, —										0	0	3						
	Hatchet, —													0	7	0			
	Saw, —													0	9	0			
	Apron, —													0	4	6			
	Drum, —				1	10	6												
	Drum-case, —				0	5	0												
	Drum-sticks, —				0	2	4												
	Carriage, —				0	6	0										0	6	0
	Fife, —																0	7	6
	Fife-case, —																0	11	0
	Strings and Tassels, —																0	3	0
	Shirt, —	0	5	6	0	5	6	0	5	6	0	5	6	0	5	6	0	5	6
	Roller or Stock, —	0	0	6	0	0	6	0	0	6	0	0	6	0	0	6	0	0	6
	Black Stock, —	0	0	5	0	0	5	0	0	5	0	0	5	0	0	5	0	0	5
	White Gaiters, —	0	2	4	0	2	4	0	2	4	0	2	6	0	2	4	0	2	4
	Leather Gaiters, —	0	4	0	0	4	0	0	4	0	0	4	0	0	4	0	0	4	0
	Black Linen Ditto, —	0	1	8	0	1	8	0	1	8	0	1	10	0	1	8	0	1	8
	Black Tops, —	0	0	5	0	0	5	0	0	5	0	0	5	0	0	5	0	0	5
	Linen Drawers, —	0	2	4	0	2	4	0	2	4	0	2	6	0	2	4	0	2	4
	Pair of Shoes, —	0	4	6	0	4	6	0	4	6	0	4	6	0	4	6	0	4	6
	Pair of Stockings, —	0	1	4	0	1	4	0	1	4	0	1	4	0	1	4	0	1	4
	Knapsack, —	0	1	4	0	1	4	0	1	4	0	1	4	0	1	4	0	1	4
Sling for Ditto, —	0	0	5	0	0	5	0	0	5	0	0	5	0	0	5	0	0	5	
Haver-sack, —	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	
One Stock-buckle, or Clasps, —	0	0	5	0	0	5	0	0	5	0	0	5	0	0	5	0	0	5	
Shoe-buckles, —	0	0	7	0	0	7	0	0	7	0	0	7	0	0	7	0	0	7	
Garter-buckles, —	0	0	4	0	0	4	0	0	4	0	0	4	0	0	4	0	0	4	
Black Garters, —	0	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	2	
Cockade, —	0	0	6	0	0	6	0	0	6	0	0	6	0	0	6	0	0	6	
Oil-bottle, —	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	
Necessaries.	Brush and Picker, —							0	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	2			
	Worm, —							0	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	2			
	Screw-key, —							0	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	2			
	Hammer-cap, —							0	0	1½	0	0	1½	0	0	1½			
	Stopper, —							0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	1			
	Red Cap and Lining, —	0	0	5	0	0	5	0	0	5	0	0	5	0	0	5	0	0	5

Calculations of Expences which a Foot-soldier must necessarily be at for the first Year.

	<i>British.</i>	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>
Three Shirts	—	0	16	6
Two white Stocks or Rowlers	—	0	1	0
One black Stock	—	0	0	5
One Stock-buckle or Pair of Clasps		0	0	5
Three Pair of white yarn Stockings		0	4	0
Two Pair of strong Shoes	—	0	9	0
One Pair of white linen Spatterdashies		0	2	4
Two Pair of black Ditto	—	0	3	4
One Pair of black Leather Tops	—	0	0	5
One Pair of ticken Drawers	—	0	2	4
To altering Coat and Breeches	—	0	1	0
To making one Pair of skirt Breeches, Waistcoat and foraging Cap Lining for Ditto	— — —	0	2	11
Proportion of a Watch-coat	—	0	1	6
One Cockade	—	0	0	6
One Knapfack	—	0	1	4
One Haversack	—	0	1	0
An oil Bottle and Oil for his Arms	—	0	0	7
Brush and Picker	—	0	0	2
Worm and Turnkey	—	0	0	4
Hammer-cap and Stopper	—	0	0	2½
Shoe and garter Buckles and black Garters		0	1	1
To Shaving and hair Powder	—	0	3	0
To Blackball, Brushies, and black Ribbon		0	3	6
To Washing and Cooking	—	0	19	0
To Combs for his Hair	—	0	0	6
Deduction for Surgeon, &c.	—	0	4	4
To unavoidable Extraordinaries on Marches		5	6	
Total		4	6	2½

	<i>British.</i>	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>
Colonel's Allowance for half mounting, or the Value of the Necessaries given		0	7	10½
A Foot-soldier's Subsistence 52 Weeks, at 6 <i>d.</i> per Day	—	—	9	2 0
Total		9	9	10½
Remainder of Subsistence to support		5	3	8

Effects of deceased Officers.

When any commissioned Officer shall happen to die, or be killed in our Service, the Major of the Regiment, or the Officer doing the Major's Duty in his Absence, shall immediately secure all his Effects or Equipage then in Camp and Quarters; and shall before the next regimental Court Martial, make an Inventory thereof, and forthwith transmit the same to the Office of our Secretary at War, to the End that his Executors may, after Payment of his Debts in Quarters and Interment, receive the Overplus, if any be, to his or their Use.

Funeral Ceremony.

The Party (according to the Rank of the deceased) appointed to escort the Corpse to the Grave, is to draw up three deep, with open Ranks, facing the House or Marqueé where it is lodged, and when the Corpse is brought out of the House or Marqueé, the Officer commanding the Party will order:

Rest your Firelock.—Reverse your Firelock.—Rear Ranks close to the Front.—March.—The Ranks close.

To the Right wheel by Division.—March.—They wheel into two Divisions (if a small Party; or more, according

according to their Strength.) The Officer will then reverse his Esponton, and post himself in the Rear; the Serjeant reverses his Halbert, and goes to the Head of the Party.

Halt—The Party stands fast.

When all is ready, the Officer will order:

March—The Party marches off, led by the Serjeant, and opens Ranks; the Corpse follows the Party; the Drum beats the dead March: When it comes to the Church-yard, the Officer orders:

Halt—The Party stands fast.

Ranks to the Right and Left, wheel backwards—

March—Each Rank being told off, wheels back one half to the Right, the other to the Left, and forms a Lane.

Rest on your Arms reversed—They come to the funeral Posture; the Corpse, &c. then pass through the Lane, and he orders:

Shoulder—*Rest your Firelock*—*Shoulder your Firelock*—*To the Right and Left, wheel and form your Ranks*—*March*—They wheel up, and form as before.

Rear Ranks close to the Front—*March*—The rear Ranks of each Division close up.

Divisions to the Right or Left, wheel—*March*—They wheel.

Halt—They stand fast.

March—They march till they come to the Grave.

Halt—They stand fast.

Rear Ranks, to your proper Distance—They go to the Right about.

March—They march five and ten Paces.

Front—They come to their Front.

When the Adjutant gives him the Signal, he orders:

Make ready—*Present*—They present in the Air.

Fire—They fire a Volley, which is to be repeated

ed three Times, and after the third Time, they stand recovered. He then orders :

*Shoulder——Shut your Pans——*And being ordered to march the Party back, and dismiss it, he orders :

*Rear Ranks close to the Front——March——*They close.

*To the Right, wheel by Division——March——*They wheel again in two Divisions.

*Halt——*They stand fast.

*March——*And leads the first Division, the second following. They open their Ranks, and the Drum beats a March. When drawn up on the regimental Parade, he orders :

*Recover your Arms——To the Right about——March——*They go to their Quarters.

N. B. The Party is loaded before they marched off.

Effects of deceased Non-commissioned Officers.

When any Non-commissioned Officer, or private Soldier, shall happen to die, or to be killed in our Service, the then commanding Officer of the Troop or Company shall, in the Presence of two other commissioned Officers, take an Account of whatever Effects he dies possessed of, above his regimental Clothing, Arms and Accoutrements, and transmit the same to the Office of our Secretary at War ; which said Effects are to be accounted for, and paid to the Representative of such deceased non-commissioned Officer or Soldier. And in Case any of the Officers so authorized to take Care of the Effects of dead Officers and Soldiers, should, before they shall have accounted to their Representatives for the same, have Occasion to leave the Regiment, by Preferment or otherwise, they shall, before they be permitted to quit the same, deposit in the Hands of the commanding Officer, or of the Agent of the Regiment, all the Effects

THE MEDLEY. 205

Effects of such deceased non-commissioned Officers and Soldiers, in order that the same may be secured for, and paid to, their respective Representatives.

The *Funeral Ceremony* is much the same as before directed for an Officer. The Party is only to consist of, one Serjeant, one Corporal, and twelve private Men; no Drum.

The Funeral Expences of a Soldier, are :

To the Parson, two Shillings.

To the Sexton, one Shilling.

To the Grave-digger, one Shilling.

For the Pall, one Shilling.

To a Coffin, seven Shillings.

In all 12s.

Form of a Beating Order.

G. R.

These are to authorize you, by Beat of Drum or otherwise, to raise so many Volunteers in any County or Part of our Kingdom of *Great-Britain*, as are or shall be wanting to recruit and fill up the respective Companies of our _____ Regiment of Foot, under your Command, to the Number allowed upon the Establishment; and you are to cause the said Volunteers, to be raised and levied as aforesaid, to march under the Command of such commission or non-commissioned Officer, in such Numbers and at such Times, to any Place or Port you shall think proper: And all Magistrates, Justices of the Peace, Constables, and all other our Civil Officers whom it may concern, are hereby required to be assisting unto you in providing Quarters, impressing Carriages, and otherwise as there shall be Occasion; and for so doing,

ing,

ing, this our Order shall remain in Force for twelve Months from the Date hereof; and no longer.

Given at our Court at St. *James's*, this
Day of 17 in the
Year of our Reign.

By His Majesty's Command,

E. B.

To our trusty and well beloved
Esq; Colonel
of our Regiment of
Foot, or to the Officer appointed
to raise Volunteers for our said
Regiment.

The S P E E C H.

To all aspiring Heroes bold, who have Spirits above Slavery and Trade, and Inclinations to become Gentlemen, by bearing Arms in His Majesty's Regiment, commanded by the magnanimous _____ let them repair to the Drum-head [*Tow row dow.*] Each Gentleman Volunteer shall be kindly and honourably entertained, and enter into present Pay and good Quarters; and Gentlemen for your further and better Encouragement, you shall receive, one Guinea Advance, and a Crown to drink His Majesty King *GEORGE*'s Health, and when you come to join your respective Regiment, you shall receive new Hats, Caps, Arms, Cloaths and Accoutrements, and every Thing that is necessary and fitting to compleat a Gentleman Soldier.

God save their Majesties, and Success to their Arms.

Huzza! Huzza! Huzza!

Form

Form of an Attestation.

I *A. B.* do make Oath, that I am a Protestant,
and born of Protestant Parents, and by Trade a
and to the best of my Information
and Belief, was born in the Parish of
in the County of and Kingdom of

and that I have no Rupture, nor
ever troubled with Fits, that I am no way disabled
by Lameness or otherwise, but have the perfect Use
of my Limbs, and that I voluntarily enlisted myself
to serve His Majesty King *George*, as a private Soldier
in the Regiment of Foot commanded by
and that I have received all the enlisting Money
which I agreed for. As witness my Hand this
Day of 17

Witness present,
C. D. of the above
Regiment,

A. B. Recruit.

These are to certify, that the aforesaid
aged Years Feet Inches
high, Complexion, Hair, Eyes,
made came before me, one of His
Majesty's for the and
maketh Oath (as above) that he had voluntarily en-
listed himself to serve His Majesty King *George*, in
the abovementioned Regiment: He also acknowledg-
ed, he had heard the 2d. and 6th. Sections of the
Articles of War read unto him, against Mutiny and
Desertion, and took the Oath of Fidelity, according
to the Directions of the third Section of the Articles
of War, as follows:

E. F. Mayor.

I *A. B.* swear to be true to our Sovereign Lord
King *George*, and to serve him honestly and faithfully
in

in the Defence of his Person, Crown and Dignity,
against all his Enemies and Opposers whatsoever;
and to observe and obey His Majesty's Orders, and
the Orders of the Generals and Officers set over me
by His Majesty.

So help me God.

A. B. Recruit.

Sworn before me the
in the Year of our Lord, 17
at

Day of

E. P. Mayor.

I do certify, that *A. B.* is of Protestant
Parents, and bred up in the Protestant Religion. As
witness my Hand this Day of

17

G. H.

Minister of

Form of Discharges.

By commanding His Majesty's
Regiment of Foot, whereof
is Colonel.

These are to certify, that the Bearer hereof
aged Years, Feet Inches
high, Complexion, Hair,
Eyes, in the Regiment aforesaid, and in
Company, has served honestly and faithfully for the
Space of and is hereby discharged,
having first received a full and true Account of all
his Cloathing, Pay, Arrears of Pay, and all Demands
whatsoever, from the Time of his inlisting to this
present Day of his Discharge as further ap-
pears by his Receipt on the other Side hereof.

Given under my Hand and Regimental Seal, at
this Day of 17

To all whom it may concern, Civil and Military.

THE MEDLEY. 209

I do acknowledge, that I have received all my Cloathing, Pay, Arrears of Pay, and all Demands whatsoever, from the Time of my inlisting in the Regiment and Company mentioned in the above Discharge, to this present Day of my Dismission, as witness my Hand this Day of

17

And in Consideration of his Service, he is recommended to His Majesty's Royal Bounty of Hospital.

Given under my Hand and the Regimental Seal,
at this Day of 17

N. B. The above is supposed to be on the Back of the Discharge.

DISCHARGE.

By of His Majesty's Regiment of
Foot, commanded by

These are to certify, that the Bearer hereof private Soldier, has served in the abovesaid Regiment, and Company, for the Space of

Years; is for the Reason below mentioned, discharged from the said Regiment, he having received his Pay, Arrears of Pay, Cloathing of all Sorts, and all other just Demands, from the Time of his inlisting in the said Regiment to this Day of his Discharge, as appears by his Receipt on the Back of his Discharge; he is discharged, having

and to prevent any ill Use that may be made of this Discharge, by its falling into the Hands of any other Person whatsoever, here follows the Description of the abovesaid

aged	Years,	Feet	Inches
high,	Complexion,	Hair,	
Eyes,	born in the Parish of	County of	
	by Trade		

Given

Given under my Hand and Regimental Seal, at
this Day of 17

[Seal]

To all whom it may concern, Civil and Military.

I do acknowledge to have received all my Pay, Arrears of Pay, Cloathing of all Sorts, and all other just Demands, from the Day of my inlisting into the said Regiment to this Day of my Discharge.

[Signed by the discharged Man.]

Witness present,

Form of advertising Deserters.

Deferted from the		Regiment of
	commanded by	and
Company, quartered at		Years
of Age,	Feet	Inches high,
Complexion,	Hair,	Eyes, had on
when deferted	Coat,	Waistcoat,
Breeches, born at		in the County of
	by Trade a	inlistd by
at		the Day of

17

Whoever secures the said Deserter, so as he may be brought to Justice, having been guilty of Perjury and defrauding his Colonel, shall receive from the commanding Officer of the Regiment at Head-quarters, or of the Agent to the said Regiment, at his House the Sum of
over and above what is allowed by Act of Parliament.

[Signed by the commanding Officer of
the Regiment, and his Rank.

It

THE MEDLEY. 211

It is requested of all Well-wishers to His Majesty's Arms, to cause a Copy of this Advertisement to be posted up at the most publick Place.

Form to prevent any of the Out-pensioners of Chelsea Hospital, from being taken up as Deserters, or Vagrants.

We the Commissioners appointed to examine the said Out-pensioners, by Virtue of us, do certify, that the Bearer hereof now residing at _____ in or near the Market-town of _____ in the County of _____ aged about _____ Years, _____ Feet _____ Inches high _____ Complexion _____ Hair, formerly a _____ in _____ Regiment of _____ was admitted upon the Out-pension of the said Hospital, the _____ Day of _____ 17 _____ on Account of _____

This Certificate is to be shewn, and a Duplicate of the usual Affidavit, from Time to Time, given to the Person by whom he is paid his Out-pension, according to the late Act of Parliament.

Given under our Hands at _____ this _____ Day of _____ 17 _____

Form of Leave of Absence for Officers, granted in America, in Time of War.

By _____ Esq; Colonel in the _____ or Royal _____ Regiment, Brigadier General and Commander in Chief of His Majesty's Forces up the River St. Laurence.

Leave of Absence is hereby granted to _____ of the _____ Regiment of Foot, commanded by _____ to go to _____

for

for the Recovery of his Health; the Surgeon having certified to me, that it is absolutely necessary.

Given at this Day of

17

Form of Furloughs.

By Lieutenant Colonel
Majesty's
quartered at

Major of His
Regiment of

Permit the Bearer
above Regiment, and
from hence to
for the Space of

private Soldier in the
Company, to pass
in the County of
Days, ending the

Day of

17

and then to return to his

Regiment and Company, wherever they may happen to be, as no Excuse will be taken but that of Sickness, for his overstaying his Furlough, and that to be certified by an Officer of the Army, or Civil Magistrate, on the Back hereof, he behaving as becometh, and paying his Quarters, according to Act of Parliament. He is Feet Inches high without Shoes, Years old. Complexion, Hair, Eyes, and had on his full Regimentals.

Given under my Hand and Seal of the Regiment,
this Day of 17

(Seal.)

Major to the said Regiment, and Lieut. Col. in the Army.

He is sublisted to the Expiration of the Furlough.

*To all Officers Civil and Military,
whom it may concern.*

By

THE MEDLEY. 213

By the Field Officer commanding His Majesty's
Regiment of Foot, whereof
is Colonel.

Permit the Bearer hereof private
Soldier in the above Regiment, and
Company, aged Years, Size Feet
Inches high without Shoes, born in the
Parish of in the Town of
in the County of by Occupation a
to pass and re-pass from his present
Quarters at in Ireland, to
in *England*, he having Leave of Absence for the
Space of Days, to which Time he is
subsisted, and at the Expiration of which he is to re-
pair to the Quarters of the Company he belongs to,
wherever it may happen to be (Sickness and contrary
Winds excepted) on Pain of being treated as a De-
serter, should he not punctually comply with the
Terms of this Furlough.

Given under my Hand and Seal of the Regiment,
this Day of 17

(Seal.) to the
above Regiment of Foot.

N. B. It is requested that no Officer either Civil or
Military will renew this Furlough, except for the
Reasons before mentioned.

*Form to renew a Furlough when detained by contrary
Winds.*

These are to certify, that private
Soldier in the Regiment, and
Company, now quartered at in
came and acquainted me, that he
waited for a Passage to being Wind-
P bound;

214 THE MEDLEY.

bound; I, therefore, renew his Furlough for the Space of Days, he behaving as becometh.

Given under my Hand at this
Day of 17

*To all Officers Civil and Military,
whom it may concern.*

Form of a Pass.

By Regiment of Foot.

Permit the Bearer private Soldier
in the above Regiment, and Company,
to pass from hence to for the Space
of Days, to join his Colours or Com-
pany, he behaving as becometh a Soldier.

A. B.
in the Regiment.

To all concerned.

Allowances of Forage during the War in Germany and Flanders.

When his late and never to be forgotten Royal Highness the Duke of Cumberland commanded

In Germany a compleat Ration of Forage	}	14
consisted of old Hay		
Oats	—	8
Straw	—	6

In Flanders, a compleat Ration of Forage.

Old Hay	—	12
		Oats

THE MEDLEY.

215

Oats	—	—	—	—	lb.
Straw	—	—	—	—	10
					6

When double Rations of Corn were delivered they were reckoned a compleat Ration and in Lieu of Hay.

Each Time the Army forages, five or six Rations to be weighed in the Presence of the Field Officer commanding the Foragers, and if any short of Weight or Measure, the Proportion of that Deficiency to be demanded upon the Allowance which each Regiment is intitled to by Regulation.

Forage and Foragers.

No more than one Ration to be given to any Horse.

No more than 16 Sacks of Corn to be put into any Waggon.

Double Rations of Hay are to be reckoned as Hay and Corn.

One Hundred Rations of Grass or Clover, weighing 40 lb. allowed each Regiment of Foot *per Diem*.

The Quarter Masters of Regiments to pick out five of the largest, and the Country Commissaries five of the smallest Bundles of Hay or Grass; they are to be weighed together, and divided by Ten, and every Bundle they receive afterwards is to be given as weighing the aforesaid tenth Part.

Two Hundred Faggots for each Battalion *per Diem*.

Of Straw, four hundred Bundles each Battalion, including Officers, Servants and Baw-men; each Bundle to weigh twelve Pounds and an Half; that Quantity to be delivered every eight Days.

American weekly Allowance of Provisions for one Person.

Seven Pounds of Bread or Flour.
 Seven Pounds of Beef or Pork.
 Half a Pound of Rice.
 Three Pounds of Peas.
 Six Ounces of Butter.

When they receive fresh Meat, each Person is to have one Pound of Beef a Day; and one Pound of Flour; a Bullock's Head is to be issued for eight Pounds, a Tongue for three Pounds, and a Heart for its Weight.

Proportion of Rations.

Brigadier General	—	—	12
Colonel	—	—	6
Lieutenant Colonel	—	—	5
Major	—	—	4
Captain	—	—	3
Subaltern	—	—	2
Staff	—	—	2

Allowances of Straw and Firing in Ireland, 1759, judged necessary for each Tent.

The first Delivery of Straw for each Tent is to be six Bundles, each Bundle to weigh twenty Pounds of wheat Straw; two Bundles of the like Weight to be delivered to each Tent every seven Days afterwards during their Encampment. Where wood Firing is made Use of, twenty Pounds Weight is allowed to each Tent a Day, provided the Wood has been some Time cut; and every Day, if green, forty Pounds Weight, adding one Faggot of Furze. If Furze be made Use of without Wood, two Faggots a Day to each Tent, provided each Faggot weighs twenty Pounds

THE MEDLEY. 217

Pounds; but if the Custom of the Country is, to make their Faggots of sixteen Pounds Weight, two Faggots and a Half should be allowed each Day. This Computation is to shew, that double the Weight should be allowed where only Furze is burnt.

If Turf is made Use of instead of Wood or Furze, forty-four Turf should be allowed to each Tent a Day.

Ten Pounds is allowed for each Baw-horse in *Great Britain* and *Ireland*. Sunks and Sods to be furnished out of the above Allowance.

Form of an Affidavit for receiving British Half-pay.

County of _____ maketh Oath,
that he has not between the _____ of
17 _____ and the _____ of 17 _____ any
other Place or Employment of Profit, Civil or Military under His Majesty, besides his Allowance of
Half-pay; as a reduced _____ in Colonel
late Regiment of _____

Sworn before me _____ Day of
17 _____

N. B. The proper Periods for swearing the above, are, the 25th of *June*, and the 25th of *December*; immediately after which, they should be delivered or transmitted to the Agent for Half-pay.

State of British Half-pay.

			Horfe.		Drag ⁿ .		Foot.	
			s.	d.	s.	d.	s.	d.
Colonel	} and Captain <i>per</i> Day	{	13	6	13	0	12	0
Lt. Col.			12	0	10	0	8	6
Major			11	6	8	0	7	6
Captain	—	—	7	0	5	6	5	0
Lieutenants	—	—	5	0	3	0	2	4
Cornet, Ensign & 2d. Lieut. Mar.	—	—	4	6	2	6	1	10
Quarter-Master	—	—	3	0	2	0	2	0
Adjutant	—	—	2	0	2	0	2	0
Surgeon	—	—	2	0	2	0	2	0
Chaplain	—	—	3	4	3	0	3	4

Physician Hosp.	—	} Forces	{ 10 s.
Apothecary	—		
Dep. Commissary	—		
			5
			5

Widows Pensions.

			<i>Per Annum.</i>
Colonel	—	—	50 ^l .
Lieutenant Colonel	—	—	40
Major	—	—	30
Captain	—	—	26
Lieutenant	—	—	20
Ensign, Cornet, Adjut. Quar. Mast. Surg. Chapl.	—	—	16

N. B. The Pensions are the same upon the *Irish* Establishment, except the Difference of Currency.

EXERCISE.

EXERCISE.

WORDS OF COMMAND.

Officers take Care,

Recover your Arms,

March,

Order your Arms,

Take Care to perform the Manual Exercise :

Rest	—	—	Your	{	Firelocks.
Order	—	—			
Ground	—	—			
Take up	—	—			
Rest	—	—			
Shoulder	—	—			
Secure	—	—			
Shoulder	—	—			
Fix	—	—			
Shoulder	—	—		{	Bayonets. Firelocks. Arms.
Present	—	—			

To the Right	—	}	Face.
To the Right	—		
To the Right about	—		
To the Left	—		
To the Left	—		
To the Left about	—		

Charge	—	—	Your	{	Bayonets. Firelocks. Arms. Firelocks.
Shoulder	—	—			
Advance	—	—			
Shoulder	—	—			

Prime and Load.

As Front Rank, - - Make Ready,
Present,
Fire.

As Center Rank, - - Make Ready,
Present,
Fire.

As Rear Rank, - - Make Ready,
Present,
Fire.

Rear Ranks, - - - Close to the Front,
March.
Make Ready,
Present,
Fire.

Charge your Bayonets.

Recover your Arms.

Rear Ranks take your Distance.
March.

Shut your Pans.

Clean your Bayonets.
Shoulder.

Officers, recover your Arms,
March,
Halt.

Unfix your Bayonets,
Shoulder.

Manœuvres,

Manœuvres, &c. and Explanations.

WORDS OF COMMAND.

By Battalions, Wings, or Grand Divisions,—Form Column from the Center.

The six center Files move forward, the Wings face inwards, marching by the Files to the Front, following the center Files : If the Column is formed by Battalions, the Grenadiers face with the Wings, and follow them : If by Wings, the Grenadiers will march obliquely to the Right and Left, and post themselves at the Head of each Column ; If by grand Divisions, the Grenadiers will post themselves at the Head of the right and left Columns of the Battalion.

Reduce the Column.

The Column or Columns face outward, except the center Files, and each Wing wheels to the Right and Left to the Front, and form Battalion : If the Column was formed by Battalion, the Grenadiers wheel with the Wings ; If by Wings, or Grand Divisions, they face outwards, and march by Files to their former Posts on the Flanks.

By Companies — Form Column from the Center.

The two center Companies move on slowly forward ; the Grenadiers, with those on the Right and Left, face to the Center, and march by Files : When the Officers see their Companies joined, they give the Word of Command, *To the Front turn* ; the Column is then formed.

Form

Form Battalion.

The two center Companies keep moving, without gaining Ground; the other six, and the Grenadiers, face outwards, and march by Files: As soon as they have got Ground enough to march in Front, the Officers of Companies will give the Word, *To the Front turn*. When the whole have got up, a Signal is given from the Center for the Battalion to move forward.

*Second Method of forming the Column by Companies—
See Plan V.*

Grand Divisions to the Center form Column by Files to the Front — March.

Each Grand Division leads out by Files, and marches obliquely towards the Center, and forms in one Body on the March. The Column is then formed.

Take Care to form Battalion.

The Grand Divisions turn to their Front, and gain their proper Distance.

Form Battalion.

They wheel and form Battalion.—*N. B.* The Grenadiers to be disposed of in such Manner as the Commanding Officer shall direct.

*Grand Divisions by Files form Column to the Rear—
March.*

By Files they lead out to the Rear, marching obliquely towards the Center, and form in one Body on the March. The Column is then formed.

Take

Take Care to form Battalion.

The Grand Divisions turn to their Fronts, and gain their proper Distance.

Form Battalion.

They wheel and form. — *N. B.* The Grenadiers to be disposed of in such Manner as the Commanding Officer shall direct.

By Grand Divisions form Column to the Right—March.

The Battalion are now supposed to be in one Line : The Grand Division on the Right marches twelve Paces, the second eight Paces, the third four Paces, the fourth on the Left stands fast : When the Divisions have made the Number of Paces ordered, the three Divisions on the Left, and the left Division of Grenadiers, face to the Right, and march by Files, till they cover the right-hand Grand Division, which Division has the Word from their Officers, *To the Front turn.* The right Division of Grenadiers marches obliquely to the Left, till it comes opposite the Center of the first Grand Division : The left Division of Grenadiers covers the Rear of the Column.

March to close Order.

They close up to the front Division ; The Column is then formed.

Form Battalion.

The Grenadiers in Front turn to the Right, and march by Files to their former Post : The first Grand Division stands fast ; the other three, and the Grenadiers

Grenadiers in the Rear, turn to the Left, and keep marching by Files: When the Officer, commanding the second Division, sees he has ground enough to form on the Left of the first Grand Division, he gives the Word, *To the Front turn*, and they march up and join the first Grand Division: The other two Divisions, and the Division of Grenadiers, form in the same Manner.

Grand Division march to half Distance.

Suppose the Battalion marching in Grand Divisions. The Grand Divisions close to half Distance.

Form the Square.

The front and rear Divisions keep moving on very slow; the right-hand Companies of the other two wheel to the Right: So soon as they have performed their Wheelings, they turn to the Left, and form the right Face of the Square; the left-hand Companies observe the contrary, and form the left Face: The front Division of Grenadiers (being subdivided) marches obliquely to the Right and Left, leaving an Interval for the Front of the Square, with which they will dress; the rear Division of Grenadiers will also march obliquely to its Right and Left, and dress with the rear Face of the Square. The Square is then formed.

Reduce the Square.

The front and rear Faces continue marching; the right-hand Companies of the two other Divisions wheel to the Left by Files, and the left-hand Companies to the Right by Files. When the commanding Officers of Companies see the Companies join, they will each give the Word, *To the Front turn*, the front Division of Grenadiers will advance briskly by the

the oblique Step, and join opposite the Center of the first Grand Division : The rear Division of Grenadiers will march by Files, till it joins in the Rear of the fourth Grand Division, when the Officer will order, *To the Front turn.*

Companies march to half Distance.

Suppose the Battalion marching by Companies. The Companies close to half Distance with a quick Pace.

Form the Oblong Square.

The Companies being told off in two Platoons, they wheel to the Right and Left, proceeding in every Respect as is already directed for forming the Square ; the Grenadiers also act as is there directed, or cover the front and rear Faces, till the Square halts, when they must cover the Angles.

Reduce the Square.

The Platoons wheel as before directed for the Companies in reducing the Square.

March to close Order.

The Companies close up.

Form Battalion.

The Grenadiers in Front turn to the Right, and march by Files to their Post on the Right ; the first Company on the Right stands fast, the other seven Companies, and the left Division of Grenadiers, turn to their Left and march by Files. When the Officer, commanding the second Company, sees he has Ground enough to form on the Left of the right-hand Company,

226 THE MEDLEY.

Company, he gives the Word, *To the Front turn*, marches up and joins, then *halt, dress*, and so in like Manner the other six Companies, and the Division of Grenadiers.

Second Method of forming the Oblong Square.

Form the Oblong Square — March.

The left Wing of the Battalion, and the Grenadiers on the Left, face to the Right; the whole step off; the right Wing advances eight Paces in Front, then turns to the Left, both Wings marching as faced, till both Wings double as far as the second Company on the Right and Left of the Battalion.

To the Front turn.

Both Wings turn to the Front, except the Grenadiers, and the right and left-hand Companies of the Battalion: The right Wing forms the front Face, and the left Wing the rear Face; the right-hand Company of the Battalion wheels to the Right by Files, and forms the right Face; the Grenadiers do the same, and cover it; the left-hand Company observes the contrary, and forms the left Face; the left Division of Grenadiers do the same, and covers the left Face.

Reduce the Square.

The right Wing of the Battalion turns to the Right, and the left Wing to the Left, and each marches as faced till they have Room to form Battalion.

To the Front turn.

The Grenadiers and flank Companies wheel up, and the Battalion turns to the Front, the left Wing marches up eight Paces, which forms the Battalion.
—*Halt—Dress.*

Third

Third Method of forming the Oblong Square.

Form the Oblong Square.

The two center Platoons, and the right Division of the Grenadiers, stand fast; the Wings and left Division of Grenadiers face inwards.

March.

The center Platoons march forward; the Grenadiers on the Right march obliquely to the Left, till they cover the center Platoons; the Wings wheel in to the Right and Left by Files, following in the Rear the Flanks of the center Platoons, till the Wheel comes to the flank Platoons, which Platoons join in the Rear, turn to their Front, and form the rear Face; the left Division of Grenadiers marches on till it covers the rear Face, then turns to the Front.

Form Battalion.

The Grenadiers in Front turn to the Right, and march by Files to their former Post; the center Platoons stand fast; the Wings keep marching till the front File of each Platoon comes close to the Rear of the center Platoons, at which Time each Platoon has the Word of Command from its own Officer, *To the Front turn*; then lets them march to the Right and Left, and wheel up in their respective Places in Battalion, and so on to the two flank Platoons, who face to the Right and Left, march by Files, and form on the Flanks; the left Division of Grenadiers faces to the Left, and marches by Files to its Post on the left of the Battalion.

Fourth Method of forming the Oblong Square—See Plan VII.

Battalion

Battalion pass the Bridge — March.

The Grenadiers will advance briskly to the River, and fire obliquely at the Head of the Bridge, till the Front of the Battalion comes up to it, when they will march and follow the Battalion by Files : The two center Platoons of the Battalion move forward ; the Wings face to the Center, and wheel by Files in the Rear of the center Platoons : When the Battalion has passed the Bridge, the commanding Officer gives the Word of Command.

Form Battalion.

The two center Platoons stand fast, and begin to fire by Word of Command from their respective Officers ; the other Platoons march on till the front File of each Platoon comes close to the center Platoons ; then the Officer commanding gives the Word *To the Front turn* ; and marching to the Right or Left, wheel up in their proper Places in Battalion, and begin to fire as soon as formed : The Battalion keeps a continued Fire from the Center to the Flanks (including the Grenadiers) till the commanding Officer orders them to cease.

Battalion repass the Bridge.

The Grenadiers and two center Platoons make ready, the Battalion faces outwards ; upon the Word *March* to the Battalion, the Grenadiers and center Platoons will begin firing ; when the Grenadiers have fired, they will march obliquely to the Center, halt, and fire, at least once, before they join in the Front of the center Platoons, who will have fired as often as possible.

March.

March.

The right and left Wing of the Battalion counter-march in the Rear, wheeling by Files on the Ground they stand on, and the head Files of each meet in the Rear of the center Platoons, at which Time they wheel up and continue their March for the Bridge: When the last Files of the Wings have wheeled, the two center Platoons get the Word of Command from their own Officers, *To the Right about—March*—and march in the Rear till the Battalion have repassed the Bridge: When the head Files have passed, they wheel to the Right and Left outwards, taking great Care to observe the proper Distance for the Battalion to form; the center Platoons will march four Paces beyond the Battalion; then turn to the Right and Left outwards: The Grenadiers will fire once after the center Platoons go to the Right about; then recover their Arms, and go to the Right about: When they have passed the Bridge, and come close to the center Platoons, they will turn to the Right and Left outward, and march by Files along the Rear of the Battalion to their Posts on the Flanks. The commanding Officer then gives the Word of Command.

Turn to the Front—Halt—Dress.

Which forms Battalion: The center Platoons marching up into their Interval.

Take Care to pass the Defile.

To pass a Defile, where only two Men can march in Front. The two center Files stand fast; the Grenadiers and Wings of the Battalion face inwards.

March.

The two center Files march forward, the Wings move to the Center, and when they join, a File from each Wing will turn to the Front and follow the center Files.

Form Battalion.

The two center Files stand fast, the other Files run up and dress with the Center ones; the Files on the right Wing form on the Right of each other; those of the left Wing on the Left.

Battalions, Wings, or Grand Divisions, advance by Files from the Right or Left.

The whole turn to the Right or Left, and each Wing or Grand Division leads out by Files from the Right or Left; the Grenadiers do the same, keeping dressed with the front Files of the Battalion.

Form Battalion.

The front File of each Wing or Grand Division, and the Grenadiers, wheel to the Right or Left.

Turn to the Front.

The whole turn to the Front.

Battalions, Wings, Grand Divisions or Companies, retreat by Files from the Right or Left.

The whole face to the Right or Left.

March.

March.

Each Battalion, Wing, Grand Division or Company, wheels off by Files to the Right or Left; the Grenadiers do the same.

*By Files to the Right or Left wheel—To the Front turn.
Halt—Dress.*

Which forms the Battalion.

*Battalions, Wings, Grand Divisions or Companies,
form Ranks intire.*

They turn to the Right (except the right-hand File.)

March.

The right-hand File moves forward; the other Files move on till they come on their Ground, then turn to the Front and follow the front File.

Form Battalion.

The three first Men stand fast, the rest form up in Files upon the Left of them, which form the Battalion.

Battalion advance from the Right by Files.

The Battalion turns to the Right, and wheels to the Left by Files.

From three deep form two deep.

Every second and third File (being told off from the Right) opens an Interval sufficient for a File to march into.

Q₂

March.

March.

The Men in the Rear of each File face to the Left and come up with a quick Pace in to the Interval.— They are then formed two deep.

From two deep form three deep.

The Men that moved up, fall back again in to their former File.

Spring to the Center.

The right and left Wing of the Battalion springs to the Center, and the Battalion is formed three deep again.

From Grand Divisions form Companies.

The right-hand Company of each Grand Division continue marching forward; the left-hand Companies turn to their Right and march by Files: When the Officers see that they cover the right-hand Companies, they will turn to the Front: Both Divisions of Grenadiers will incline to their Right, and cover the front and rear Companies.

In this Manner the Battalion is to be formed into Wings, then Grand Divisions, then Companies, then Platoons; the Signal is *the Pioneer's March*: To form large Bodies from small ones; the Signal is *the Troop*, on beating of which (if the Battalion is marching in Platoons) the right-hand Platoons of each Company will keep moving, without gaining any Ground; the left-hand Platoons will march obliquely to their Left, and form on the Left of the right-hand Ones; the Grand Division will be formed by the Companies in like Manner; then Wings, then Battalion.

In

In marching by the oblique Step, in Ranks, Companies, Sub or Grand Divisions, Wings, Battalion or Column, a particular Attention must be paid by the Officers, non commissioned Officers and Soldiers, that they keep parallel to their Front, and not advance on the right Flank, when they advance to the Left: The same to be observed, not to advance on the Left, when they advance to the Right.

To complete Files in Action, the Battalion is to complete its Files by the Ranks inclining from the Right and Left to the Center of the Battalion: The Officers and non-commissioned Officers in the Rear are to see it done expeditiously.

When a Regiment disperses, how it forms itself again.

The great Advantage of this consists in a Regiment being able to form in a Moment, therefore every Officer, non-commissioned Officer, and private Man, must know his right-hand Man, File, Leader and Company, that they may, with the utmost Quickness, be formed ready for whatever may present itself. When a Regiment is suddenly alarmed, or repulsed by the Enemy, or has performed this Evolution, it may be formed again with the utmost Celerity: Commanding Officers should therefore accustom their Regiments to this Evolution, in order that they may know how to form themselves when ordered.

Take Care to disperse—March.

The Officers, with the Colours, march six Paces forward.

A Long Roll.

By the two orderly Drummers, Regiment disperses.

To

To Arms.

The Battalion will form, and the Officers, non-commissioned Officers, and private Men, will fall in to their own File, and dress by the Colours.

REMARKS proper to be made by the
REVIEWING OFFICER.

OFFICERS,

Properly armed, ready in their Exercise, salute well, in good Time, and with a good Air; Uniform genteel, old, but still very good.
A good Corps, that makes a very handsome Appearance.

MEN,

A very good Body, well limbed, but some of them old, that are to be changed: Clean and well dressed; Accoutrements well put on; very well sized in the Ranks; the Serjeants expert in their Duty, and Drummers perfect in their Beatings.

EXERCISE,

In very good Time, and with Life; carry their Arms well; march, wheel, and form well.

MANOEUVRES,

Performed with great Exactness, in quick and slow Time.

FIRINGS.

Six and thirty Rounds, close and well.

By Companies from the Right and Left to the center
two

two Rounds ; twice from the Center to the Right and Left, by Companies ; once by Grand Divisions, from the Right and Left to the Center ; by four right-hand Companies, and left Division of Grenadiers, and the four left-hand Companies, and the right Division of Grenadiers, one Round ; right Wing of the Battalion, and left Wing, one Round ; Battalion obliquely to the Right and to the Left, one Round each ; Battalion to the Front, one Round, by the above Firings, advancing and retreating.

Left-hand Companies, and the right Division of Grenadiers, before they retreat by Files ; and the four right-hand Companies, and the left Division of Grenadiers ; when marched up to their Intervals, one Round each : In the Square, by the Faces and Companies, one Round each : Street-firing, advancing and retreating, one Round each : A Volly, one Round.

RECRUITS,

Such as will mend the Regiment.

ARMS,

Good and clean kept ; Halberds bad ; Drums good ; a few Swords wanting, and some bad.

ACCOUTREMENTS,

Good.

CLOATHING,

Of Year, but still pretty good and clean.

ACCOUNTS,

Kept regular.

COMPLAINTS,

None.

UNI-

UNIFORM,

Red, lapelled and with looped ;
red Waistcoats and Breeches, Buttons,

A very fine Regiment, well appointed, well disciplined, compleat, and fit for Service.

N. B. This is formed upon a Supposition that the Regiment answers, in all Respects, to the Remarks just before-mentioned.

Of the Sounds of the Drum.

It is very necessary that Soldiers should be instructed to know the Sounds and Beatings of the Drum (before they are dismissed from the Drill;) as, whether it be the *General—Assembly—March—Reveille—Troop—Retreat—Tattoo—To Arms—Parley*, or *Chamade*, &c.—As by the Sound and Beatings of the Drum, they are taught to march and perform their Exercise, Manœuvres, &c. it is very proper to use them to certain Sounds, Beatings and Signals.

To beat the *General*, is for the whole to make ready to march—The *Assembly*, is for them to repair to their Colours—The *March* is to command them to move—*Reveille*, at Day-break, is to warn the Soldiers to rise, the Centries to cease challenging, &c.—The *Troop*, is to assemble them together, the Rolls called, and the Men inspected for Duty—*Retreat*, is at Sun-set, the Rolls called, the Men warned for Duty, and the Orders of the Day read—*Tattoo* is at ten o'Clock at Night in Summer, and at nine in Winter; the Soldiers repair to their Quarters or Barracks, and the non-commissioned Officers of each Squad call over their Rolls, and every Man is to remain in his Quarters or Barracks till *Reveille* beating next Morning—*To Arms*, is to advertise them to stand to their Arms, or to repair to their Alarm-posts—*Parley*, or *Chamade*, is to desire a Conference with the Enemy.

SIGNALS.

SIGNALS.

Turn or face to the Right	1 Single Stroke and Flam
Turn or face to the Left	2 Single Strokes and Flam
To the Right about	3 Single Strokes and Flam
To the Left about	4 Single Strokes and Flam
To wheel to the Right	{ Roll one single Stroke and Flam
To wheel to the Left	{ Roll two single Strokes and Flam
To wheel to the Right abt.	{ Roll three single Strokes and Flam
To wheel to the Left abt.	{ Roll four single Strokes and Flam
To front — — —	Strong double Flam
To make ready —	Preparative
To cease firing — —	General
To march — — —	March
Quick Pace — —	Quick March
To charge Bayonets —	Point of War
To form Battalion —	To Arms
To ease,	Tow-row-dow
To secure, } Your Arms	{ First Part of the Taptoo
To shoulder }	{ Last Part of ditto
To call the Adjutant	First Part of the Troop
To call a Serjeant and Corp ^t . of each Comp. }	2 Rolls 6 Flams
To call all the Serjeants and Corporals — }	3 Rolls 9 Flams
To assemble the Pioneers	Pioneers March
To assemble the Drum ⁿ .	Drummers Call

N. B. There is no Order to practise these Signals.

R

Cautions

Cautions and Directions to Young Officers.

When an Officer is sent on Party or Detachment, if he sees or gets Intelligence of an Enemy being superior to him, and are marching, in order to intercept him, I would have the Officer send a Drummer, beating the long March, a different Road from that he intends to march, with Orders to conceal himself from the Enemy, in order to decoy them that Way, or, at least, to give Time to form an Ambuscade.

If you are sent with a Party or Detachment to occupy a Post, and that you find the Enemy are lurking about, in order to intercept you, march in the Darkness of the Night (for if you should not succeed in your Attack; it will save the Lives of many in the Retreat.) If you meet the Enemy, rush on them with your Bayonets (for the Courage, Strength and Activity, of the *British* Troops, will add greatly to your Success;) but you must not fire on any Account, lest you may alarm the rest of the Enemy.

When you are to march through Woods, Enclosures, near Houses, or by Cross-roads, you should never halt or encamp in the little Openings of the Woods, nor ever pass through them without examining the Skirts with the utmost Care and Precaution (for, next to Bravery, it is the best Qualification in a young Officer.) You should always have Scouts, that you can depend upon, to reconnoitre, for beware of being drawn into an Ambuscade: You cannot be too much on your Guard, particularly when you come near a Pond or Rivulet, for the Enemy will suppose you fatigued and dry, and take for granted the Soldiers will strive who shall be first to drink, and thereby throw themselves into Confusion, if the strictest Discipline is not duly observed.

When the Enemy beats a March, you are to suppose them advancing, upon which the Regiment forms in order of Battle.

Suppose

Suppose the Enemy marching to your Front, upon which beat a Preparative, and fire by Companies till they advance within forty Yards, then beat the General, and halt the Battalion; then fire the center and rear Ranks; the Front to reserve their Fire, and dropping their Muzzles till they can count ten, after the center and rear Ranks have fired; and when the Enemy is within twenty Yards, fire your front Rank, and rush on with your Bayonets.

Suppose the Enemy recovering their Order, and sustained by a superior Number of Troops to you, your only Expedient is to retreat in good Order: If the Enemy pursues, fire by Companies, retreating, and continue the Retreat till you can occupy some Ground to Advantage, where you may be able to make a Stand: But this is difficult to put in Practice, without having a Knowledge of the Country.

Suppose the Enemy thrown into Disorder in the Pursuit (which has often happened) bring the Battalion to its proper Front, prepare for the Attack, and advance with a quick Pace, till you come within twenty Yards of them, then give a general Discharge, and rush on with your Bayonets.

Suppose the Enemy in an enclosed Country or Village, or behind a Defile necessary to be forced, Regiment forms a Column.

Suppose the Enemy, after gaining a champaign Ground, offering Battle, Regiment reduces the Column, and forms Battalion, and fires by sub or grand Divisions.

Suppose a Regiment of Cavalry marching up against a Regiment of Infantry, Regiment forms the hollow Square: If they attempt to force the Square, fire a Volley when they come within twenty Yards, and charge Bayonets: The latter against Cavalry is preferable to fire.

Suppose the Cavalry repulsed and retiring, Regiment reduces the Square, forms Battalion, and pursues

sues with a quick Pace, keeping their Ranks well dressed.

Suppose the Cavalry are able to form again, and attempt to come to the Charge, it will be necessary to form one or more Columns, lest the Cavalry might move down in Columns, which they would be apt to do.

The *Prussian* Cavalry execute three Manners of Charges; one directly straight before it, without deflecting either to the Right or Left; in the second, it turns off to the Right, for outstretching the Enemy's Line by a Squadron or two; in the third, it bears to the Left, for outstretching the Enemy's right Flank.

All these Charges are performed at full Gallop; at the first Word of Command, *March*, the Line immediately moves in a Trot; at the second, it puts on a Gallop: Thus it proceeds five or six hundred Paces till, at the Command, the whole Body stops and dresses.

PLAN I.



6 Pounders

Pioneers

Drum^r Fif^r Serj^t

Serj^t Drum^r Fif^r Serj^t

Serj^t Drum^r Fif^r Serj^t

Serj^t Drum^r Fif^r Adju^t

Line

of Officers 4 Paces From the Front Rank

PLAN. 1.

Battalion ready for Exercise.

Colonel Six paces.

General 20 paces during the Manual.

Major 100 Yards. Orderly Drummers.

Adjutant.

Serj^t Major.

Line

of Officers 4 Paces From the Rear Rank

PLAN. 2



6 Pounders

Pioneers

Serj^t

Serj^t

Serj^t

Serj^t

Another View.

Reviewing General 20 paces before Front Rank.

Major 100 Yards. Orderly Drummers.

Commanding officer 2 paces beyond the Major

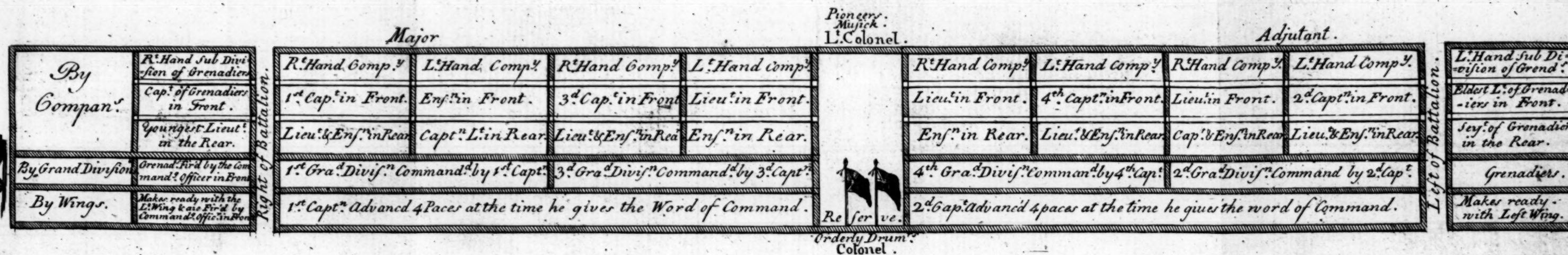
Musick. Drum^r & Fifers 4 paces behind Command^r Officer.

Line

of Serjeants 9 Paces behind Musick &c.

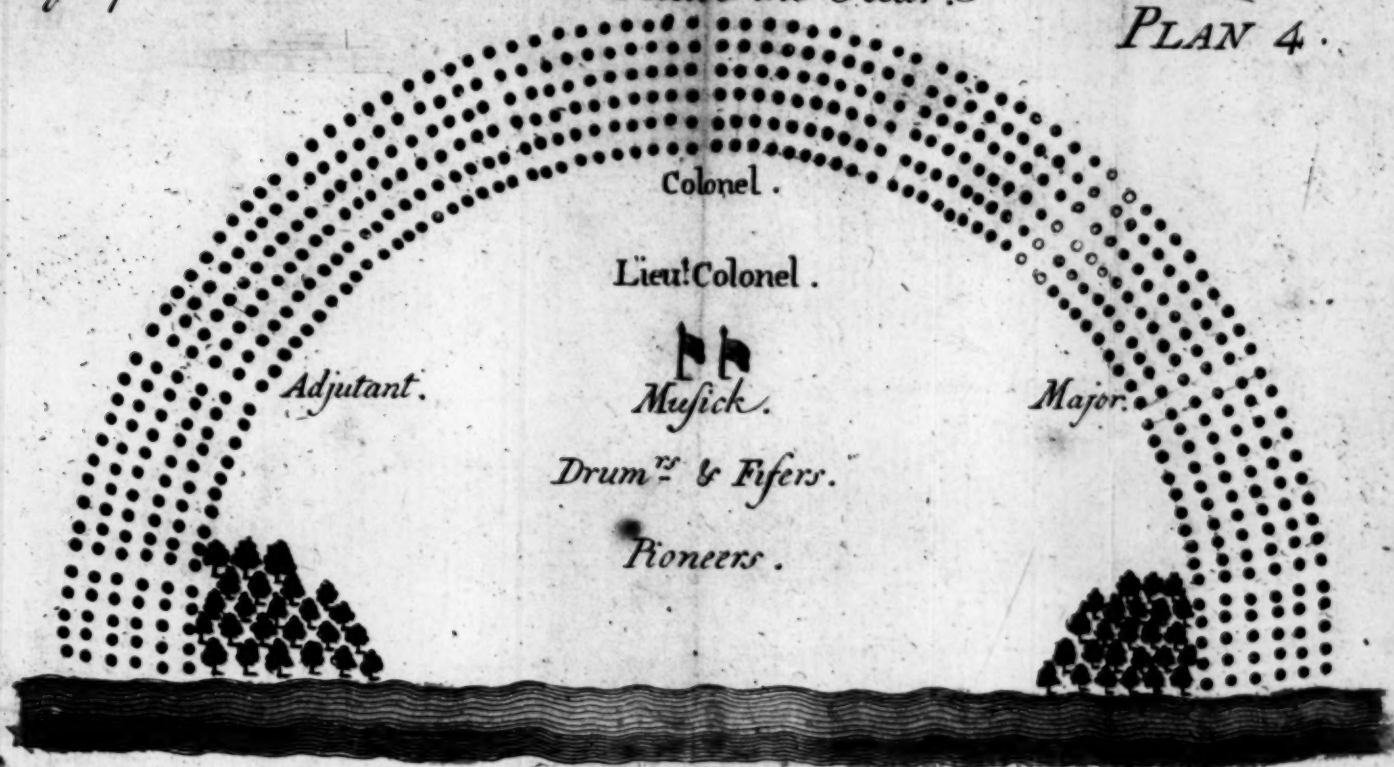
Battalion in Firing Order.

PLAN. 3.

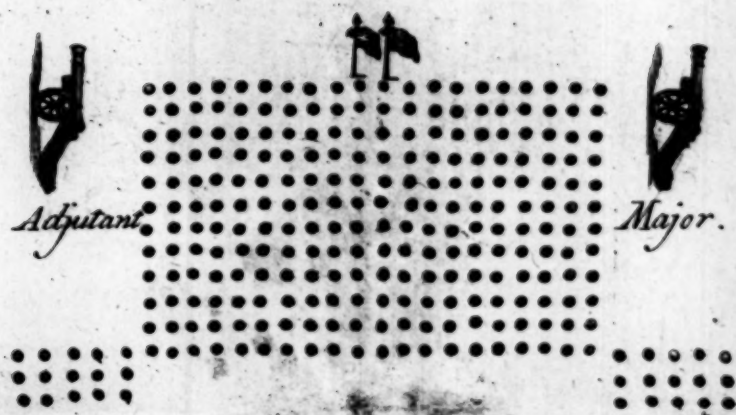


*Battalion Six deep in a Semi-circular Order to oppose Cavalry,
Which may be usefull at the Debarking of Troops, or for Necessity, Making
use of Either wood water &c to Secure the Rear.*

PLAN 4.



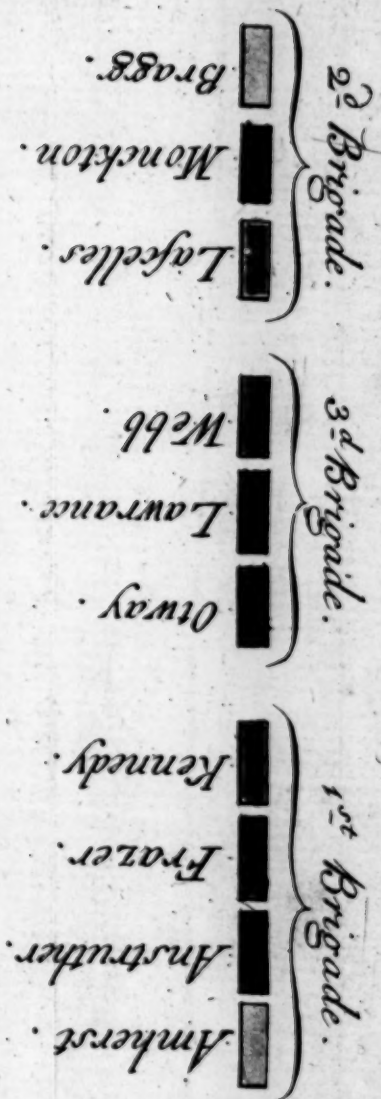
PLAN 5.



*Battalion form'd in Column by Comp^y
from the Center, on the March with Cannon & Grenadiers.*

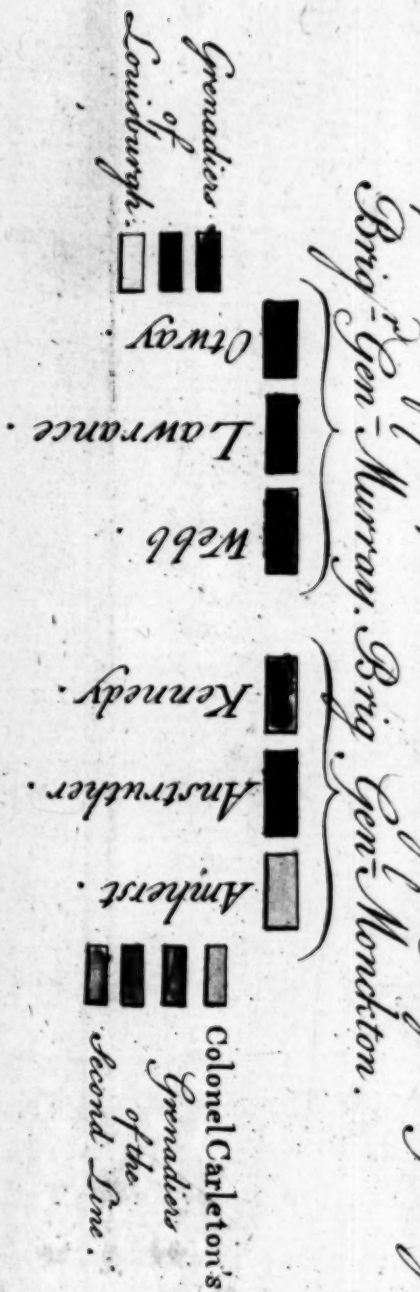
PLAN 6.

MOIFFES, Order of Encampment of the Army in one Line.

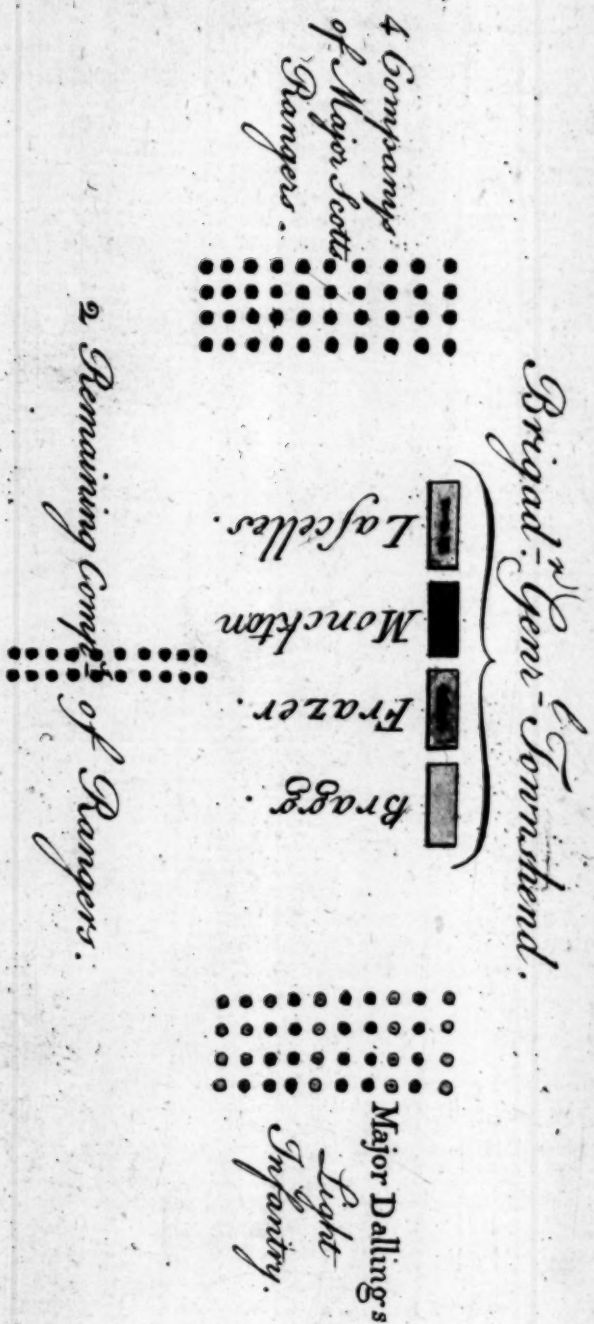


Order of Battle in two lines.

See Battalions in the first Line, and Troop in the Second with the Disposition of the Grenadiers Rangers & Light Infantry.

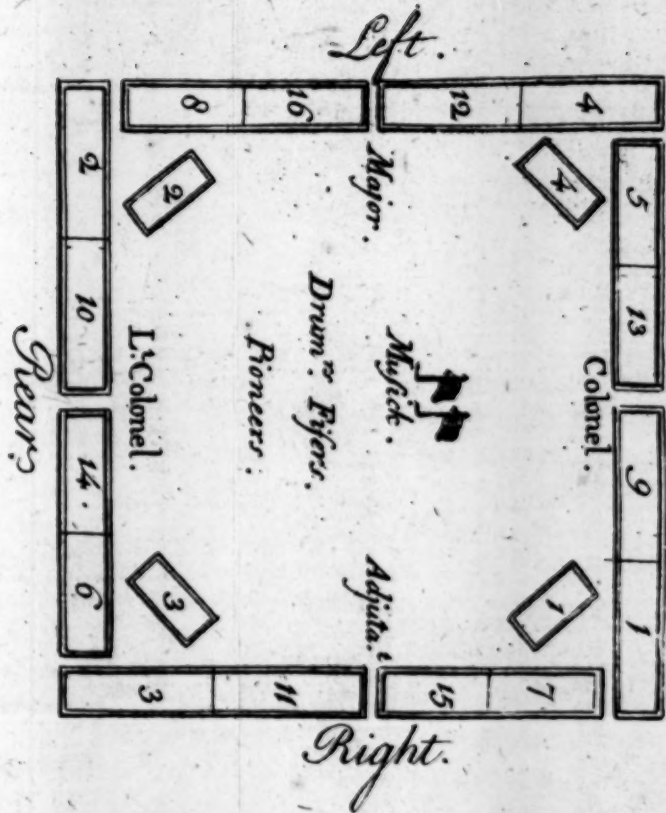


Colonel Carleton's Grenadiers of the Second Line.

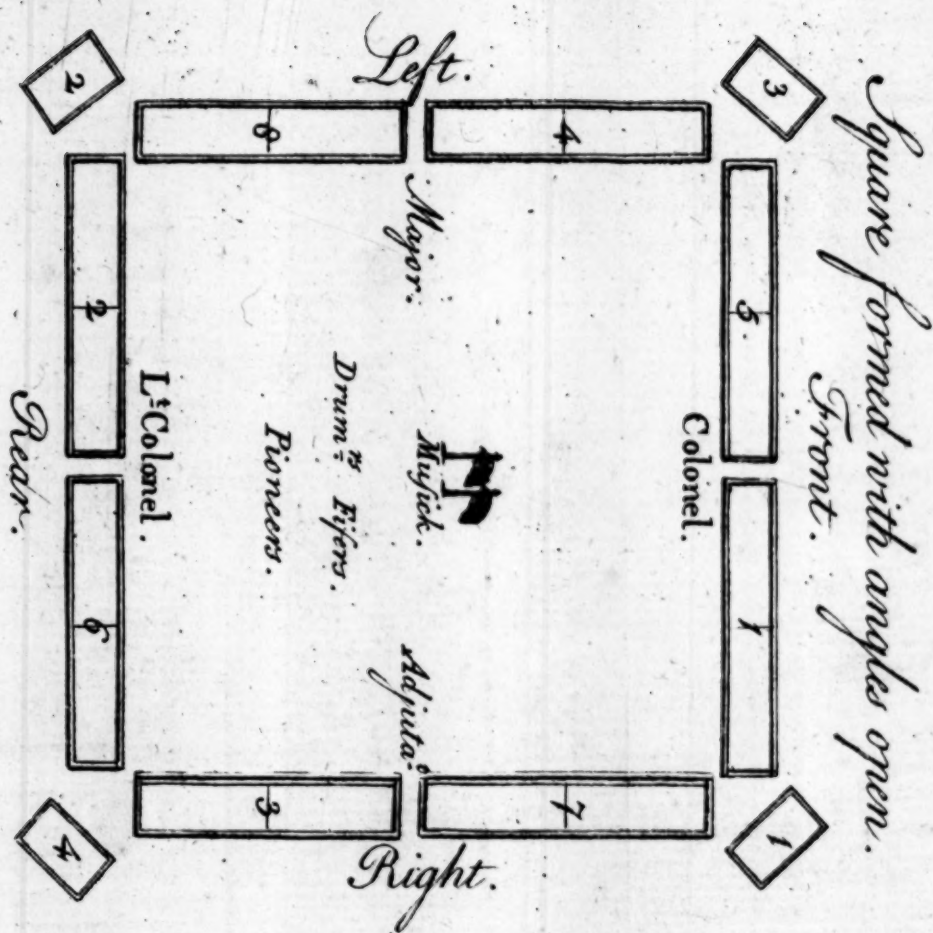
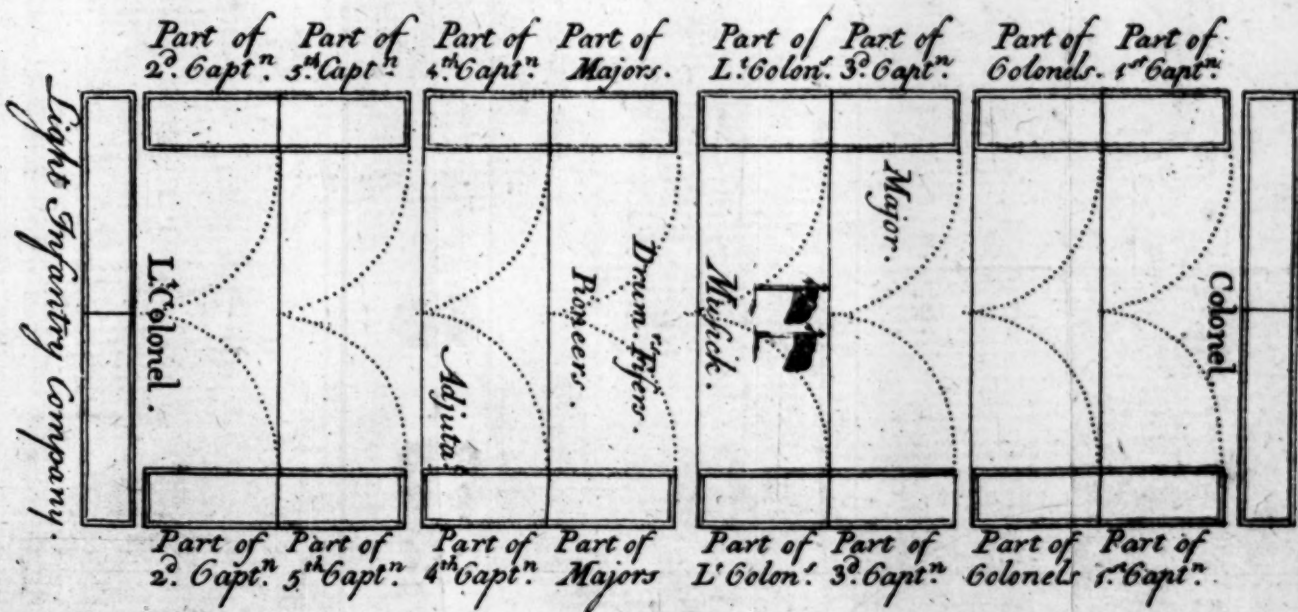


Each Company told off in Sub Divisions.

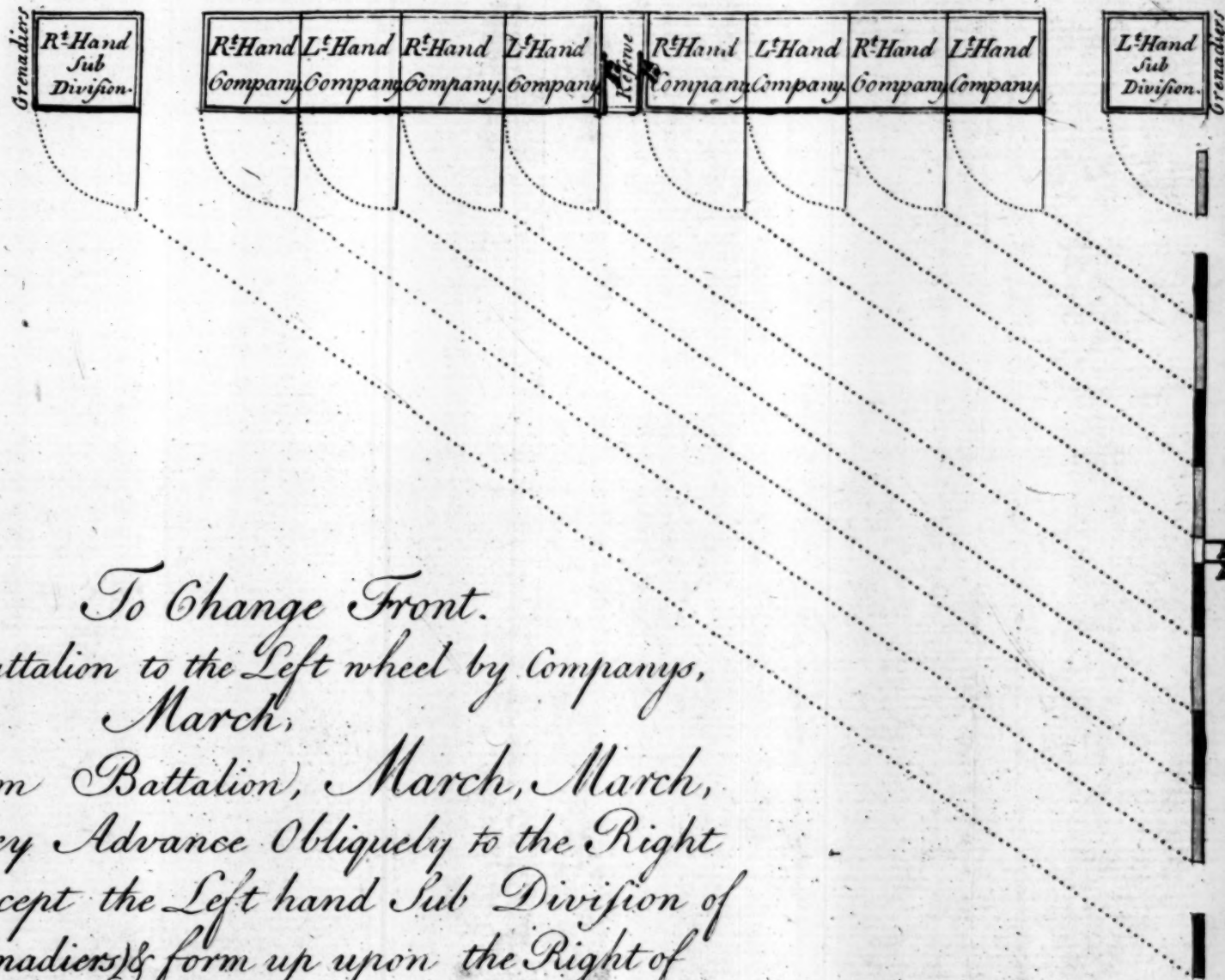
PLAN 7.



Oblong Square formed by Companies.



PLAN 8.



To Change Front.

*Battalion to the Left wheel by Companies,
March,*

*Form Battalion, March, March,
They Advance Obliquely to the Right
(Except the Left hand Sub Division of
Grenadiers) & form up upon the Right of
Each Other.*

ROSTER for detaching BATTALIONS.

NATIONS.	No. of Battalions of each Nation.	HEADS OF EACH COLUMN.																															
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32
English	32	1	6	8	11	12	16	18	21	22	27	29	32	33	37	39	42	43	48	50	53	54	58	60	63	64	69	71	74	75	79	81	84
Hanoverians	24	2	7	9		13	17	19	23	28	30		34	38	40		44	49	51	55	59	61		65	70	72		76	80	82			
Prussians	16	3	10			14	20		24	31		35		36		41	45		52		56		62		66		73		77	83			
Dutch	8	4				15			25								46					57			67				78				
Danes	4	5							26								47								68								

	Days of the Month.	Endings.	Days of the Month.	Endings.	Days of the Month.	Endings.
English	17th March, 17	Column 6				
Hanoverians	21st March, 17	Column 7				
Prussians	21th March, 17	Column 10				
Dutch	4th April, 17	Column 15				
Danes	12th April, 17	Column 26				

N. B. I have endeavoured to make the above as plain and easy as possible for a young Officer, in order to shew the Nature of them.

N. B. I have endeavoured to make the above as plain and easy as possible for a young Officer, in order to shew the Nature of them.

A Morning Report of		Company		of		17	
Serjeants	{	Present fit for Duty	—	—	N A M E S.		
		On Duty	—	—			
			Total				
Drum ^{rs} .		Present fit for Duty	—	—			
		Total					
Rank and File		Present fit for Duty	—	—			
		Ditto not fit	—	—			
		On Duty	—	—			
		Sick in Infirmary	—	—			
		Sick in Quarters	—	—			
		Recruiting	—	—			
		On Furlough	—	—			
		On Command	—	—			
		Prisoners	—	—			
		Absent by Leave	—	—			
		Ditto without	—	—			
		Total					
						[The Officer to sign here his Name an Rank.	

Monthly Return of

Regiment of Foot, commanded by
of 17

COMPANIES.	Officers present.											Effective Rank and File.							Wanting to compleat to the Allowance.			Alterations since last Return.																									
	Commission.					Staff.						Present and fit for Duty	Sick in Quarters	Sick in Hospitals	On Command	Recruiting	Recruits not joined	On Furlough	Total	Serjeants	Drummers.	Rank and File	Inlited	Dead	Discharged and recommended.	Discharg'd & not recommended	Deserted																				
	Colonel	Lieut. Colonel	Major	Captains	Lieutenants	Ensigns	Chaplain	Adjutant	Quarter-Master	Surgeon	Mate																																				
Colonel, Lieut. Col. Major, Captains	Total											Serjeants Present		Drummers present		Present and fit for Duty		Sick in Quarters		Sick in Hospitals		On Command		Recruiting		Recruits not joined		On Furlough		Total		Serjeants		Drummers.		Rank and File		Inlited		Dead		Discharged and recommended.		Discharg'd & not recommended		Deserted	

A B S E N T O F F I C E R S.				Vacant Officers, and by what Means.	
Names and Rank.	Since wh Time	By whose Leave.	For what Time		

Monthly RETURN
of Regiment of Foot,
commanded by
of

17

Nº. of Companies at each Quarter.
Head-Quarters.

{

Detachments and Nº. of Officers,
Non-commissioned Officers, &c. at
each Quarter.

{

Particular RETURN of a Regiment of Foot.

[illegible]

General Return of the Country, Size, Age, and Time of Service of the Men of
Regiment of commanded by
including Serjeants, Corporals and Drummers.

[illegible]

Size of the Men in each Company, from 5 Feet 6 Inches & under, to 6 Ft. 2 In ^s . & upw ^d s.				Service from 1 Year and under to 35 Years and upwards.			
Ft.	Inch.	Companies as above.					Total Size
6	2						
6	1½						
6	1						
6	0½						
6	0						
5	11½						
5	11						
5	10½						
5	10						
5	9½						
5	9						
5	8½						
5	8						
5	7½						
5	7						
5	6½						
5	6						
Under							
5	6						

Years.	Companies as above.					Total Yrs.
35						
30						
25						
20						
15						
10						
8						
7						
6						
5						
4						
3						
2						
1						

Return of the Troops under the Command of _____ at the Surrender of _____
with a List of the Ships in the Harbour taken, burnt, sunk,
and destroyed; and the Number of Officers, non-commissioned Officers, &c.
killed, wounded, missing, and taken Prisoners.

Total	Officers present.														Effectives Rank and File.					
	Commission.							Staff.												
	Generals	Colonels	Lieutenant Colonels	Majors	Captains	Lieutenants	Second Lieutenants	Ensigns	Chaplain	Adjutant	Quarter-Master	Surgeon	Mate	Serjeants	Drummers and Fifers	Fit for Duty	Sick present	Sick in Infirmary	Recruiting	On Furlough

**Lift of Ships in the Harbour of
taken, burnt, sunk, and destroyed.**

Number of Officers, non-commissioned Officers, and private Men killed, wounded, missing, and taken Prisoners, during the Siege.

[illegible]

RETURN OF ARMS &c.						
Halberts.	Drums.	Fifes.	Firelocks.	Bayonets.	Cartridge Boxes.	Iron Rammeds.
Good						
Bad.						
Wanting						
Complim ^t of the Regim ^t .						

[illegible]

RETURN OF CLOATHING &c.																							
Serjeants.						Drum ^{rs} & Fifers.						Rank & File.											
Coats.	Breecher.	Pant ^s or Stock.	Shoes.	Stockings.	Shirts.	Hatts or Caps.	Coats.	Breecher.	Pant ^s or Stock.	Shoes.	Stockings.	Shirts.	Caps.	Carriages.	Rifle Cases.	Coats.	Breecher.	Pant ^s or Stock.	Shoes.	Stockings.	Shirts.	Hatts or Caps.	
																					</		

Abstract of the Non Effective & Recruit ² Acc ^t from										to	17
D ^r A. B.					Account to					17	G ^r
17	To	£	S	D	17	By	£	S	D		

A Roll of

Company, with their Age, Size, Service, Country, &c.

[illegible]

A Roll of Serjeants, Corporals, Pioneers, Drummers and Fifers, as they are posted to Companies.

Companies.	Serjeants.	Corporals.	Pioneers.	Drummers.	Fifers.
Colonel					
Lieut. Col.					
Major					
Captains					

A WEEKLY PAY-NOTE.

One Week's Pay and Arrears for _____ Company, from the
of _____ 17 to the _____ both
Days inclusive.

						l.	s.	d.
To	Serjeants	—	—	—	—			
To	Corporals	—	—	—	—			
To	Drummer	—	—	—	—			
To	Private Men	—	—	—	—			
			l.	s.	d.			
To	Flints	—	—					
To	Cartridge Paper	—						
To	Repairs of Arms	—						
Total						—		

Received the above Sum, in full of all Demands to the _____ Day
of _____ 17

A. B. Pay-master Serjeant.

A FIELD RETURN.

A FIELD RETURN.																						
	Commission Officers present.					Staff Officers.					Non-commissioned Officers & priv ^{te} Men.				Detail of Officers and Men on Duty.							
	Colonel	Lieut. Colonel	Major	Captains	Lieutenants	Ensigns	Chaplain	Adjutant	Quarter Master	Surgeon	Mate	Serjeants	Corporals	Drummers	Private Men	Places where.	Captains	Subalterns	Serjeants	Corporals	Drummers	Private Men
Under Arms																						
On Duty																						
Sick in Quarters																						
Sick in Barracks																						
Sick in Infirmary																						
Prisoners																						
Absent by Leave																						
Total Effectives																						
Wanting to compleat																						
Total																						

The following *SIGNALS*, for Regiments that line Streets, I have known to be practised: They are to be repeated by the Drums of the different Corps, posted conveniently for that Purpose.

The Regiments of Foot to march by Sub-divisions, and when got to their Ground, they halt.

Ruffle,

To warn.

Flam,

To wheel backwards by Ranks, and form a Lane; the Ground to be then divided, and when that is done,

Ruffle,

To warn to fix Bayonets.

Flam,

To shoulder.

When Notice is given that the Lord Lieutenant or his Lady, or, in the Lord Lieutenant's Absence, when the Lord's Justices are coming, then the Word of Command is to be given by each Corps,

Present your Arms :

The Officers, and Ensigns with the Colours, will salute them. Each Corps will give the Word of Command (after they have passed) *Shoulder*.

When Notice is given that the Lord Lieutenant or his Lady, or, in the Lord Lieutenant's Absence, when the Lords Justices are coming out of the Parliament-house or Church, the commanding Officer,

next to either of those Places, will give a *Ruffle*, which will be followed by the other Regiments.

When the Lord Lieutenant or his Lady, or, in the Lord Lieutenant's Absence, the Lords Justices approach the Flanks of each Battalion, they will be ordered, *Present your Arms*.

When they have passed each Battalion, they are to be ordered to *Shoulder*.

Ruffle,

To warn.

Flam,

To unfix Bayonets.

Flam,

To shoulder.

Time will then be given them to close in Order, to form Sub-divisions.

Ruffle,

To warn.

Flam,

To wheel up by Ranks, and form Sub-divisions.

N. B. The Men for Guard to parade at the Head of the oldest Corps.

After which the commanding Officer will order the Regiments to march to the Barracks.

To fire three Vollies in the Air,

The Ranks to be at half Distance.

Preparative,

To make ready as center Rank.

Present,

THE MEDLEY.

287

Present,

They present in the Air.

Fire,

They fire, come to the priming Posture, and proceed to load and shoulder.

Preparative—Present—Fire,

As before.

Preparative—Present—Fire,

They fire and recover.

Flam,

They half Cock.

Flam,

They shoulder.

Flam,

They shut Pans.

After this they are to give three Huzzas, first taking off Hats at two Motions.

Seize the Hat with the right Hand, tell one, two, and lift it up, holding it above the Head : After the Huzzas, put on Hats, at two Motions ; bring the Hat on the Head, and fix it ; tell one, two, and let the Hand fall down by the Side.

*Copy of a Certificate which each Soldier is to produce
on joining his Corps.*

These are to certify that the Bearer
belonging to _____ in the
Regiment commanded by _____
was received in the Infirmary, erected in *Dublin*, for
the sick and wounded Soldiers of the Army, upon
the _____ Day of _____
for Cure of _____ and
is now discharged to go forthwith to _____

Delivered to Him,

Shirt, —	No.	Coat, —	No.	Cloak, —	No.
Neckcloth,		Waistcoat,		Shoes,	
Hat, —		Breeches,		Stockings,	

Witness my Hand this

Day of

Steward.

Form

THE MEDLEY, T 289

Form of an Indent.

ment of Company in Regi-
 quartered in the Barracks of
 the Day of 17

Officers Rooms. N^o. I.

Table	Chairs	Coal-boxes	Fire-
shovels	Pair of Tongs	Pokers	Candle-
sticks	Fenders	Grates	Locks and Keys
Windows	Pains of Glass broke		

N^o. II.

Non-commissioned Officers and private Men. N^o. I.

Bedsteads, with boarded Bottoms,	Mats
Head and Feet-boards	Bedsticks
Bed-carpets or Caddows	Pair of Sheets
Tables	Forms
Cupboards	Coal-boxes
Small Pots	Buckets
Fire-shovels	Hanging-shelves
Pair of Handhooks	Big Pots,
for Arms	Grates
Doors	Fenders
	Crows
	Tongs
	Pokers
	Flesh-forks
	Candlesticks
	Racks
	Locks and Keys
	Latches
	Pains of Glass broke

N^o. II.

N^o. III.

N^o. IV.

N. B. The Commanding Officer of the Company to have one of the above Forms, signed by the Barrack-master, and he to sign one to him.

*Order for deducting any Damage done to the
Furniture of a Barrack.*

Barrack-Office, 10th July, 1764.

SIR,

IT is requested of you, by the Commissioners of the Barracks, that you will acquaint the commanding Officers of the several Corps to which you are Agent, that there is an Order of Government for deducting, from each Troop or Company, so much as the Charge of Damage done by them to the Bedding, Utensils, &c. of any Barrack they may be quartered in, shall amount to, which the Board intends to enforce.

I am, SIR,

Your most obedient,

Humble Servant,

RICHARD ROBINSON.

(A Copy.)

THEOPHILUS DESBRISAY.

STATE

STATE of IRISH HALF PAY.

For One Day.

				Horse.		Drag ⁿ .		Foot.	
				s.	d.	s.	d.	s.	d.
Colonel	}	and Captain	—	19	0	15	8	12	3
Lt. Col.				12	6	9	8	8	3
Major				11	3	8	8	6	9
Captain	—	—	—	8	6	6	2	4	9
Lieutenants	—	—	—	5	3	3	1	2	3
Cornet, 2d. Lieut. and Ensign	—	—	—	4	3	2	7	1	9
Quarter-Master	—	—	—	1	6	1	6	0	0
Chaplain	—	—	—	3	4	3	4	3	4
Adjutant	—	—	—	2	0	2	0	2	0
Surgeon	—	—	—	2	0	2	0	2	0

Remarks, with the State of the Deductions of the Half Pay.

It too frequently happens that the brave and deserving Officer, through Age, Wounds, or other Infirmities, is rendered incapable of doing his Duty, therefore is obliged to quit the Service (though, perhaps, at that very Time, the eldest of his Rank in the Corps :) And, not having purchased his Commissions, exchanges upon Half Pay, with the usual Difference, from which the following Deductions are made, which, 'tis feared, have never reached the Ear of our gracious Sovereign.

		d.	s.	d.
Stopped at the Treasury	Poundage	6		
	Hospital	6		
	Pells	—	1½	
At the Half-Pay Office, for Agency, &c. &c.				6½
In all, per Pound,			1	8½
B b 4				Form

Form of the Certificate to receive Irish Half Pay.

County of } came this
 } Day before me, and made Oath,
 That he is no otherwise provided for, by any Commission or Employment, civil or military, in his Majesty's Service, than by Half-pay on the Establishment of *Ireland*, and is not on any other Establishment of Half-pay.

Sworn before me _____ Day of _____ 17

✱ The Certificates should be dated and delivered into the Half-pay Office immediately after the 31st of *March*, 30th of *June*, 30th of *September*, and 31st of *December*.

Form of a Baggage Certificate.

of _____ of _____ Regiment
 came this Day before me, and
 made Oath, That he paid the Sum of _____
 for the Hire of
 Cars that carried the Baggage of
 of the said Regiment
 from _____ to _____
 being _____
 Miles which they marched, according to a Rout by
 the Government's Order. Dated the _____ Day
 of _____ 17 _____ which has not yet
 been reimbursed.

Sworn before me at _____ the
 Day of _____ 17

N. B. That no Person, under the Degree of a Commissioned Officer, is to make the above Affidavit, or any more than three wheel Cars, at three Pence a Mile each Car, to be allowed each Troop of Horse, or Dragoons of twenty Men; or Company of Foot of twenty-eight Men; the Sum sworn to be paid to be expressed in Words, and the Officer to sign as well as the Magistrate.

Form

Form of a Petition,

To the Governors of the *Hibernian* School for the
Orphans and Children of Soldiers only.

THE
P E T I T I O N

O F

Regiment of

SHEWETH,

THAT your Petitioner hath
served in the Regiment of
for the Space of

THAT your Petitioner has a Family of
Children, and humbly requests that
named a of
Years of Age, may be admitted into the *Hibernian*
School for the Orphans and Children of Soldiers
only.

Dublin, the Day
of 17

N. B. If the Soldier has been discharged, the
Time of his Discharge must be set forth. If the
Father is dead, the Time of his Death must be men-
tioned; and every Petition must be certified by the
commanding Officer of the Regiment to which the
Petitioner belongs; when that cannot be done, then
by an Officer who knows the Truth of the Particu-
lars therein set forth; otherwise the Petition will not
be received.

of

Of VALOUR.

[This is copied from Mons. D'ESPAGNAC.]

Courage is that Grandeur of Soul which prompts us to sacrifice all personal Advantages, and even the Preservation of our own Beings, to a Love of doing our Duty. The Exercise of this determined Courage, in the Profession of Arms, is called *Valour*: It is composed of Bravery, Reason, and Force: By Bravery, we understand that lively Ardour which fires us for the Combat; Reason points out to us the Method of conducting it with Justice and Prudence; and Force is necessary for the Execution. 'Tis Bravery which animates the Heart; Reason springs from the Soul; and Force depends upon the Body: Without Bravery, we fear Obstacles, Danger and Death; without Reason, Courage would have no legitimate View; and without Force, it would be useless.

These three Qualities ought to concur to form true Valour; it does not consist in that savage Bravery which is common to both Man and Beast, which only depends on the Mechanism of the Body; Valour is a generous Character, which, far from assuming Brutality and Violence, with-holds the Fury of the Soldier, protects helpless Women, innocent Infants, and hoary Age: Every Thing, incapable of Resistance, can never be an Object for true Valour to exercise its Prowess on. These Principles, however, may sometimes admit of Exception; for, says *Puffendorff*, it is in the Conscience of those who command Armies to determine these Procedures; if there are Occasions, where all Reprisals are blameable, there are also others, where Violence is requisite, either to intimidate an insolent Enemy, or to bereave him of Subsistence, &c. But in all these cruel Necessities,

cessities, we ought to do our utmost not to offend, either Religion, Humanity or Nature.

Alexander, Scipio, Julius Cæsar, Augustus, Titus, the Antonies, Theodoric, Charlemain, and many other illustrious Captains, never abused their Victories. The Romans, those Conquerors of the Universe, gave back the Crowns, whose late Wearers sued for their Protection. In a Word, we find History replete with admirable Maxims, which may serve us as Lessons for the Laws of Arms. How shameful is it for our modern Generals to be sometimes reproached with Barbarity and horrid Massacres! What Cruelties does not a false Zeal for Religion too often produce, and especially too by those who least understand it. The Civil Wars of England, Germany, France, Savoy, the Low Countries, the Conquests of the Spaniards in America, present us, at every Instance, with Monsters whom an honest Man ought to abhor! One cannot read without Horror the Wars of Hungary during the last Century! What Inhumanities have not very lately been committed in Bavaria!

The Laws of Arms, considered as the only Means to decide the Quarrels of Princes, can never furnish a rational Cause for a reciprocal Animosity between the Subjects who fight their Prince's Battles, not their own, and who are already made unhappy by being Victims to royal Ambition and Caprice. I am far from agreeing with Mr. Bayle, who pretends that the Christian Religion is only fit to make Poltrons: It rather elevates the Sentiments of the Soul. Health of Body is the Fruit of Temperance: Intrepid Resolution springs from Innocence and Virtue: Penetration, Activity, Judgment in Execution, proceed from the pure and lively Circulation of the Blood. These are the Qualities proper to form great Men and good Soldiers. In short, Fidelity, Moderation, Vigilance, Aptness in Learning, good Order, and Greatness of Soul, are Virtues equally indispensable

sible to the Christian and the Soldier, with this Difference, that what Honour dictates to us to perform through a Principle of Generosity, Religion engages us to by Motives more sure and more sublime.

Every Man, who is Master of great Talents, and employs them for the public Good, is an Hero; but though a private Person may, on many Occasions, signalize his Virtue and his Courage, in a Manner truly heroic, yet the Name of Hero is commonly bestowed only on most illustrious Men, eminent by their Stations, or who are at the Head of Armies.

We must conceive, in our Ideas of Virtue, that it is to be connected with Reason; the true Hero is neither rash nor bloody, he only acts through a Principle of Justice, as conscious to himself, that proceeding to Action, on other Motives, every Distress we heap on our Enemy is an Aggravation of our Crimes: The false Hero, on the contrary, breathes nothing but Fury, Rashness and Brutality; he is ignorant of the Use or Value of Life; he exposes himself without Reason, as if it was greater Glory to die like a Madman, than to live a reasonable Life for the Service of his Country or the Good of Society.

[This is copied from M. QUINCY's Max. Mil.]

An Officer ought carefully to avoid being opinionative or quarrelsome: People of that Character are always hateful to Society, and bring themselves into Difficulties which a good Man would avoid: We live in an Age wherein we ought to be extremely circumspect, and in which Persons of a quarrelsome Disposition are, as we may say, held in Abomination. I don't pretend to say, that one should tamely suffer an Affront: No! A Gentleman should defend his Honour, and rather lose his Life than bear an Insult or Spot on his Reputation.

The

The Motto on the *Brussels* Sword-blades is quite agreeable to the Purpose ; viz.

*Draw me not without Reason,
Sbeath me not without Honour.*

Every Gentleman should avoid Raillery, as it may be attended with bad Consequences ; for, how fine and delicate soever it may appear, it generally conveys a Sting that degenerates into Offence.

[*This is copied from M. BOMBELLES.*]

On entering into the Service, it is, perhaps, too common among young Gentlemen to grow testy and quarrelsome : But, Persons of this unhappy Cast are generally avoided, if not contemned : They render themselves odious by the Difficulties they bring upon themselves : Nothing displays a false Courage more : Those who are Masters of true Valour are as quiet as resolute, and know no other Enemies than those of their Country : Yet there are some infelicitous Occasions where the most sensible Man shall be obliged to maintain his Honour ; then, indeed, he ought resolutely to brave all Danger, rather than betray the least Weakness : However, we should not be too alert, or put on Words a Construction never meant to give Offence.

Extract from a Book, entit'ed,

Friendly Advice to Young Officers.

A Soldier who seriously worships his God, cannot help being assured, " That the Eyes of the Lord
" are over the Righteous, and that his Hand will
" cover him in the Day of Battle ;" and knowing this, " he will not be afraid for any Terror by
" Night ;

“ Night ; nor for the Arrow that flieth by Day ;
 “ nor for the Sickness that destroyeth in the Noon-
 “ day. A thousand shall fall beside him, and ten
 “ thousand at his right Hand, but it shall not come
 “ nigh him : For he shall give his Angels charge
 “ over him, to keep him in all his Ways.” Here is
 great Encouragement for a Soldier to be religious
 surely, if nothing else would make him so ! On the
 contrary, we are as well assured, “ That Evil shall
 “ hunt the wicked Person to overthrow him ; and
 “ that he shall not live out Half his Days.” This
 Threat I should think sufficient to open their Eyes,
 and excite a Reformation of Manners, did not daily
 Experience sadly evince the contrary. Provide there-
 fore for your Soul, and God will provide for your
 Honour. If your Name be forgot in the Annals of
 Time, it will make a noble Figure in those of
 Eternity.

To prove that Religion was never thought dis-
 graceful to a Soldier, look back into the Histories of
 Paganism, and there you will see, that the Generals
 who made the greatest Figure, were those who made
 a scrupulous Discharge of their Duty to their Gods,
 one of their principal Studies. Though the Object
 of their Worship was mistaken, their Piety was no
 less remarkable and worthy our Imitation in this
 more enlightened Age. In a History of much greater
 Authority and Credibility, I mean, The New Testa-
 ment, you may read of a worthy Centurion who
 built a Synagogue for the *Jews* : This surely was
 from a Motive of Religion, and from nothing else.
 In another Part of the same Book, you may also read
 of a pious Centurion called *Cornelius*, who, though a
 Gentile, in other Words a Heathen, was so remark-
 able for his Prayers, Fastings and Alms-deeds, that,
 if it is not too bold a Phrase, God took the Pains of
 sending an Angel to him, to tell him who to apply to
 for his Instruction, and to point out to him the Way
 of serving him more acceptably.

I have

I have read of a General who always used, when going on to Action, to pull off his Hat at the Head of his Troops, and with an audible Voice pronounce this pathetic Prayer, "O my God, if in the Hurry of this Day's Duty I forget Thee, forget not Thou me, O Lord." It is recorded of the late King *William*, and the Duke of *Marlborough*, that before an expected general Engagement, they have passed the whole Night in Prayer; and before they went out to head their Troops, have received the Sacrament from the Hand of their Chaplains. Did they fight ever the worse for this? or, was their Courage or military Conduct ever called in Question for it? I think not. Religion then professedly makes the best Soldiers; and if nothing else would make them religious, *this* of a conscientious Discharge of Duty ought to be sufficient Encouragement to the Practice of it; since he who obeys and serves his God, to the utmost of his Power, will exert that Power also to the utmost, to serve and obey his King.

Be not then, on any Account, laughed out of your Religion; nay, I will add, be not laughed out of your Soul. When *Blessings, Honour and Immortality*, are offered to you with an out-stretched Hand, be not so wanting to your own Interest as to thrust them from you; nor idly reject them, for fear of the Sneers of those poor undone Wretches, who mock at all that is good or praise-worthy: But pride yourself in the glorious Appellation, and strive to discharge the Duties of a Christian.

If your military Avocations prevent your attending upon the public Prayers in Church (See *Articles of War*) * at least you can never fail of Opportunities for private Prayer in your Retirement; and, at all Times, a few pious Ejaculations may be made use of, and applied to particular Emergencies as they may happen. If, at your first Attendance at Church,
you

* Sect. I. Art. I.

you should even go more out of Fashion, than a real Inclination, yet may a constant Perseverance in going there, at last make you be effectually convinced of the Beauty of Holiness, and that this is the only true Way to Happiness here and hereafter, and the only Path to Peace.

Foreign Troops have a very laudable Custom amongst them, and very worthy of Imitation: At certain Hours they turn out under Arms, particularly their Guards, with their Officers at their Posts; at a certain Beat of the Drum, the whole kneel down, and, I suppose, say a short Prayer; (their Army, I am told, do the same just before they begin to engage;) upon the second Beat of the Drum they rise up and turn in again to their Guard-room. This Custom, in my Opinion, is really good: For it gives a Man of a serious Turn of Mind an Opportunity of offering up a short Prayer, whatever the others may do, and of thus publicly testifying he is a Christian, and that he is not ashamed of being seen in the Discharge of some of the Duties of his Faith and Profession.

Another Reason ought to excite you to a religious Course of Life as a Soldier, and that is, it will bring down a Blessing on your Attempts for his Majesty's Service; Victory and Success will attend upon your Arms; Glory, Honour, and a Ratification of the Justice of his Cause, will reflect an additional Lustre on your King: This is what every good Soldier ought to endeavour at; this is what every good Subject ought to pray for.

You might, perhaps, from what I have said on this Head, set me down as a *cynical* or *morose* Man, who is for abridging Youth of all its little Amusements, and who looks upon every little Levity and Folly young People will run into, as heinous Sins: But those who know my Character and Disposition, are thoroughly convinced, that no one is a greater Promoter of *innocent* Diversions and Gaiety, or loves to see Chearfulness and Good-humour go forward, more than

than myself. I am only an Advocate for Probity and Religion, not an Abridger of Harmony and Mirth : For I do aver, if any Man has real Cause to be merry and chearful, it is the religious, not the reprobate, profligate Man.

If what I have said, carries sufficient Conviction with it to enable you to keep clear of those fatal Rocks here pointed out, I shall think the little Trouble I have taken very amply rewarded. But if you will not open your Eyes to Conviction, nor your Ears to Experience, but run headlong into Riot, Debauchery and Ruin, I can only remind you of the Words of a very wise Man ; “ Rejoice, O young Man in thy Youth, and let thy Heart cheer thee in the Days of thy Youth, and walk in the Ways of thy Heart, and in the Sight of thine Eyes ; but know thou, that *for all these Things God will bring thee into Judgment.*” But I have better Hopes of you, for I flatter myself your own good Sense will apply what I have said as it is intended, that is, *for your Good* ; and that you will take my Advice in such a Manner as that it may be conducive to your Benefit and Advantage. If this should be the Case, how greatly will it increase my Pleasure and Satisfaction ! In a Word, Sir, *If you will fear God, faithfully serve, honour, and humbly obey your King, and all that are put in Authority under him ; if you will do unto all Men as you would they should do unto you,* there is little Fear of your living a long and prosperous Life here, and of being happy to all Eternity hereafter.

Several Gentlemen of the Army having expressed a Desire of seeing Lord Viscount BARRINGTON's LETTER; I therefore have taken the Liberty of inserting it here; as also, a Translation of General MONTCALM's EPITAPH; with Remarks on each.

WAR-OFFICE,

February 8, 1766.

SIR,

I HAVE laid before the King your Letter of the 31st Day of *January*, containing a Report of the Board of General Officers, on a Matter referred to them by his Majesty in my Letter of the 3d Day of *October* last, touching the different Prices to be given for Commissions in the Army, in Cases where he shall please to allow them to be sold. The King entirely approves the said Report, and every Particular therein contained. His Majesty commands me to express his perfect Satisfaction to the Officers who have signed it; and to acquaint them, that he will order what they recommend to be invariably observed for the future, under Pain of his highest Displeasure.

Having now finished what I am commanded by the King to communicate to the Board, I take this Opportunity of conveying through you, Sir, to the Generals who compose it, some Thoughts on a Matter

ter of great Importance to the Regiments they command, and indeed to the whole Army.

Colonels frequently recommend that Officers in their respective Corps should sell Commissions which they did not buy: Long and faithful Service has worn them out, they have Families, the eldest in each Rank are able and willing to purchase, they all deserve Preferment, which, in Time of Peace, can scarcely be obtained any other Way: In short, the Good of the Corps, Merit and Humanity, all strongly plead for the Indulgence which is recommended. It is no Wonder that these Arguments have so frequently succeeded, when any one of them would be sufficient Inducement, if there were not another Side of the Question.

Officers who buy are permitted to sell: Men who find themselves growing old or infirm, dispose of their Commissions, which are purchased by the young and the healthy; and thus, what has been once bought, continues for ever at Sale, especially in Time of Peace, except now and then in a Case of sudden or unexpected Death. The Consequence often is, that Men who come into the Army with the warmest Dispositions to the Service, whose Business becomes their Pleasure, who distinguish themselves on every Occasion that offers, are kept all their Lives in the lowest Ranks, because they are poor. These meritorious Officers have often the cruel Mortification of seeing themselves commanded by young Men of opulent Families, who came much later into the Service, and whose Fortunes have enabled them to amuse themselves frequently elsewhere, while the others, continually at Quarters, have done the Duty of those Gentlemen, and have learnt their own.

Flagrant Abuses seldom grow up at once, but arise from Circumstances whose Consequences were not foreseen. The first Time a Commission is sold, it is almost always bought by a good Officer, the

next in Succession : He afterwards asks to sell ; the Corps is changed, the senior Officers have Merit and long Service, but they have no Money ; this Circumstance does not prevent the Transaction ; and the Commission is purchased, perhaps by the youngest, least steady, and least experienced of that Corps, or of some other, to the infinite Distress of many deserving Men, and to the great Scandal and Detriment of the Service. Like Circumstances happen more or less every Change, and bring with them the same Distress and Mischief : Each fresh Commission brought to Market multiplies both ; and, therefore, instead of encreasing Purchases, they cannot be too much lessened, so far as is consistent with the invariable Practice of the Army.

That Colonels of Regiments should not attend to these Consequences, is not Matter either of Wonder or Blame : Their Care is extended no farther than to their own Corps, and while they command it ; but the Officer of the Crown who is entrusted with the important Charge of the whole Army, a Body whose probable Duration infinitely exceeds the short Space allotted to Individuals, cannot be too vigilant, lest confined temporary Convenience or Compassion should produce general permanent Mischief or Distress. To be firm in preventing future Evil by immediate Refusal, is not the least difficult Part of his Duty : He must withstand the Feelings of Humanity and the Desire to please ; he must expect the uncandid Interpretation of the prejudiced, the hasty Judgment of the ignorant, and the malignant Conclusion of the disappointed : He must often contradict the Passions and Interests of the powerful ; and even disappoint the Wishes and Expectations of the deserving : He must acquire a great many Enemies, and lose a great many Friends ; and yet he had better suffer all this than do wrong.

It

It is of Consequence that the Army should know the Rules of the Service, and see the Reason of them. That Officers should sell what they bought, and no more, has long been a Rule; and perhaps this Letter will tend to explain the Grounds on which it was established. If that Rule be good, can it be too invariably observed? Specious Distinctions will be made; they should never be admitted, for every Deviation tends to Disuse. Nothing can be more fatal for the Army in general, than occasional Exceptions from good Regulations; or give more Advantage to the unjust Attempts of the importunate and of the great.

It is frequently asked, what can be done with an Officer who is become useless to his Corps through Age, Wounds, or Infirmities? It must be owned there are too few comfortable Retreats, from active Service in this Country; however, our Establishment affords some. The Commissions in the Invalids, small Governments and other Garrison Employments always properly bestowed, would go a great Way: 'Till there can be a more ample Provision, the young and healthy must do the Duty of the old and infirm: and they can sufficiently do it in Time of Peace: Hereafter, in their Turn, they may receive the like Benefit themselves; and, in the mean Time, escape a thousand Mortifications to which indigent Merit is too often exposed. It frequently happens in the Army, as elsewhere, that Want of Money is also accompanied by a Want of assisting Friends: But the poor, though deserving Officer, should always find at the War-office, a constant Assertor of his Rights, and faithful Guardian of his Interests.

I am, SIR,

Your most obedient, humble Servant,

CHARLES GOULD, Esq;

BARRINGTON.

RE-

REMARKS.

Having read Lord Viscount *Barrington's* Letter, with the utmost Pleasure and Satisfaction, I cannot silently pass over such a laudable Instance of his Lordship's Humanity and strict Attention to the Welfare of the Military. Every one must acknowledge the Justice of his Lordship's Sentiments, and that the Good of his Majesty's Service, the Honour of the Nation, and the Benefit of the Army in general, are the sole Objects of his Lordship's Consideration. The exact Manner in which his Lordship has considered the different Distresses an Officer of Merit may be liable to, for want of Fortune, Interest, or through Infirmities, and the Remedy in each Circumstance at the same Time pointed out, are evident Marks of his Lordship's humane and compassionate Disposition, and cannot fail of being approved by every unprejudiced Person, and must gain that Applause and Esteem from every deserving Officer, which are so justly his Lordship's Due.

TRAN.

TRANSLATION OF

General M. DE MONTCALM'S EPITAPH.

HERE LIES

Lewis Joseph M. De Montcalm Gazon,
Marquis of St. Veran's, Baron of Gabriaci,
Knight of the Order of St. Lewis,
Lieutenant-General of the French Army,
Who, from his Abilities as a Senator and Soldier,
Bid fair for Universal Conquest :
But, from his Disposition, he loved nothing more
than true Praise :

He had a happy Judgment, well improved by Letters :

He went through every Character of a Soldier,
with an unspotted Name :

Perfectly skilled in every Art of War, he knew
when to improve Advantages,

And guard against the Diversity of Affairs.

In Italy, Bohemia and Germany, he proved himself
a diligent and indefatigable Leader.

All Orders from superior Officers, he executed
with such Alacrity and Judgment, as proved him
equal to those that issued them.

Now

Now grown eminent, from his Services,
He was sent to protect the Province of Canada;
Where, with a handful of Men, he more than once re-
pulsed superior Bodies, in Number, of the Enemy,
took Fortifications, best supplied with Men and Stores.

Cold, Want of Provisions, Watching,
and every other Difficulty,

He bore with a manly Fortitude;
And, unmindful of himself, was ever attentive to the
Distresses of those who served under him.

As an Enemy, he was severe, but, as a Conqueror,
Generous and Mild.

By Perseverance, Experience and Dispatch,
he made up for the Want of Force.

By his Abilities in the Cabinet and Field,
he gloriously supported, for four Years,
the Power of that Colony.

After having long baffled the joint Efforts
of an immense Army,
commanded by an able and enterprizing General,
and of a powerful Fleet,
provided with every Implement of War,
and, his first Force being diminished by Skirmishes,
he was, at Length, wounded,
in the first General Action,

And

And died in Support of the Religion he ever professed,
 universally regretted by his Friends,
 and lamented even by his Enemies,
 the 14th of September, 1759,
 and
 in the 48th Year of his Age.

Truly grieved for the Loss, the French deposited
 the Remains of this best of Generals,
 in a Hollow of the Ground, made by the falling and
 bursting of a Bomb-shell,
 and recommended the Preservation of them
 to the generous Faith of the Enemy.

D D REMARKS.

REMARKS.

I must candidly confess, much Honour is done to *Montcalm's* Memory; and highly concerned am I, that I am not capable of making an Epitaph, equal to the Merit which is so justly and deservedly due to the Memory of the never-to-be-forgotten *Wolfe*, who not only conquered but out-generalled him on every Occasion, or what must have been the Fate of his little Army, when I have been assured the whole Force of *Canada* was assembled to oppose our enterprizing Hero; but so great was his military Capacity, invincible Courage, Wisdom to extricate himself from Difficulties, his Justice, Compassion and Liberality, aided by his Generals, who gave Proofs of their uncommon Vigour, Activity and Resolution; as did the Colonels and the rest of the Officers, of their Bravery and good Conduct; with a handful of Men, well disciplined and appointed, gained a most glorious, surprizing and compleat Victory, which determined the Fate of *Canada*. In short, every Officer and Soldier fought like a *Cæsar*.

In the History of the late War, Page 212, I find the following Passage.

In this decisive Action, our Troops lost about five hundred Men; on the Side of the Enemy, at least fifteen hundred were killed: But however glorious this Victory was, and however important in its Consequences, it must be admitted that it was very dearly bought. Soldiers may be raised; Officers will be formed by Experience; but the Loss of a Genius in War, is a Loss we know not how to repair: The Death of *Wolfe* was indeed grievous to his Country, but to himself the most happy that can be imagined, and the most to be envied by all those who have a true Relish for military Glory. Unindebted to Family or Connections, unsupported by Intrigue or Faction,

tion, he had accomplished the whole Business of Life, at a Time when others are only beginning to appear; and, at the Age of thirty-five, without feeling the Weakness of Age, or the Vicissitude of Fortune, having satisfied his honest Ambition, having completed his Character, having fulfilled the Expectations of his Country, he fell at the Head of his conquering Troops, and expired in the Arms of Victory.

The Circumstances that attended the Death of such a Person are too interesting to be passed over in Silence, and were indeed such as bespoke the whole Tenor of his Life. He first received a Wound in his Head; but, that he might not discourage his Troops, he wrapped it up with his Handkerchief, and encouraged his Men to advance: Soon after, he received another Ball in his Belly; this also he dissembled, and exerted himself as before: When he received a third in his Breast, under which he at last sunk, and suffered himself, unwillingly, to be carried behind the Ranks: As he lay struggling with the Anguish and Weakness of three grievous Wounds, he seemed only solicitous about the Fortune of the Battle: He begged of one, who attended him, to support him to view the Field; but, as he found that the Approach of Death had dimmed and confused his Sight, he desired an Officer, who was by him, to give him an Account of what he saw: The Officer answered, that the Enemy seemed broken: He repeated his Question a few Minutes after, with much Anxiety, when he was told, that the Enemy was totally routed, and that they fled on all Sides: "Then," said he, "I am satisfied;" and immediately he expired.

Without the same Advantages, the Enemy also sustained an heavy Loss in this Battle, which, no doubt, accelerated their Defeat. *M. De Montcalm*, Commander in Chief, was killed on the Spot; an Officer who had done the highest Services to his Country,

try, throughout the whole *American War*, and in this last Scene of it, supported his Reputation of a wise, experienced General; all his Dispositions having been made with the utmost Prudence and Regularity, both before and in the Engagement. It is very remarkable, that, in both Armies, the first in Command fell in the Action, and the second were dangerously wounded; but General *Monckton* happily recovered; the *French* Officer died soon after the Battle.

F I N I S.

E R R A T A.

Page 71, Line 22, for *Hrmy*, read *Army*.—P. 130, In List of Things, include in each Suit of Cloaths, a regimental Hat.

Military Dictionary.

1766.

A D

ADJUTANT-General, forms the several details of duty of the army, with the Brigade-majors, and keeps an exact state of each Brigade and Regiment, with a roll of the Lieutenant-generals, Major-generals, Colonels, Lieutenant-colonels, and Majors. He every day at head quarters receives orders from the general officer of the day, and distributes them to the majors of brigades, from whom he receives the number of men they are to furnish for the duty of the army, and informs them of any detail which may concern them. On marching days he accompanies the General to the ground of the camp. He makes a daily report of the situation of all the posts placed for the safety of the army, and of any changes made in their posts. In a day of battle the Adjutant-general sees the infantry drawn up, after which he places himself by the General to receive any

A D

orders. In a siege he visits the several posts and guards of the trenches, and reports their situation and how circumstanced: He gives and signs all orders for skirmishing parties (if time permits) he has a serjeant from each brigade to carry any orders which he may have to send.

ADJUTANT, is an officer to assist the major. He receives orders from the brigade-major, if in camp, and when in garrison, from the town-major: After he has carried them to his colonel or officer, commanding the regiment he then assembles the serjeant-major, drum-major, fife-major, with a serjeant and corporal of each company. If convoys, parties, detachments, or guards, are to be furnished, he gives the number which each company are to furnish, the hour and place for their assembling; he must keep an exact roster and roll of duties, and have a perfect knowledge of all manœuvres, &c.

A

ADVANCE-

A M

ADVANCE-FOSS, is a moat, or ditch of water round the Glacis or Esplanade of a place of arms, to prevent a surprize, being drained, they serve as a trench, made to the besiegers, so of late are not approved of.

AID-DE-CAMP, is an officer attached to the person of a general-officer, to carry his orders. His employment is of importance, tho' often intrusted with young officers, without experience or capacity, which I am sorry to say; for a moment lost in a battle, may change the face of affairs: It is necessary in that case, that he who carries them, has comprehended the spirit in which the General meant them.

ALARM, is a sudden challenge to arms, upon an apprehension of danger from an enemy, or of fire. A sudden alarm is often occasioned by the neglect of centries; and sometimes it has been done, to try the readiness of the troops.

ALARM-POST, is the place appointed for the assembling of a regiment, troop, or company.

AMBUSCADE, or ambush, is a lurking party in a wood, or other convenient place, to surprize an enemy. To discover an ambush, or fall into one, are plain.

AMMUNITION, implies all sorts of warlike stores.

A N

AMMUNITION-BREAD, is carried along with an army, each loaf generally weighs six pounds.

ANGLE, is explained in the following definition: 1st. Angle of the center is that made by three lines, drawn from the center of the extremities, of any side of the polygon. 2d. Angle of the polygon is the Angle made by the meeting of two sides of the polygon, and is the same with the Angle of the gorge.

3d. **ANGLE** of the curtain or of the flank, is the Angle formed by the meeting of a flank and a curtain.

4th. **ANGLE** of the shoulder, two is formed by one face and one flank.

5th. **FLANK-ANGLE**, is the meeting of two faces.

6th. **ANGLE** of the tenail, or flanking Angle, is composed of the lines of defence and the curtain.

7th. **ANGLE**, forming the flank, is an Angle composed of one flank and one demi George.

8th. **ANGLE**, forming the face, is the inward Angle, composed of one flank and one face.

9th. **ANGLE**, of the moat, is that which is formed before the centre of the curtain, by the exterior line of the foss or moat.

10th. **ANGLE-SALLIANT**, or sally-angle, or what advances

A R

vances with its points towards the country; such is the Angle of the counterscarp, before the point of a bastion.

11th. ANGLE-RENTANT, or re-entering Angle, is what points inwards to the body of the place; such is the Angle of the counterscarp before the center of the curtain.

ANTESTATURE, is a traverse or retrenchment, hastily made of gabions or palisades, to stop an enemy that is gaining ground. This is called, to dispute ground, or lose it inch by inch.

APPROACHES, are the trenches, places of arms, lodgments, sap, gallery, and generally all works, whereby the besiegers advance towards a place besieged.

APRON, is a sheet of lead, which covers the touch-hole of a gun.

ARMOUR, defensive Armour, that covers the body, warlike harness.

ARMS, are all sorts of weapons used for offence or defence, such as sword, hanger, esponton, bayonet, firelock, carbine, and pistol.

ARMS, a place of arms in a garrison, at a siege are small redoubts bordered with a parapet, containing a small body of men, to make good the trenches against the sallies of the besieged.

ARMY, is a body of troops, consisting of horse, foot, and

A R

dragoons, with artillery, provision, baggage, &c. It is divided into brigades, commanded by an able experienced officer.

FLYING-ARMY, is a small body sent out to harraßs the enemy, intercept convoys, prevent the enemy's incursions, cover its own army, or garrison, and keep the enemy in continual motion.

WINGS OF AN ARMY, are the troops encamped on the flanks, they are mostly horse and dragoons, and are called the right wing and left.

ARTILLERY, is a magazine of all sorts of arms and provisions for an army; such as cannon, mortars, bombs, balls, petards, grenades, small balls, powder, match, all sorts of hand tools, planks, boards, ropes, coals, tallow, pitch, rozin, sulphur, saltpetre, quick match, all kinds of fireworks, pontoons, &c. The attendance are conductors, bombadiers, gunners, matrosses, pioneers, pontoonmen, carpenters, wheelwrights, smiths, coopers, tinman, and collar-makers, &c.

ARTILLERY-PARK, is a place appointed in the rear of both lines of the army, for encamping the artillery. The guns are in one line; the ammunition-waggon make two or three lines, the pantons and tumboils, make the last lines, and all is surrounded with a rope, which form

A T

the park; the gunners and matrosses encamp on the flanks; bombardiers, pantonmen, and artificers in the rear.

ASSAULT, or storm, is a sudden and violent attack, made uncovered, on the part of the rampart, where a breach has been made.

ASSEMBLY, is the second beating of a drum before a march, provided the General has beat the first.

If part of a garrison only marches, the first beat is then the Assembly.

ATTACK, is the manner and disposition made by an army, or a great party, to drive an enemy out of a fortified place, or of any kind of strong situation.

ATTACKS. There are commonly two, (each commanded by an experienced officer) and they have communications one with another by lines or trenches, running parallels to the polygon of the place, that they may not be enfilated, and are called the parallels, the boyau, or the lines of communication.

The rear of an Attack is where it begins, and the front head, that part next to the place.

FALSE-ATTACKS, are never carried on with that life and briskness as the other; the design of them being to favour the real attacks, by amusing the enemy, and

B A

obliging the garrison to a greater duty.

PICK-AX, is a tool to dig up ground that is too hard for the spade.

AXES, are useful in an army, for cutting ways through woods, cutting trees to make bridges, and for mending the roads.

BACULE, is a gate like a pitt-fall, with a counterpoise before the corps de guards, advanced near the gates, which is supported by two great stakes.

BANQUETTE, is a kind of step made in the rampart of a work near the parapet, for the troops to stand upon, in order to fire over the parapet, it is generally three feet high, and as many broad, and about four and a half lower than the parapet.

BARBET, when the parapet of a work is but three feet high, or the breast-work of a battery is only that height, that the guns may fire over it without being obliged to make embrasures; it is said the guns fire in Barbet,

BASTION, is a part of the inner inclosure of a fortification, making an angle towards the field, and consists of two faces, two flanks, and an opening towards the center of the place, called the Gorge.

A **BASTION**, is said to be full, when the level ground within

B A

within is even with the rampart, that is, when the inside is quite level, the parapet being only more elevated than the rest.

A **BASTION**, is said to be empty, when the level ground within is much lower than the rampart, or that part next to the parapet, where the troops are placed to defend the Bastion.

BASTION-DETACHED, is that which separates or cuts off from the Bastion of the place, and differs from a half moon, whose rampart and parapet are lower, and not so thick as those of the place, because it has the same proportion with the works of the place.

BASTION-DOUBLE, is a Bastion, and is sometimes in the nature of a cavalier.

DEMI-BASTION, is composed of only one face, one flank, and one demi-gorge.

BATTERY, is a work made to place guns or mortars on it. It consists of an epaulment or breast-work, of about eight feet high, and eighteen or twenty thick, when it is made for guns, openings or embrasures are made in it, for the guns to fire through. The mass of the earth that is betwixt two embrasures, is called the *Merlin*; the platform of a battery is called a floor of planks, and sleepers to keep

B A

the wheels of the guns from sinking in the earth.

BATTERY, *Cross-Batteries*, are such whose shot meet at the same place, and form an angle. The advantage of such batteries is, that the one beats down what the other shakes.

BATTERY-DE-ENFILADE, is what batters obliquely; *Battery-de-reverse*, is what plays upon the enemies back; *Comrade-batteries* are those which play upon the same place. To raise a battery is the business of an engineer; to ruin a battery is to blow it up, or nail the guns.

BASE, or **BASIS**, is the foundation of a work. *Basis* of a rampart is when it joins the ground, on which it stands: *Basis* of a parapet, is where it joins the top of a rampart.

BASE of a gun, is the same with the breach of a gun, and is that solid piece of metal behind the chase towards the cascade: The great ring behind the touch-hole or vent, is called the *base-ring*, and the mouldings behind are called the *base*, or *breach-mouldings*.

BARRACADE, is a term sometimes used for a fence of a palisade.

BARRIER, is a gate made of wooden bars, about five feet long, perpendicular to the horizon, which are kept together by two long bars going

B A

going a-crofs, and another crossing diagonally: They are used to stop the cut that is made through the esplanade, before the gate of a town.

BATTLE, is the engagement between two armies.

BATTLE-ARRAY, is the order in which an army is drawn up, and called a line of battle.

BATTALION, is a body of foot composed of several companies, armed with firelock, bayonet, and sword. In the late war no particular number of companies was ascertained to compose a battalion; but since the last reduction nine companies compose a battalion. Eight battalion companies, and one of grenadiers.

Battalion ready for exercise. See plan 1.

Battalion in firing order. See plan 2.

Battalion disciplined, when they are expert with their arms, ready at their firings, and manœuvres, march, wheel, and form well, silent, steady, and solid under arms.

Angles of a battalion are such made by the last men, at the ends of the ranks and files.

BAYONET, is a short weapon, made with iron, and screws on over the muzzle of the firelock.

BALL, bullet, or shot, is of iron or lead, to be fired

B A

out of pistol, firelock, carabine, or cannon, and are of different sizes.

BALL, red-hot-ball, are such, made red hot in a forge, standing near a gun, the gun being loaded with powder, and wadded with a green turf, is spunged with a wet sponge, and laid at a small elevation; that ball which is taken out of the forge with a long ladle, may slide down, the gunner being ready to fire.

BALL, fire-balls are made of a composition of meal, powder and sulphur, salt-petre, pitch, &c. for firing houses.

BAGGAGE-WAGGONS, are those in which the officers and regiments baggage are carried.

BANDELEERS, are small cases of wood, covered with leather, holding cartridges of powder for the firelock.

BARRELS, are for several uses in the artillery, as for powder, small shot, flints, sulphur, quick-match, &c.

BASKETS, small baskets are used in sieges, on the parapet of the trench being filled with earth; they are about one foot and half high, about one foot and half diameter at top, and eight or ten inches at bottom, so that being set together, there is a sort of embrasures left at their bottom, through which they fire.

BAND

B E

BAND OF PENSIONERS, are a company of gentlemen, who receive a yearly allowance.

BANDS, are likewise hoops of iron, used about the carriage of a gun.

BAND OF MUSICK, which a corps keep up at their own expence.

BED, or stool of a mortar, is a solid piece of oak, in form of a Pa-selrelipiped, bigger or less, according to the nature of the mortar, hollowed a little in the middle to receive the breech and half the trunions; on the sides of the bed are fixed the cheeks or brackets, by four bolts of iron.

BED OF A GUN, is a piece of a plank, laid within the cheeks of the carriage, upon the middle transom, for the breech of the gun to rest on.

BETLES, are thick round pieces of wood, of a foot and a half long, and eight or ten inches diameter, having a handle of about four feet long; the use of them are for beating, or rather setting the earth of a parapet, or about palisades, by lifting it up a foot or two, and letting it fall with its own weight; they are likewise called stampers, and by pavers rammers.

BETM, is a little space or path, of six or eight feet broad, between the ditch and the parapet; when it is only made of turf, to prevent

B L

the earth from rolling into the ditch, and serves likewise to pass and repass.

BEATING-ORDER, to empower the colonel or officer commanding a corps, to send out recruiting parties, and to provide quarters, &c.

BILLS, are a sort of hand-tools carried along with the artillery, for the use of the army, for cutting ways through hedges, &c.

BIOVAC, is a night guard, performed by the whole army, when there is any kind of danger from the enemy.

BLINDS, are properly every thing that covers the besiegers from the enemy, such as wool-packs, facines, chandeleers, mantelets, gabions, sand-bags, earth baskets.

BLOCKADE, is the blocking up of a place, by posting troops at all the avenues leading to it, to keep supplies of men or provisions from getting into it, thereby proposing to starve it out, without making any regular attacks upon it; this is called forming a blockade. To raise a blockade, is to force the troops that keep the place blockaded up from their posts. To turn a siege into a blockade, is plain.

BLUNDERBUSS, is a short fire-arm, with a large bore, very wide at the mouth, carrying several pistol-balls or slugs, proper for the defence of a barrack, stair-case, or door:

door : The shortest fort of them are called musketoons.

B O D Y, or main body of an army, are the troops encamped betwixt the two wings, and are generally infantry.

BOMBARDIERS, are those employed about mortars ; they drive the fuse, fix the shell, and load and fire the mortar : they work with the fire-workmen : There is a chief bombardier.

BOMB, is a great shell of cast iron, with a large vent to receive a fuse. This fuse is made of wood, and drove full of a composition of meal, powder, sulphur, and saltpetre : When a bomb is filled with powder, the fuse is drove into the vent, within an inch of the head, and pitched over to preserve it ; when the Bomb is put into the mortar, the fuse is uncapped, and salted with meal powder ; it takes fire from the flash of the powder in the chamber, and burns all the while the Bomb is in the air : When the composition is spent, it fires the powder in the Bomb, with a greater violence. Bombs are from fifty to five hundred pounds weight.

BOLTS, are of several forts, those that go betwixt the cheeks of a gun-carriage, to strengthen the transums, are called the transum-bolts : The large nobbs of iron on the

cheek of a carriage, which keep the hand-pike from sliding, when it is poising up the breech of the piece, are called the price-bolts, the two short bolts that being put one in each, and of an English mortar carriage, serve to traverse her, are called traverse-bolts. The Bolts that go through the cheeks of a mortar, and by the help of coins keep her fixed at the elevation given her, are called bracket-bolts, and the four bolts that fasten the brackets, or cheeks of a mortar, are called bed-bolts.

BONNET, is a small work, consisting of two faces, having only one parapet, with two rows of palisades, of about ten or twelve feet distance, it is generally raised before the salient angle of the counter-scarp, and has a communication with the covert way, by a trench cut through the glacis, and pallisades on each side.

BOYAU, or branch of a trench, is a line or particular trench, made parallel to the defence of the place, to avoid being flanked or enfiladed.

A Boyau, when there are two attacks made upon a place, serves as a line of communication betwixt them. The parapet of a Boyau, being still turned towards the place besieged, it serves for a line of contravallation, to hinder

B R

der sallies and defend the workmen.

BOMBARDMENT, is when a great number of shells are thrown into a place, to ruin and destroy the buildings.

BREVE-T-OFFICER, is one who has a superior commission from his Majesty, than that in his own corps, takes rank by it, when joined, or doing duty with other corps, whether of horse, foot, or dragoons.

BREACH, is an opening, made in a wall or rampart, with cannon or mines, sufficiently wide for a body of troops to enter the works, and drive the besieged out of it. To make the attack the more difficult, they sow the breach with crow-feet, or stop it with chevaux-de-frize.

BREAK-GROUND, is the first opening of trenches against a place, which is done in the night time, by the advantage of some rising ground, hollow-way, or any thing that can cover the men from the enemies fire.

BRIDGE, is a conveniency made for passing rivers, and is of several sorts.

BRIDGES of communication, is a bridge made over the river, by which two armies, or two forts, which are separated by this river, have free communication one with the other.

DRAW-BRIDGES, are made of several fashions, but

B R

the most common are made with plyers, twice the height of the gate, and a foot diameter; the inner square is traversed with a St. Andrew's cross, which serves for a counter-poise, and the chains which hangs from the other extremities of the plyers to lift up, or let down the bridge, are of iron or brass.

Floating, or flying bridges, are made of two small bridges, laid one upon the other, so that the uppermost, by the help of ropes and pulleys, is forced forwards, till the end is joined to the place designed.

BRIDGE, in gunnery, is a term given to two pieces of timber, which go between the two middle transoms of a gun carriage, on which rest the bed.

BRIGADE, an army, is divided into brigades of horse, and brigades of foot. A brigade of horse is a body of four or six squadrons: A brigade of foot, consists of four, five, or six battalions; the eldest brigade has the right of the first line, and the second, the right of the second line, the two next take the left of the two lines, and the youngest in the center. The battalions which compose a brigade, observe the same order.

BRIGADIER, is a general officer, who has the command of a brigade, the eldest colonels are generally advanced

B R

ced to this post ; he visits all the out-guards and posts of the army, and at night takes the orders from the Major-general of the day, and delivers it to the Majors of brigades, who attend at orderly time. They march at the head of their brigades, and are allowed a guard.

BRIGADIERS, and Sub-Brigadiers, are posts in the horse-guards.

BRIGADE-MAJOR, is an officer appointed to act to a particular brigade ; for this post should be chosen the most ingenious and expert captains, they are to wait at orderly time to receive the parole, and the orders which they carry, first to their proper brigadier, and afterwards deliver to the adjutants of regiments, at the head of the brigade, where they regulate together the guards, parties, detachments, and convoys, and appoint them the hour and place of rendezvous, at the head of the brigade, where the Brigade-Major takes and marches them to the place of the general rendezvous : He ought to know the state and condition of the brigade, and keep a roll of the Colonels, Lieutenant-Colonels, Majors, and Adjutants. When a detachment is to be made, the Brigadier-General of the day, gives his orders to the Brigade-Major, how many men and officers each brigade must

C A

furnish, and they again with the adjutants of the regiments, how many each battalion is to send, which the adjutants divide amongst the companies. The complement each regiment is to furnish, are taken by the adjutant, at the head of each regiment, at the hour appointed, who delivers them to the brigade-major, at the head of the brigade.

BRINGERS-UP, the whole last rank of a battalion, being the last man of each file, are called Bringers-up.

C

CAPTAIN, commands a troop or company ; he ought to be very diligent, and preserve good order among the men, to know their names and dispositions, what every man is capable of, to visit them in their tents, quarters, or infirmary, to see what is wanting, to pay them well, and see them accounted with for their arrears and stoppages, every two months ; (for short accounts make long friends) cause them to keep themselves clean and neat in their cloaths, shoes, stockings, &c. and to keep their arms and accoutrements in perfect good order : When marching by companies or divisions, keep them at their proper distance for forming.

CAPTAIN, of a company of light infantry, was appointed to most regiments in the

C A

the late war; they were composed of both officers and soldiers, whose health, strength and activity, could most be depended upon.

CAPTAIN, of battle-axe-guards, generally obtains the rank of colonel, the two lieutenants have the rank of captains.

CAPTAIN-LIEUTENANT, is he who commands the colonels, troop or company.

CADET, is a young gentleman, who, to attain some knowledge in the art of war, and in expectation of preferment, chuses at first to carry arms as a private man. Cadet differs from a volunteer, because he takes pay, which is no more than a private man, but a cadet serves without pay.

CAVALRY, are regiments of horse and dragoons, and encamps on the wings of an army.

CARABINIERS, is a regiment of horse, upon the Irish establishment, commanded by Major-General Harvey.

CARABINE, is a fire-arm, shorter than a firelock; they are carried by the light horse, hanging at a belt.

CAPITAL, of a work, is an imaginary line, which divides that work into two equal and similar parts.

CAPITULATION, is the agreement made by the besieged with the besiegers, on

C A

what condition the place is to surrender: The chamade being beat, all hostilities cease on both sides; if the capitulation be agreed to and signed, hostages on both sides are delivered, for the exact performance of the articles.

CAMP, is the spot of ground occupied by an army, for a night or more, and where they pitch their tents, &c.

CAMPAIGN, is that part of the summer, betwixt the army taking the field, and their returning to garrison; an officer or soldier is said to have made a campaign, that has been in the field; the opening and close of the campaign, is the armies taking the field, or returning to garrison.

CAPONIER, is a passage made from one work to another, of ten or twelve feet wide, covered on each side by a parapet, terminating in a slope or glacis: Thus, when the ditch is dry, the passage from the curtain to the ravelin, or that from the covert-way to the arrows or detached redoubts, are called Caponiers.

They are often single parapets, raised on the entrance of a ditch, before the ravelin: To place small cannons and men behind them, to dispute the passage over that ditch, which are likewise called Caponiers.

C A

CAISSON, is a chest of wood, holding four or six bombs, sometimes filled only with powder, and buried by the besiegers under ground, to blow up a work which the besiegers are like to be masters of; as thus, after the bonnet is blown up by the mine, they lodge a Caisson under its ruins, and the enemy being advanced to make a lodgment there, they fire the Caisson by the help of a saucers or pudding, and blow up that post a second time.

CALIBER, is a term in gunnery, signifying the diameter, or wideness of a piece of ordnance.

CALIBER-COMPASSES, are compasses used by gunners, for taking the diameters of the several pieces of ordnance, or of bombs, bullets, &c. Their legs are therefore circular, on an arch of brass, whereof is marked the inches and half inches, to shew how far the points of the compasses are opened asunder.

CAVALIER, is a work raised generally within the body of the place, ten or twelve feet higher than the rest of the works; their most common situation is within the bastion, and made much in the same form; sometimes they are also placed in the gorges, or on the middle of the curtain, they are then made in the form of an horse shoe, only somewhat flatter.

C A

The use of Cavaliers is to command all the adjacent works and country about it, they are seldom or never made but when there is an hill or rising ground, which overlooks some of the works.

CASMENT, is a work made under the rampart, like a cellar or cave, with loopholes to place guns in it, and is bomb proof.

CAZERNs, or BARRACKs, are lodgings built in garrison towns, for lodging the garrison, such as the Barracks or Cazerns in Ireland.

CAVIN, is a natural hollow, fit to lodge a body of troops; it is of great use to the besiegers, for by the help of such a place, they can open trenches, make places of arms, or keep guards of horse, without great danger.

CASCABAL, is the knob of metal behind the breech of a cannon; the diameter of it is the diameter of the bore of the piece; the neck of the Cascabal is what joyns it to the breech of the moulding.

CASKs or BARRELS, are used in the army, for carrying meal to be laid up in magazines, or along with the army, for baking bread for the troops.

CARCASS, is an invention of an oval form, made of ribs of iron, afterwards filled with a composition of meal-powder, salt-petre, sulphur, glass, shavings of horn, pitch, turpen-

C A

serpentine, tallow, and linseed-oil, and then coated over with a pitched cloth; it is primed with meal-powder and quick-match, and fired out of a mortar: The design of it is to set houses on fire. For lifting it up to put it into the mortar, it has two small cords fixed to the sides of it.

CARRIAGE, is a general term, for waggon, carts, litters, &c.

Carriage of a cannon, is a long, narrow cart, invented for marching of cannon, and for the more convenient using them in action; it is made of two planks of wood, commonly once and a half the length of the gun.

BLOCK-CARRIAGE, is a cart made on purpose for carrying of mortars and their beds from one place to another.

TRUCK-CARRIAGES, are two short planks of wood, supported on two axel-trees, having four trucks or wheels of solid wood, about a foot and a half, or two foot diameter; for carrying mortars or guns upon a battery, where their own carriages cannot go, and are drawn by men.

CARTOUCH, is a case of wood, about 3 inches thick at bottom, girt round with marlin, holding about four hundred musquet-balls, besides six or eight balls of iron, of a pound weight; 'tis fired out of a hobit, a small sort of

C E

mortar, and is very proper for defending a pass.

A new sort is made, much better than the former, of a globular form, and filled with ball of a pound weight; others were then made for the guns, being of ball of half or quarter pound weight, according to the nature of the gun, tied in form of a bunch of grapes, on a tom-pion of wood, and coated over; these were made in the room of the partridge-shot, and exceed them very far, as some of the French battalions experienced at the battle of Blenheim.

CARTRIDGE, is a case of brown paper, holding the exact charge of a fire-arm; those for musquets, carabines, or pistols, hold both the powder and ball for the charge.

CARTRIDGE-BOX, is a case of wood or turned tin, covered with leather, holding thirty rounds of powder and ball, is wore upon a belt, and hangs a little higher than the pocket-hole.

CENTRE, is the middle point of a circle. Center of an army in the infantry.

CENTINEL, is a private man, armed with firelock, bayonet, and sword, who is supposed to be vigilant on his post, to prevent an enemy from surprising a camp, gar-rison, quarter, or out-post.

CENTRY-BOX, is the same with

C H

with Guereitte, only the one is of wood, and the other of stone; they are upon the flanked angles of bastions, and on the angles of the shoulder, and sometimes on the middle of the curtain, to preserve the centries from the weather.

CESSATION of arms, is when a governor of a place besieged, finding himself reduced to the last extremity, that he must either surrender, or sacrifice himself, his garrison, and inhabitants, to the mercy of the enemy, plants a white flag on the breach, or beats the chamade to capitulate, at which both parties cease firing, and all other acts of hostility, till the proposals be either agreed to or rejected.

CHEYAX-DE-FRIZE, large joints or beams, stuck full of wooden pins, armed with iron to stop breaches, or to secure a passage of a camp against the enemies cavalry.

CHAIN, is a number of brass or iron rings, linked one in another; an engineers chain formeasuring of ground, is of a certain number of links, of an equal length; chains of a gun are of iron, and very strong, fixed on the draft hooks, and going along the shafts of the timber to ease them, but they are not used for small guns.

CHAMADE, is a signal made by beat of drum, for a

C H

conference with the enemy, when any thing is to be proposed, as a cessation of arms to bring off the dead; or by the besieged, when they have a mind to deliver up a place upon articles of capitulation; and then there is a suspension of arms, and hostages delivered on both sides.

CHAMBER, of a mortar, is that part of the chase where the powder lies, and is much narrower than the rest of the cylinder; some are like a reversed cone or sugar loaf, others globical, with a neck for its communication with the cylinder, and are called Bottled-chambers; the powder chamber, or bomb chamber, on a battery, is a place sunk under ground, for holding powder or the bombs, where they may be out of danger, and preserved from the rain.

CHAMBER, is that place of a mine, where the powder is lodged.

CHANDELIERS, are wooden frames, made of two pieces, fixed across-ways, on the two other pieces, at about four feet asunder, and upon their interjections are erected two vertal pieces, of five feet high, each supported by three buttresses; the interval of these two pieces is filled up with fascines, and to cover the troops upon occasion.

CHARGED-CYLINDER, is that

that part of the chase of a gun, where the powder and ball are contained.

CHEEKS, of a mortar or brackets, are made of strong planks of wood, of near a semi-circular form, bound with thick plates of iron, and are fixed to the bed, by four bolts, called bed-bolts; they rise on each side of the mortar, and serve to keep her at what elevation is given her, by the help of strong bolts of iron, which go through both cheeks, both under and behind the mortar, betwixt which are drove coins of wood. These bolts are called bracket-bolts, and the bolts which are put one in each end of the bed, are the traverse-bolts; because, with hand-spikes the mortar is by those traversed to the right or left.

CHEVRETTE, among the many inventions for raising of guns, or mortars into their carriages, this engine is very useful; it is made of two pieces of wood, of about four foot long, standing upright upon a third, which is square; they are about a foot asunder, and parallel, and are pierced with holes exactly to one another, having a bolt of iron, which being put through these holes, higher or lower at pleasure, serves with a hand-spike, which takes its poise over this bolt, to raise any thing by force.

CIRCLE, is a plain figure,

comprehending within a crooked line, called the circumference; which has all its parts equally distant from a certain point, called the centre.

ARCH OF A CIRCLE, is an undetermined part of the circumference of a circle, being sometimes larger, and sometimes smaller.

LINE OF CIRCUMVALATION, is a kind of fortification, consisting of a parapet, or breast-work, and a ditch before it, to cover the besiegers against any attempt of the enemy in the field.

CLOUTS, are thin plates of iron, nailed on that part of the axel-tree of a gun-carriage, that comes through the nave, through which the lins-pin goes.

CLOSE, to close order, is when the ranks are drawn up at six feet asunder, and close up to two feet.

COLONEL, or commandant of a corps, commands it in chief, is answerable for the cloathing and other appointments of it, that they are good and conformable to his Majesty's royal intention.

He can never have too many virtues, too much knowledge or experience. He should have affability to gain the affection of his corps, and endeavour to promote a perfect harmony to subsist among them, and be ever studious for their promotion and happiness;

happiness; he is supposed to be well acquainted with the strength of the battalion, and master of all manœuvres, &c.

CORNET, is the youngest officer of a troop, it is a very honourable post, one part of his duty is to carry the standard in the day of battle, nor should he quit it but with his life; for it is a great dishonour to lose a standard.

CORPORAL, is an inferior officer to a serjeant, he posts and relieves the centries; and while the guard is relieving, he gives the orders he received, to the corporal of the new guard, and shews him all the posts; he carries a firelock advanced.

CONRADES, are two men, who receive one billet, lye and mess together.

CORPS, regiments, or battalions, means all the same thing.

COLOURS, are flags of silk, carried by ensigns, (except in the English fuzileers) they are never carried on detachment.

CAMP-COLOUR, are small flags, of about a foot and a half square, of the same colour, of the facings of the regiment they belong to.

COUNCIL OF WAR, is when a commander in chief of an army, or governor of a garrison, assembles the principal officers for their advice, upon some affairs of importance, with regard to the in-

terest of his prince, and honour of his country.

COURT-MARTIAL, (general) is composed of a president and twelve members at least, with a judge advocate; the president is of the rank of a field officer, with twelve of the rank of captain, if they can conveniently be assembled: If to try any under the rank of a field officer, A captain may sit as president, (when no field officer can be had) with twelve other commissioned officers, who are all sworn.

COURT-MARTIAL, (regimental) is composed of five officers, the eldest whereof is president; when that number cannot conveniently assemble, three are sufficient.

COURT-MARTIAL, (garrison) is composed of the same number of officers, of horse, dragoons, foot, or marines, as a regimental court; the approving officer is the governor, lieutenant-governor, or the officer commanding. The members are not sworn.

COURT OF INQUIRY, is a proceeding of a very delicate nature, a number of officers are assembled together, to enquire into the conduct of officers, and I have known them to be ordered to give their opinions in writing, to the person who ordered them to assemble, that he may judge from their determination, if there is sufficient matter

matter to bring them to a general court-martial.

N. B. There is no article of war for this, but the custom of the army.

COLUMN, of an army on the march, is a long row of troops, following one another; sometimes the army marches in four, six, or eight columns, according as the ground will admit of.

COLUMN, see battalion in Column, Plan 5.

COMMANDING-GROUND, is an eminence or rising-ground, overlooking a post.

CONE, is a body made by turning of a right angled triangle round a circle, the angular point of the right angle being fixed in the centre, which forms a pyramid, whose basis is a circle.

COMPLEMENT, of the curtain, is that part of it, which makes the demi-gorge.

COMPLIMENT, of the line of defence, is the remainder of the line of defence, after the angle of the line is taken off.

COMPLIMENT, of the line of an army turning out, is due to his Majesty, the Queen, or any of the Royal Family, (Lord Lieutenant, if in Ireland) Captain general, or commander in chief, (being a general officer) of the encampment.

COMPLIMENT, from guards, are due to his Majesty, the Queen, or any of

the Royal Family, (Lord Lieutenant, if in Ireland) and to General-officers, &c.

COUNTER-GUARD, is a work placed before the bastions, to cover the opposite flanks from being seen from the covert-way; they are likewise made before the ravelins. When they are placed before the bastions, they are esteemed to be of a very good defence.

COUNTER-SIGN, is generally given out with the parole, and is made use of in the same manner, and generally exchanged by the guards and rounds.

COUNTERSCARP, is the outside of a ditch, opposite to the parapet of the work, behind the ditch; it is often said, that the besiegers have carried their lodgments upon the counterscarp, which means they are lodged on the covert way.

CORDON, is a round projection made of stone, in a semi-circular form, whose diameter is about eight inches, which ranges quite round the wall, within four feet from the upper part.

CORIDOR, is a French term for covert-way.

COVERT-WAY, is a space of ground, level with the country, about three or four fathoms wide, covered by a parapet, which goes quite round the place; the greatest effort in sieges, is to make a
C lodg-

C O

lodgment on the covert-way, which the besiegers generally palisade and undermine: This parapet slopes insensibly towards the campaign and the talus or sloping, is called the glacis, which the besiegers are generally obliged to sap through, to make a lodgment, the parapet of the covert-way is about six feet high, with a banquette, and forms a salient angle before the curtain, which serves for a place of arms.

COUNTER-MARCH, is an army's turning suddenly their march the contrary way, which may be occasioned by the enemies endeavouring to get between them and their garrison, or may be done to disappoint and amuse the enemy. A battalion is said to counter-march, when the wings of a battalion interchange ground.

COUNTER-MINE, is used when the besiegers have, notwithstanding the opposition of the besieged, passed the foss, and put the miner to the foot of the rampart; they are of two sorts, being either made when the bastion is raised or afterwards, when it is attacked. Those that are made when the bastion is raised, are carried quite round the faces of a bastion; their height is from four to five feet, and broad enough for a man to pass easily: The others, which are made in

C R

time of necessity, when the besiegers are undermining a bastion, are pits sunk deep in the ground, where the miner is supposed to be, from whence they run out branches, in search of the enemies mine, to frustrate the effect of it, by either taking away the powder, or cutting the train.

COFFER, is a work sunk in the bottom of a dry moat, about six or seven foot wide, the length of it being from one side of the moat to the other, with a parapet of about two foot high, full of loopholes, covered over head with joists, hurdles, and earth; they serve to fire on the besiegers, when they endeavour to pass the moat, and differ from the caponiere, because it is longer, for the caponier takes not the whole breadth of the moat, it differs likewise from the traverse and the gallery, because it is made by the besieged, and these by the besiegers.

CORNISH-RING, is that small ring near the muzzle of the gun.

COINS, are wedges of wood under the breech of a gun, by which a diameter raises or falls the muzzle of his piece, till he points it exactly at the object; each gun has three coins belonging to her, they are for the same use about a mortar.

CROW-FEET, chaus-trapes or cal-trops, are machines of iron,

iron, having four points of about three or four inches long, so made, that which ever way they fall, there is still a point up: they are to be thrown upon breaches, or in-passes where cavalry are to march, to whom they are very troublesome, by running into the horses feet and laming them.

CROWN-WORK, is a kind of work not unlike a crown, it has two fronts and two branches; the fronts are composed of two half bastions, and generally serve to enclose some buildings, which cannot be brought within the body of the place, or to cover the town gates, or else to occupy a spot of ground, which might be advantageous to an enemy.

COMPTROLLER of the artillery, is a post of great trust, he inspects the musters of the artillery, makes the pay-list, takes the accompts and the remains of stores, and is accountable to the ordnance.

COMMISSION, is the authority granted by a prince, or his general, to officers, by which it empowers them to a command, according to the rank of it.

COMMISSARY of stores, is an officer in the artillery, who has the charge of all the stores, for which he is accountable to the ordnance: he is allowed an assistant,

clerks, and conductors under him.

COMMISSARY of horses, is likewise an officer in the artillery, appointed to have the inspection of the artillery horses, to see them mustered, and to send such orders as he receives from the commanding officer of the artillery, by some of the conductors of horses, of which he has a certain number for assistants.

COMMISSARY of provisions, is he who has the inspection of the bread and provisions of an army.

CONVOY, is a supply of men, money, ammunition, or provisions, conveyed into a town, or to an army. The body of men that guard this supply, are called likewise the convoy.

CONDUCTORS, are assistants given to the commissary of the stores, to receive or deliver out stores to the army, to attend at the magazines by turns, when in garrison, and to look after the ammunition waggons in the field; they bring their accounts every night to the commissary, and are immediately under his command.

CONTREVALATION, is a trench, with a parapet made by the besiegers, betwixt them and the place besieged, to secure them from the sallies of the garrison, so that the troops which form

C O

the siege, are encamped between the lines of circumvallation and contravallation: When the enemy has no army in the field, there is no occasion for the lines of circumvallation, and when the garrison is weak, the lines of contravallation are seldom used.

CONVERSION, and inversion, some are of opinion that they are both one; differing in letter, not in matter; take this for a rule, that inversion doth always produce file or files, and conversion rank or ranks; inversion consists of files fileing, or of ranks fileing; conversion of ranks, ranking to the right or left, or by increase of files ranking by even or uneven parts; and of ranks wheeling to the right or left. You will observe, that inversion and conversion requires larger distance of ground than any other motion, as it may be necessary for the ranks or files to be inverted or converted.

COMMISSARY of the musters, is an officer appointed to muster an army, battalion, troop, or company, as often as the General pleases, to know the strength of each regiment, and of each company, to receive and inspect the muster-rolls, and to keep an exact state of the strength of the army.

The troops in Great-Bri-

C Y

tain are mustered twice a year, in Ireland four times.

CONTRIBUTION, is an imposition or tax, paid by frontier countries, to redeem themselves from being plundered by the enemy.

CUIRASSIERS, are cavalry, armed with back, breast, and head pieces.

CULVERIN, is a cannon, about five inches and a quarter diameter of the bore, and from nine to twelve feet long, carrying a ball of eighteen pound; it is a good battering gun, but is too heavy for a field piece.

CURTAIN, is that part of the rampart of a place, which is between the flanks of two bastions, and is the best defended of any part of the rampart, wherefore besiegers never make their attacks on the curtains, but on the faces of the bastions, because of their being defended but by one flank.

CUNETTE, or Cuvette, is a deep trench, about three or four fathom wide, sunk along the middle of a dry moat, to make the passage more difficult to the enemy; it is generally sunk so deep till they find water to fill it, and is good to prevent the besiegers mining.

CYLINDER, or chace of a gun, is the bore or concavity of a piece, whereof that part which receives the powder and

D E

and ball, is called the charged cylinder, and that which remains empty after the gun is charged, is called the vacant cylinder.

D

TO DEBARK, is also to disembark troops, from on board of ships or boats.

DETACHMENT, is a certain number of officers, non-commissioned officers, and soldiers, drawn out from several regiments or companies, equally to be employed, whether on an attack, at a siege, or in parties to scour the country, &c.

DEFILE, is a narrow pass, which obliges an army to de-file off; it is one of the greatest obstacles that can occur in the march of an army, especially, if it happen to be between woods or marshes, for it not only gives an enemy an extraordinary advantage, of either attacking the front or rear, since they cannot come to relieve one another, because of the straightness of the passage, but it likewise very much impedes the march of an army: A retreating army puts always a defile between them and the enemy, to secure them a retreat.

TO DEFILE, is to reduce an army, &c. to a small front, to march through such a narrow passage.

DECAMP, is the breaking up from a place where the army has been encamped.

DESERTER, is an officer

D E

or foldier, deserting his Majesty's service; or a soldier, being actually listed, listing in another corps, without a proper discharge, shall suffer death, or such other punishment as a court-martial shall inflict, i. If the offence shall be thought not deserving capital punishment, the court may adjudge the offender to serve in any of the corps stationed in foreign parts, either for life, or a term of years, according to the degree of the offence, viii. but if afterwards convicted of returning without leave, before the expiration of such term, he shall suffer death, *ibid*.

This clause extends to all the forces in Great-Britain, Ireland, Minorca, Gibraltar, and his Majesty's dominions beyond sea, i.

DECAGON, is a polygon or fortification of ten sides. Defence of a place, are the parts of a wall or rampart, which flank and defend the rest, as the flanks, casements, parapets, and fause-brays: The face of a bastion, tho' it has the simplest defence of any part of the fortification, yet it cannot be formed till the opposite flank be ruined. To be in a posture of defence, It is to be in a condition to resist or oppose an enemy.

DEGREE, is properly a term in geometry, often used in fortification, to measure the angles, being the three hundred

D E

hundred and sixtieth part of the circumference of a circle; a degree is sub-divided into sixty equal parts, called minutes, and each minute into sixty seconds.

DEMI-CANNON, is a gun carrying a ball of thirty-two pound weight, the diameter of its bore is six inches and a half, and its length from twelve to fourteen foot: they are seldom used at sieges, because of their extraordinary charge.

DEMI-CIRCLE, is the half of a circle, cut by a line, passing through the center, called the diameter.

DEMI-CULVERIN, is a cannon of about nine foot long, the diameter of the bore is four inches and a quarter, carrying a ball of nine pound weight: It is a very good field piece.

DEMI-GORGE, is that part of the polygon, which remains after the flank is raised, and goes from the curtain to the angle of the polygon: It is half of the vacant entrance into a bastion.

DESCENT into a moat, is a deep trench or sap, through the esplanade, and under the covert-way, covered over head with planks and hurdles, and loaded with earth against artificial fires, to secure the descent, which, in ditches that are full of water, is made to the brink of the water, but in dry moats, the sap is car-

D O

ried to the bottom of the moat, where the traverses are made, to lodge and cover the besiegers.

DIAMETER of a circle, is a right line, which passes through the centre, and touches the circumference in two points, dividing the circle into two equal parts.

DISMOUNT, the enemies cannon, is to break their carriages, their wheels and axeltrees, or any thing else, so as to render them inserviceable.

DISMOUNT, is when an officer comes off guard, likewise a word of command to the horse and dragoons.

DIVISIONS, are the several parcels into which a battalion is divided into, as grand, or sub-divisions.

The division of an army are the brigades.

DODECAGON, is a figure, bounded by twelve sides, forming as many angles, capable of being fortified with the same number of bastions.

DONJON, is a place of retreat, to capitulate with more advantage, in case of necessity.

DOSSE, is a sort of basket, shaped like a sugar-loaf reversed, to be carried on the shoulders, and is used to carry the overplus earth, from one part of a fortification to another, where it is wanted: There are also small carts and wheel-barrows, for the same use.

DOUBLE

D R

DOUBLE TO DOUBLE, is a word of command, as double your ranks.

DRAGOON, is a musketeer, mounted on horseback, sometimes fighting on foot, but mostly on horseback, as occasion requires: (The regiment are divided generally into squadrons) they are useful on any expedition that requires dispatch.

DRAUGHT-HOOKS, are large hooks of iron, fixed on the cheeks of a cannon-carriage, two on each side, one near the trunnion hole, and the other at the train, and are called the fore and hind draught-hooks. Large guns have draught-hooks near the middle transom, to which are fixed the chains, which serve to ease the shafts of the limbers on a march; the fore and hind hooks are used for drawing a gun backwards or forwards by men, with strong ropes called draught-ropes, fixed to these hooks.

To draft a corps, is to incorporate men from one corps into another.

DRAIN, is a trench made to draw the water out of a moat, which is afterwards filled with hurdles and earth, or with facines, or bundles of rushes and planks, to facilitate the passage over the mud.

DRILL serjeants or corporals, are non-commissioned officers, who are expert in

D R

their arms, and that are capable of learning recruits their exercise, to march, wheel, and form well, and to give them a soldier-like air.

DRILL, as the drill of a regiment, or any part of it, consists of recruits and awkward men, and it is called the Drill-squad.

DRUMMER, is he that beats the drum; drum-major has the command over the other drums, and their cloathing is generally laced with gold or silver.

DRUM, is a martial instrument, used by the foot and dragoons; as to beat the general, is a signal for the whole army to make ready to march; the assembly is the next beat, which is an order for the soldiers to repair to their colours; and the march is to command them to move; to beat the reveille at day-break, is to warn the soldiers to rise, and the sentries to cease challenging; the troop is to assemble them together, for the inspection of an officer, and to mount the guards; retreat beating is at sun-set, when the rolls are called, the men warned for duty, and the orders of the day read to them.

Tattoo-beating, is at ten o'clock in summer, and nine in winter; by which hour it is expected, the men are at their quarters, to answer roll calling, and to go to rest.

Alarm

E C

Alarm is to call the regiment under arms, at their alarm posts, on some sudden danger, fire or other occasion.

To beat a parly or chame, is to desire a conference with the enemy.

To beat to arms, is to advertise the corps to stand to their arms.

The adjutant's call, is the first part of the taptoo.

The drummer's call, is a particular beat, and is called the drummer's call.

Two rolls and six flams, is for one serjeant and one corporal of a company.

Three rolls and nine flams, is for all the serjeants and corporals to attend for orders, &c.

DUTY, is the exercise of those functions that belong to a soldier, with this distinction; that mounting guards and the like, where there is not an enemy to be directly engaged, is called duty; but their marching to meet or fight an enemy, or being sent on party, or detachment, is called going upon service.

E

ECHARPE, to batter an Echarpe is to batter obliquely or side-ways: The flanks of Count Pagan's construction, may be battered on an Echarpe, because the angles of the curtain being too ob-

E N

tuse, are too much discovered.

EMBRASURES, are openings made in the flanks of a fortification, or in the breast work of a battery, or about two feet and a half within, and eight or nine without, and three feet from the bottom, for the guns to enter partly, and to fire through.

EMINENCE, is a high or rising ground, which overlooks and commands the low places about it; such places within cannon-shot of a fortified place, are a great disadvantage, for if the besiegers become masters of them, they can from thence fire into the place.

ENFILADE, a work is said to be enfiladed, when a gun may fire into it, so that the shot may go all along the inside of the parapet.

ENNEAGON, is a nine-sided figure or fortification.

ENCIENTE, is the wall or rampart, which surrounds a place, sometimes composed of bastions and curtains, either faced or lined with brick or stone, or only made of earth. The Enciente is sometimes only flanked, by round or square towers, which is called a Roman wall.

EN-SECOND, is an officer, whose troop or company is broke, and he continues in whole pay, and upon a vacancy, is appointed to a troop or company.

ENVE-

E N

ENVELOPE, is a work of earth, made sometimes in the ditch of a place, sometimes without the ditch, sometimes in the fashion of a simple parapet, and at other times like a small rampart with a parapet. Envelopes are often made to enclose a weak ground, when it is to be done with simple lines, to shun the great charge of horn-works, tenailles, or the like; or when they have not ground for such large works. The castle of Namure has two Envelopes on the south-west side of the Donjon, one before the other, composed of two demi-bastions and a curtain, and called the first and second Envelopes, and without both these a large work, extending itself on the top of the hill, with two demi-bastions, called the Terre-Neuve or Newland.

The citadel of Besançon, which is situated on a high steep rock, has three Envelopes, one before another towards the campaign, which serve as so many covert-ways before the moat.

The fort Nuerburg in Holland, is famous for its Envelope, which goes quite round the fort, and is fraised and palisaded with stakes, as thick as a man's body.

ENCAMP, is the pitching of tents, when the army, after a march, is come to a

E N

place where it is designed to halt a night or longer; the serjeants tents in the front, private men next, the officers encamp in the rear, the subalterns in one line next the company, fronting from it, the captains in another line at some distance, each behind his own company fronting the subalterns, the field officers behind them, the colonel in the centre, the lieutenant-colonel on his right, the major on his left, the surgeon and chaplain behind them, and the sutlers behind all.

ENSIGN, is the officer who carries the colours, (except in the English fuzileers) and is the youngest officer of a company, subordinate to his captain and lieutenant: It is a very genteel post; when he carries the colours in action; he should rather die than lose them, for courage is admired, and cowardice detested.

ENGINEER, is an officer of the military branch, who by the help of geometry, delineates upon paper, or marks upon the ground, all sorts of forts, and other works proper for offence or defence; who understands the art of fortification, and cannot only discover the defects of a place, but find a proper remedy for them, and knows both how to make an attack, and how to defend a place.

ENGINEERS, are extremely

D

ly

ly necessary for both these, and ought to be not only ingenious, but brave, in proportion to their knowledge; for the employ requires men expert and bold. At a siege, when the Engineer have observed, and narrowly viewed the place, they are to acquaint the General, which they judge the weakest part, and where the approaches may be made with most ease: Their business is to delineate the lines of circumvallation and contrévallation, taking all the advantages of the ground, to make out the trenches, places of arms, batteries, and lodgments, taking great care that none of their works be flanked, or discovered from the place; they are to make a faithful report to the General of what is doing, to demand a sufficient number of workmen and utensils, and to foresee whatever is necessary, that there be good provision made of fascines, picquets, gabions, spades, shovels, pike-axes, hatchets, sand-bags, planks, boards, mallets, flampers, doffers, wheel-barrows, &c.

An Engineer ought to be very perfect in arithmetick, to project the plots of places, and calculate the expences of the siege; in geometry, to measure his work and raise plans; in military architecture, to distinguish himself

in his profession; in civil architecture, to know how to conduct buildings, and works of places; in mechanicks, to know how to make sluices, march cannon, and use all sorts of machines; in perspective, to know how to express his work on paper, in their just proportion; and without design, he can neither make charts nor plans. These sciences are called the genius, in which consists the whole spirit of war and fortification.

EPAULE, or shoulder of a bastion, is the place where the face and flank meet, and form the angle, called the angle of the shoulder.

EPAULMENT, is a work, raised either of earth, gabions, or fascines, loaded with earth to cover side-ways. The Epaulments of the places of arms for the cavalry, at the entering of the trenches, are generally of fascines, mixed with earth.

EPAULMENT, is also a kind of breast-work, to cover the troops in front, and sometimes in flank.

EPAULMENT, or square orillon, is a mass of earth.

EPTAGON, or Heptagon, is a figure of seven sides, and seven angles.

ESPALADE, is an open space, between the citadel and town, to prevent an enemy from making approaches under

EX

under cover, after he is master of the place.

ESCALADE, a place, is to approach it secretly, and to place ladders against the wall or rampart, for the troops to mount and get into the place.

ETAPPE, is a French term for the distribution of provisions and forage, to an army in their rout, through a kingdom, going to winter-quarters, or returning to the field.

ETAPPIER, or undertaker, is he that contracts with a country or territory, for furnishing troops on their march, with provisions and forage.

EVOLUTION, is a movement made by troops, when they are obliged to change their form and disposition, in order to preserve a post, or to occupy another; to attack an enemy with more advantage, or to be in condition to defend themselves, against a superior number.

EXERCISE, is the practice of all those motions, actions, and management of arms, whereby a soldier is taught the different postures he is to be in under arms, and the different motions he is to make to resist an enemy, which he must be perfect in, before he be fit for the service.

EXAGON, is a figure bounded by six sides or polygons, making as many angles capable of bastions.

FA

EXTERIOR side of a fortification, is the distance, or imaginary line drawn from one point of the bastion, to that of the next.

EXPEDITION, is dispatch, or quickness, in sending off troops, and if secrecy is required, (called) a secret expedition.

F

FACES, of the bastions, are two sides, which meet in an angle, projecting towards the field.

FACES of any work, are those parts where the rampart is made, making an angle, pointing outwards.

FACE prolonged, is that part of the line of defence Razant, which is betwixt the angle of the shoulder and the curtain, or the line of defence Razant, diminished by the length of a face.

FACE of a gun, is the superficies of the metal, at the extremity of the muzzle of the piece.

FACE, is likewise a word of command.

FACING, is a particular turning of the aspect, from one part to another, whereby the front-proper, becomes front-accidental; and a front accidental, may be reduced to its proper front.

FASCINE, is a kind of faggot, made of branches, tied in two or more places, of a-

F I

bout six or eight inches diameter.

They serve to keep up the earth in trenches, as likewise in batteries, instead of stone or brick walls, when they are used in raising batteries, they are generally sixteen feet long, and are then called *Saucissons*.

FAUSS-BRAY, is a low rampart, going quite round the body of the place; their height is about three feet at most, above the level of the ground, and its parapet is about four or five toises distance from that of the body of the place.

FAGGOTS, were men allowed to throw up their pay, to be excused duty; that practice is now left off, being contrary to the articles of war.

FANIONS, are small flags, carried along with the baggage of artillery.

FELLOWS, are six pieces of wood, each whereof forms a piece of an arch of a circle, of sixty degrees, and joined both together by dyledges, make an entire circle, which, with the addition of a nave and twelve spokes, make a wheel.

FERRIES, are boats, which troops embark in, and debark from, to cross over the water.

FIELD-OFFICERS, are those that have the power

F I

and command over a regiment; such as the colonel, in his absence the lieutenant-colonel, in both their absence the major.

FIELD-PIECES, are small cannon, each corps has two.

FIFER, is he who plays on a musical instrument, called a fife; its sound is martial, and the men march in time to it, and it generally accompanies the drum.

FIFE, is an instrument, not unlike a German-flute, but somewhat less.

FILE, is the line of soldiers, standing one behind another. Three men make a file.

TO FILE OFF, is the same as to defile, or to file off from a large front, to march in length: An army is said to file off from the right or from the left; when they move from the right or left, marching one after another, and so reducing their lines of an army.

FIRE, is a word of command to the soldiers, to discharge their firelocks; to the cavalry to discharge their carabines or pistols; and to the gunners to fire their guns: running-fire, is when a file of men fire one after the other.

FIRE-ARMS, under this name are comprehended all sorts of arms, that are charged with powder and ball; as
• cannon,

F L

cannon, firelocks, carabines, pistols, blunderbusses, &c.

FIRE-LOCK, is a fire-arm carried by a foot-soldier; the barrel of it is about three foot eight inches long, and the stock is about four foot eight inches, and the bore is fit to receive a bullet of lead, at the rate of twenty-nine bullets to two pounds of lead.

FIRE-BALL, is a composition of meal-powder, sulphur, salt-petre, pitch, &c. about the bigness of a hand-grenade.

FIRE-MASTER, is an officer, who gives the directions and proportions of ingredients for each composition, required in fireworks.

FIRE-WORKERS, are the youngest commissioned officers, in a company of artillery.

FIREWORKS, are the works made by the fire-workers, whether for war or rejoicing.

FLAM, a stroke with one drum-stick, on the drum head.

DOUBLE-FLAM, a strong stroke with both drum-sticks, on the drum at one time.

FLANK in general, is part of a work which defends another work, along the outside of its parapet.

FLANK of the bastion, is the part between the face and curtain; the flank of one bastion serves to defend the

F L

ditch before the curtain, and face of the opposite bastion.

FLANK, (concave) is that which is made in an area of a circle.

FLANK, (retired) is that which is made behind the line, which joins the extremity of the face, and the curtain towards the capital of the bastion.

M. Vauban, makes his five toises from that line, others more or less, as it happens.

FLANKING, is the same thing in fortification as defending.

FLANK, (direct or grazing) is that which is perpendicular, to the opposite face produced, and oblique or fishant, when it makes an acute angle with that face.

FLANK, (second) when the face of a bastion produced, does not meet the curtain at its extremity, but in some other point, and the flank is called the second flank.

FLANKS of an army, are the troops encamped on the right and left flanks of it.

FLANKS of a battalion, are the right and left of it.

FLANK, is the side of an army, battalion, company, &c. from the front to the rear.

To **FLANK**, is to attack and fire upon the flank of an enemy.

FLAGS, in French fanions, are

F O

are small banners of distinction, stuck in the baggage-waggons of the army, to distinguish the baggage of one brigade from another, and of one battalion from another, that they may be marshalled by the waggon-master-general, according to the rank of their brigades, where they are to keep during the march, to avoid the confusion that otherwise would be.

FLASK, is a horn or such a thing, made for carrying of powder.

FLASH in the pan, when a piece burns priming, and does not go off.

FORTRESS, are a general name for all places that are fortified by nature or art.

FORCES, an army, or considerable body of forces.

FORT, is a small fortification, made in a pass near a river, or at some distance from a fortified town, to guard the pass, or to prevent the approach of ships, or an enemy by land: They are of different figures, some made small, and some greater.

FORTIFICATION, is a general name for any work made to oppose an enemy; it is put into such a posture of defence, that every one of its parts defend, and is defended by another.

FORTIFICATION artificial, are the works raised by an engineer, to strengthen

F O

the natural situation of a place, by repairing and supplying its defects.

FORTIFICATION natural, consists of a place, being strong by nature.

FORTIFICATION defensive, regards the precautions and the industry, by which a weak party opposes a stronger.

FORTIFICATION regular, consists in a place being regularly fortified, and defended by bastions.

FORTIFICATION irregular, is when a town has such an irregular situation, as renders it incapable of being regularly fortified.

FOOT, are such men as insist themselves to serve in the infantry, are armed with fire-lock, bayonet, and sword, and march on foot.

FOOT, is twelve inches, six foot make a fathom, five foot make a geometrical pace, three foot an English yard, and two foot and a half a common pace. To be on the same foot, is to be in the same circumstances with the rest of the foot soldiers, to gain or lose ground foot by foot, is to dispute a post resolutely with an enemy, losing it by degrees, every bit of it to the utmost.

FOOT-BANK, the same as a bankquette, is a small step of earth, on which the soldiers stand to fire over the parapet;

F O

parapet ; there are generally two and sometimes three.

FORELORN, are men detached from several regiments, or otherwise appointed to make the first attack in day of battle, or at a siege to be the first in storming the counter-scarp, mounting the breach or the like : they are called so from the eminent danger they are exposed to.

FORMERS, are of several sorts, but the chief are for making cartridges for cannon ; they are round pieces of wood, fitted to the diameter of the bore of a gun, on which the paper, parchment, or cotton, which is to make the cartridge, is to be rolled, before it be sewed.

FORM, is a word now used, (when the regiment is dispersed) as to form battalion, &c. or to form for roll callings.

FORGE, is an engine carried along with the artillery, for the smiths, and is a travelling smiths-forge : forge for hot balls, &c.

FORAGE, is the hay, oats, barley, wheat, grass, fitches, clover, &c. which is cut down and brought into the camp, by the troopers, for the subsistence of their horses ; it ought to be chiefly considered by the quartermaster-general, in encamping an army, that it be in a country of forage : It is he that

F R

orders the method of the foraging, and posts the guards for the security of the foragers. Dry forage, is the hay, oats, and straw, which is delivered out from the magazines, to the army in garrison, or when they take the field, before the forage be grown up.

FOUGADE, foucade, or foucasse, is a small mine under a post, which is in danger of falling into the enemies hands, to blow it up.

FOURNEAU, is the place of a mine, where the powder is lodged, and is the same thing as the chamber of a mine.

FOUGASS, is a small mine, from six to eight feet under ground ; they are generally placed under the glacis or dry ditches.

FRAISE, a kind of stakes of palisades, placed horizontally on the outward slope of a rampart of turff, to prevent the work being taken by surprize.

When an army retrenches itself, they often Fraise the parapets of their retrenchments, in the parts most exposed to being attacked.

FRONT of a battalion, is the front rank : front of an army, is the first row of tents in the first line.

FRONT of a place, is the same as the face of a place.

FRONT-

G A

FRONT-POLES, are the poles at the door of a tent.

FUSILIERS, are regiments of foot, and wear caps, the officers carry fuses; they often act as grenadiers.

FUSE, is a piece of wood, drove into grenades or shells, being hollowed, and filled with meal-powder, by which the grenade or shell is fired.

G

GABION, is a cylinder basket, open at both ends, of about three feet wide, and as much in height; they serve in sieges to carry on the approaches under cover, when they come pretty near the fortification.

GABION (stuffed) is made in the same manner as the former, they are only filled with all sorts of branches and small wood, and are five or six feet long; they serve to roll before the workmen in the trenches, to cover them in front against musquet-shot.

GALLERY, is the passage made under ground, leading to the mines; they are from four and a half to five feet high, and about four feet broad; the earth about it is supported by wooden frames, with boards over them.

GALLERY of a mine, is the same as a branch of a mine, and is a passage under ground, of three or four feet

G A

wide under the works, where a mine or counter-mine is carried on; the besieged and the besiegers, carry each of their branches under ground, in search of each others mines, which often meet and destroy each other.

GARRISON, a place of defence, composed of either horse, foot, or dragoons, to guard it in time of peace, and to defend it in time of war, in case an enemy should attack it.

GATE, of a garrison, is made of strong beams and planks, with iron bars, and turns upon hinges, to secure the entry of a garrison against an enemy.

GAZONS, are sods, or pieces of fresh earth, covered with grass about a foot long, and half a foot broad, cut in form of a wedge, to line the parapet; if the earth be fat and full of herbs, it is the better; they are made so, that their solidity makes a triangle, to the end, that being mixed, and beat with the rest of the earth of the rampart, they may easily settle together, and incorporate in a mass with the rest of the rampart.

The first bed of Gazons is fixed with pegs of wood; the second bed ought to be laid to bind the former that is over the joints of it, and so continued till the rampart is finished;

finished ; betwixt these beds they generally sew all sorts of binding herbs, to strengthen the rampart.

GENERAL of an army, is he who commands in chief, and is the same in an army as the soul is in the body, for as all the actions of the body proceed from the motion of the soul, so that great numbers of regiments ought to do nothing but by orders of the General, who ought to be a man of courage and conduct, to have a great experience, to be liberal, his valour makes him a terror to his enemies, and upon his conduct depends the safety of the army, therefore I think it the greater qualification : for bravery without conduct, has often brought things to extremity.

A General's conduct appears in establishing his magazines in convenient places, in examining the country, that he do not engage his troops too far, without knowing which way to bring them off, and to subsist them, and in knowing to take the most advantageous posts, either to fight or shun a battle at his pleasure. His experience makes his army have such confidence in him, that they reckon themselves sure of victory before they engage ; his liberality gets him intelligence of the enemy, of their strength

and designs, without which he is in the dark, and cannot know which way to take his measures, he ought therefore to encourage his spies, and to have such as he knows are inclined to him : A General ought likewise to be naturally inclined to great enterprizes, to be a lover of glory, and to have an aversion to flattery, to make himself beloved, by treating his officers with civility, hearing their reasons, praising and rewarding good actions, and punishing crimes ; he ought notwithstanding, to be rigorous, and severe upon occasions, in seeing his orders punctually observed, otherwise discipline must drop.

A General gives his orders for the march of an army, and their encampment, he visits the posts for intelligence, gives out the parole, and issues orders every day or night, to the lieutenant-general. In day of battle he chuses the most advantageous ground, makes the different dispositions of his army, posts the artillery, sends off the baggage to a place of security, and sends his orders by his aid-de-camps ; at a siege, he chuses to invest the place, he views and reconnoitres it, he visits often the works, and makes detachments to secure convoys : The charge of a General is of great extent,

G O

and requires a particular attention.

GENERAL, master-general of the ordnance, is one of the greatest employments, being a charge of great trust; he has the management of all the ordinance, and ought to know, and consider whatever can be serviceable or useful in the artillery, and to fill up the vacancies with such as are qualified for them.

GENERAL, is likewise a beat of the drum. See drum.

GENS-D'ARMES, are a body of horse, called so, because formerly they fought in armour; they are part of the king of France's household.

GIN OR CRAB, is an engine for mounting guns on the carriages, or dismounting them.

TO GIVE GROUND, is to retire, or quit a post, when it is attacked by an enemy; to get or gain ground, is to have the advantage of the enemy, and to force them from a post.

GLACIS, is that part of a fortification, beyond the covert-way, to which it serves as a parapet, and terminates towards the field in an easy slope.

GORGE, of a bastion, is the interval between the extremity of one flank, to that of the other.

GORGE, of any work, is that part next the body of the

G O

place, where there is no rampart or parapet, that is at the counterescarp of the ditch.

GORGET, is of brass or silver, worn by officers upon duty; they are sometimes gilded, having the badge of the regiment or device, engraved on them; some have both.

GOVERNOUR, is a considerable officer, and has a great trust reposed in him, and ought to be very vigilant and brave, knowing that it is more honour to defend one town, than to take two, because the abundance of provisions, and number of men is greater with the besiegers, than in the garrison, the former being likewise masters of the country, and the others shut up.

He ought always to be prepared for a siege, to have a particular care of the ramparts, parapets, and other defences of the place; that the fofs or moat be kept clean and in good order, and the out-works in good repair, and well palisaded, he ought frequently to visit the magazines, to see that every thing be in good order, and whether there be a sufficiency for a siege, to consider the quantity of grain, provisions, and water, and to have a return of all the stores, and to neglect nothing which tends to the defence of the place, because

G U

cause he must be answerable for it; he should visit the ports, to see that both officers and soldiers do their duty, and send frequent spies and parties abroad, for intelligence.

GRENADIER, is a foot-soldier, armed with firelock, bayonet, and a broad sword, and has a match-box, fixed upon the front of the cross-belt, and match rolled up and fixed to two rings, on the back part of the cross belt; they wear caps, and each battalion has one company, composed of men of health, strength, and activity.

HORSE-GRENADIERS, is a troop of horse-guards.

GRENADE, is an iron ball, of about three inches diameter, hollow within, which is filled with powder, to be thrown by the grenadiers amongst the enemy in an attack, after having set fire to the fuse, that it may burst.

GUARD, is a duty or service, which ought to be performed with a great deal of vigilance, to secure all from the efforts and surprizes of an enemy in a garrison; the guards are relieved every day, and the common run of duty comes to a soldiers turn, once in three days, so that they have two nights in bed, and a third upon guard. To go upon guard, to mount the guard, to dismount the guard, to relieve the guard, to change

G U

the guard; the officers of the guard, or the serjeant of the guard, are words often used and well known.

GUARDS in the lines, are generally commanded by a captain; main-guard in the garrison, by the eldest subaltern that mounts of that day; the post-guards and magazine guards, are commanded by subalterns, and draw lots for their guards on the parade, the youngest subaltern excepted, who always mounts guard under the command of a captain, (when more subalterns than one mount) the guards are mounted at what hour the governor pleases.

ADVANCED-GUARD, is the party of either horse or foot, that march four or five hundred yards before the body, to give them notice if any troops or danger appears.

ADVANCED-GUARD, is likewise the small body of horse, under a serjeant or corporal, which are posted before the grand guard of the camp.

REAR-GUARD, is that part of the army which brings up the rear, and march in the rear four or five hundred yards.

GRAND-GUARD, are two, three, or four squadrons of cavalry, commanded by a field officer, posted before the camp, on the right and left wing, towards the enemy, for the security of the camp.

G U

PICQUET-GUARD, is a certain number of horse and foot, which are to keep themselves in readiness, in case of an alarm; the horse keep their horses saddled, and are booted all the time, in order to mount in a minute: The foot draw up at the head of the battalion at retreat beating, but are returned to their tents, where they hold themselves in readiness, upon the shortest notice.

FORAGE-GUARD, is a detachment sent out to secure the foragers, and are posted at all places, where the enemies party may come to disturb the foragers, or they may be spread too near the enemy, and be taken: This is likewise called the covering party, and marches generally the night before the foragers come: They consist sometimes of horse, and sometimes of foot, and often of both, and must remain at their posts till the foragers come all off the ground.

CORPS-DE-GARDE, are soldiers intrusted with the guard of a post, under the command of one or more officers.

ARTILLERY-GUARD, is a detachment from the army, to secure the artillery; their corps-de-gard is in the front, and their centries round the park; upon a march they go

G U

in the front and rear of the artillery.

GUARDS, the horse and regiments of foot-guards.

GUIDON, as guidon and major, in the troops or horse guards.

GUIDES, &c. Captain of the guides, is an officer appointed for providing guides for the army, of which he ought to have always a sufficient number with him, that know the country very well, to send out as occasion requires; such as are to guide the army on a march, for convoys, parties, baggage, artillery, and detachment, to provide which, he ought to have a party of horse to go to the adjacent villages, castles or forts, to demand boors, whom he brings to his quarters, and keeps under a guard, for fear they make their escape, till the army come to another ground, where he can be provided with others: He ought to understand several languages, especially that of the country in which the army is.

GUERRITTE, is a sort of small towers of stone or wood, generally on the point of a bastion, or on the angles of the shoulder, to hold a centinel, who is to take care of the foss, and to watch to hinder surprizes. Some call Echaugette, those which are made of wood, and are of a square

H A

square form, for the Guer-rites of stone are roundish, and are built half without the wall, and terminate in a point below, which ought to be at the cordon, that the centinel may discover along the faces, flanks, and curtains, and all along the foss: They ought to be about six foot high, and their breadth three and a half.

GUNNER, is one appointed for the service of the cannon.

H

HALT, is to cause them to stand fast, when men are marching.

HALBERT, is the arms carried by the serjeants of foot.

HAIR - CLOATHS, are large pieces of cloath, made with half hair; they are used for covering the powder in the waggons, or upon battery, as likewise for covering fixed bombs, or hand-grenades; and are for several other uses.

HAND-BARROW, is made of light wood, and is of great use in fortification, for carrying earth from one place to another; and in a siege, for carrying bombs or cannon balls along the trenches, and for other uses.

HAND-SPIKE, is a piece of ash, elm, or other strong wood, five or six foot long, cut thin like an edge at one

H E

end, that it may get the easier between things which are to be separated, or under any thing that is to be raised, it is better than a crow of iron, because its length allows a better poise.

HATCHET, is a small ax, used by the pioneers, who go before to prepare the ways for an army, in cutting down trees, hedges, bushes, stiles or gates.

HALF MOON, is properly an out-work, composed of two faces, making a salient angle, whose gorge is turned like a crescent, or forming an arch of a circle: They were used formerly for covering the points of bastions, but have been found of no use, because having only the ravelins to defend them; they are but very indifferently flank'd. The ravelins that are built before the curtains are now called half-moons; the name of ravelin being almost laid aside by the soldiers.

HEDGE, to line a Hedge, is to plant soldiers along it, under cover, either to fire upon an enemy, or to save themselves from the horse, or to defend a pass or defile.

HELVE, is the handle of a hatchet, pick-axe, mattock, &c.

To **HELVE**, is to put handles to them.

HEPTAGON, is a figure, capable of being fortified with

HE

with several regular bastions.

HEXAGON, is a figure of six sides, capable of being fortified with six bastions.

HERISON, is a barrier made of one strong beam, or plank of wood, stuck full of iron spikes; it is supported in the middle, and turns upon a pivot or axis.

HERSE OR PORT-CULLISES, are strong pieces of wood, jointed cross-ways, like a Lattice, or harrow, before it can be broke open; the besiegers have time to rally and repulse them.

HERSE, is likewise an engine, like an harrow, stuck full of iron spikes; it is used in the place of a Che-vax-de-frise, to throw in the ways where horse or foot are to pass, and upon breaches to stop the foot.

HEAD of a work, is the front of it, next to the enemy, and farthest from the place, as the front of the horn-work is the distance between the flanked angles and the demi-bastions.

The **HEAD** of a double tenaille, is the salient angle in the middle, and the two other sides which form the re-entering angle.

HEAD PIECE, armour for the Head, an helmet, such as the light dragoons wear.

To **HEAD**, to lead on, is to be first of an army, battalion, company or party.

HO

HEAD of a camp, is the ground before which the army is drawn out.

HIDES, tanned Hides, are always carried along with an army, especially in the fire-workers stores for covering powder or fixed bombs, from the rain, and are very useful upon battery, or in laboratory.

HORN - WORK, is composed of a front, and two branches; the front is made into two half bastions and a curtain. This work is of the nature of a crown-work, only smaller, and serves for the same purpose.

HOBITS, are a sort of small mortars, about eight inches diameter, some seven, some six; they differ nothing from a mortar, but in their carriage, which is made after the fashion of a gun carriage, only much shorter: they march with the guns, and are very good for annoying an enemy at a distance, with small bombs, or in keeping a pass, being loaded with cartouches.

HONEY-COMB, are flaws and defects in the charg'd cylinder of a cannon: It is a fault in casting the piece.

HORIZONTAL, is a superficies, parallel with the Horizon; as a plain or level country, or field, without any rising ground or hollow.

HORSE, are troops that fight on horse back.

HORSE-

H O

HORSE-SHOE, is a small round or oval work, with a parapet, made generally in a moat or marsh.

H O O K S of iron placed on the cheeks of a gun carriage, two before and two behind, are called draught hooks.

HOSPITAL, is a place appointed at a siege, or with the army, for the sick and wounded, and ought to be provided with physicians, and surgeons, overseers, &c. with all sorts of medicines, drugs, and whatever else may be wanted, in great quantities; as likewise beds, sheets, coverlets, shirts and spare linen for bandages. The director of an hospital, ought to be a very careful and just man, and to see that the men want nothing, for there are often great abuses committed in an hospital, because they have every thing at command, as the wine, brandy, syrups, bread, butter, &c. which are often misapplied, the hospital ought to be furnished with the best physicians and surgeons, that the life of a man which he has exposed for the service of his Prince, may not be lost by an evil operation of a bad surgeon, when it may be preserved, by being well dressed. The hospital is generally settled in some town near the army, where the sick and wounded may be conveniently carried to it; only a part of it stays

I N

with the army, and moves with it, and is called the flying hospital.

HURDLES, or clayes, are made of branches or twigs, interwoven together, in the figure of a long square; about five or six foot long; and three, or three and a half broad; the closer they are woven, they are the better; they are for several uses as for covering travarves and lodgments, caponeers, coffers, &c. and are covered over with earth, to secure them from the artificial fire-works of the enemy, and from the stones which might be thrown upon them, and likewise to lay upon marshy ground, or to pass the fofs, especially when it is full of mud or slime.

I

JACK, is an engine much used about guns or mortars, and is always carried with the artillery, for raising up the carriages, &c.

INSULT, a work is said to be insulted when it is said to be attacked suddenly, and openly.

INVESTING a place, is to surround it with troops, so as to prevent any thing to enter the place, or to be carried out of it; it is the first operation of a siege.

INTERIOR side of a fortification, is the imaginary line drawn

I N

drawn from the center of one bastion to that of the next, or rather the curtain produced to the centers of the bastions.

INTRENCHED, an army is said to be intrenched, when they have raised works before them, to fortify themselves against the enemy.

INTRENCHMENTS, are all sorts of works, made to fortify a post against an enemy, a post is intrench'd, when it is covered with a foss and parapets.

INDENTED line, is a line running out and in, like the teeth of a saw, forming several angles, so that one's side defends another. They are used on the banks of rivers, where they enter the town, likewise the parapet of the covert-way is often indented.

To **INDENT** with a barrack-master, is to sign a return of the barracks bedding, &c. and the barrack-master signs one to the officer, commanding the troop or company.

INDEPENDENT troop or company, is what is not incorporated into any regiment.

INFANTRY, are regiments or independant companies of foot.

INVALIDE, is a man who has spent his time in the service, and is either through old age or wounds, rendered incapable of serving; they are disposed of in hospitals,

K E

or have a yearly allowance from the crown, if able to do garrison duty; are sometimes put into Invalidé regiments or companies.

IMPREGNABLE, is a place of fortification, not to be taken, that cannot be taken by cannon or force.

K

KETTLE DRUMMER, is a man on horseback, appointed to beat the Kettle-drum from which he takes his name.

KETTLE-DRUMS, are two sorts of large basons of copper or brass; rounded in the bottom, and covered over with vellum, or goat skin, which is kept fast by a circle of iron, and several holes fastened to the body of the drum; and a like number of screws to screw up and down with a key for the purpose. The two drums are kept fast together, by two straps of leather, which go through two rings which are fastened, the one before, and the other behind the pommel of the Kettle-drummer's saddle; they have a banner of silk or damask, richly embroidered with gold or silver, sometimes with both, and are fringed, each regiment of horse has a pair; and the royal Irish dragoons. And the train of artillery have a very large pair.

KLIN-

LA

KLINKETS, are a sort of small gates made through palisades for sallies.

L

LABORATORY, or *Laboratorium*, is any sort of work-house, but I bring it in here as a term belonging to gunnery ; and it signifies the place where the fire-workers, and bombardeers prepare their stores, &c. There is sometimes a large tent carried along with the artillery, to the field for this use, with all sorts of tools and materials, and it is called the Laboratory tent.

LADLE of a gun, is the instrument wherewith the powder is put into the piece ; it is made of copper, bowed in form of a half cylinder ; Ladles are fitted to the bore of each gun, and hold powder sufficient for the charge.

LANTHORNS are used at sieges for the night-time, upon the batteries ; but those are your blind or dark Lanthorns.

LANE, to make a Lane, is to draw men up in two ranks facing one another, which is generally done in the streets through which the Lord Lieutenant of Ireland, or the Lords Justices are to pass, it's a mark of honour. The corpse of an officer also passes thro' a Lane.

LI

LANCE serjeant, is a corporal, acting and doing duty as a serjeant ; and receives but corporals pay.

LANCE corporal, is a private man, acting and doing duty as a corporal ; and receives but soldiers pay.

LE-GION, regiments, or a body of troops, consisting sometimes of more, sometimes of less. The Roman Le-gion, generally consisted of six thousand, three of cavalry, and three of infantry.

LIEUTENANT-GENERAL, is a post of great consequence, requires both courage and conduct, and whose ability and fidelity has appeared on several occasions ; he ought not only to understand his own but also the business of a General, because he is often intrusted with the command of an army : He is allowed an Aid-de-camp and a guard.

LIEUTENANT-GENERAL of the ordnance, is next in command to the Master-General, and in his absence the command devolves on him. See Master-General of the ordnance.

LIEUTENANT-COLONEL of a regiment, should be a man of great experience, knowing how to attack or defend a post, lead the regiment to battle, and how to make a good retreat ; he is to know the qualifications of all

L I

all his officers, and should endeavour to promote a perfect harmony to subsist among them.

LIEUTENANT of the tower of London, is next in place to the Constable, and acts with as full power in his absence.

LIEUTENANT of the horse and foot, is the second officer in a troop or company, and in the absence of the captain commands it, and is not only answerable to the service but to him also, for the care and management of it.

LIGHT-HORSE, are mounted upon hunters; armed with carabines, pistols, and long swords.

LINE of defence, is the distance between the salient angle of the bastion and the opposite flank, that is, it is the face produced to the flank.

LINE of circumvallation, is the work or retrenchment made about an army which besieges a place, to secure it against any insult from without; it is made of a parapet with a ditch before it at every 120 toises or thereabout, the parapet projects outwards in an angle, this projection is called a redan; and serves to flank or defend the other parts.

LINE of countervallation, is the work made by an army which besieges a place be-

L I

tween their camp and the town, to cover it against an enterprize of the garrison; it is made much after the same manner as the line of Circumvallation, only in a contrary disposition.

LINE, is also the name of the works made by an army from one town or strong post to another behind which it is encamped, to guard a part of the country.

LINE of counter-approach, is a kind of Trench made by the Garrison when besieged, going from the covert-way in a right line so as part of the enemies approaches may be enfiladed from thence.

LINE, as it is a Term in geometry, is a length without breadth whose extremities are points.

LINSPINS, are small pins of iron which keeps the wheel of a cannon or waggon on the axle-tree, for when the end of the axle-tree is put thro' the nave the Linspin is put in to keep the wheel from falling off.

LINSTOCK, is a short staff of wood about three foot long, upon one end of which is a piece of iron which divides in two turnings from one another, having each a place to receive a match and a screw to keep it fast; the other end is pointed and shod with iron to stick in the ground:

It

LU

It is used by gunners to fire the guns, and failing of it, a piece of cleft stick to stick the match in, does the business every jot as well.

LIZILERE, Berm, Foreland, or Relais, is a space of ground left at the foot of the rampart on the side next the country, designed to receive the ruins of the rampart to prevent its filling up the foss; it is sometimes palisadoed for the more security, and in Holland is planted generally with a quick-set hedge: When this space is covered with a parapet, it is called a Faus-bray or low Wall.

LODGEMENT, is the work made by the besiegers in some part of a fortification after the besiegers have been drove out, to maintain it.

LOOP-HOLES, are square or oblong holes made in the wall to fire through with muskets.

LOZANCE or Rhombe, is a figure of four equal sides whose angles are too acute and too obtuse.

LUNETTE, is a small work raised sometimes in the middle of the foss before the curtain, forming an angle, its terre-plein rising but a little above the surface of the water, about twelve feet broad, with a parapet of eighteen feet; there is another sort of Lunettes which are larger, and raised to cover the faces

MA

of the half moon; they are likewise composed of two faces, a longer and a shorter.

LOCKSPIT, is a small cut or Trench made with a spade of about a foot wide, to mark out the first lines of a work.

M

MARSHAL of France, is the highest preferment in the army, it is the same with Captain-General in the British service.

MARESHAL DE CAMP, in France is the next officer to the Lieutenant General and is the same as Major-General in the British service.

MASTER DE CAMP, is he who commands a Regiment.

MAJOR-GENERAL, is a post of great consequence, and he who possesses it should be an officer of great experience and observation. Of all the accomplishments therefore that are required for the composition of this exalted character, courage is the first, without which I make no account of the others, because they will then be rendered useless; the second is genius, which must be strong and fertile in expedients; the third is health: He is allowed an aid-de-camp and a guard.

MAJOR of a corps, is to be active, vigilant, and well acquainted with the strength

M A

of the battalion and details of a corps, and well instructed in the exercise and every kind of manœuvre.

TOWN-MAJOR, is to see the guards mounted, the rounds and posts assigned; he regulates the centinels, receives the parole from the governor or officer commanding in his absence; he goes rounds, visits the guards, and gives the governor or officer commanding an account of all that passes.

MAGAZINE or arsenal, is the place where all stores are kept, where guns are founded, and where the carpenters, wheel-wrights, smiths, turners, and other handycrafts are constantly employed in making all things belonging to an artillery, as carriages, waggons, tumbrils, &c. the place ought to be large that every thing may be conveniently disposed without confusion.

MADRIERS, are long planks of wood very broad, used for supporting the earth in mining, in carrying on a sap, in making coffers, caponeers, galleries and many other uses at a siege; they are likewise used to cover the mouth of petards after they are loaded; and are fixed with the petards to the gates or other places designed to be forced open: When the planks are not strong enough

M A

they are doubled with plates of iron.

MAIN-BODY of the army, is the body of troops that marches between the advance and rear-guard; in a camp, it is that part of the army which is encamped between the right and left wing.

MAIN-GUARD, or grand guard, is a body of horse posted before a camp for the safety of an army; in garrison, it is a guard generally mounted by the eldest subaltern officer upon the parade the morning of mounting.

MANTLET, is a kind of moving parapet, made of strong planks about four feet long and three high, mounted on two wheels, with a long pole fixed to it; they serve to cover the sappers in the front against musket shot.

MARCH, in general is the steps made in marching, or the moving of a body of men from one place to another; the beat of a drum when the troops are marching is called the long march; it is likewise a word of command.

MALLET, is so well known it needs no description; its use in fortifications is driving in the stakes of pickets that fasten the fascines or gazons: It is likewise used at sieges, both upon the batteries and in the trenches on several occasions.

MALLET,

M A

MALLET, (small) to drive the pins of a tent.

MANTELETS, are great planks of wood of about five feet high and three inches thick, which serve at a siege to cover the men from the enemies fire, being push'd forward on small trucks; they are of two sorts, either single or double; single Mantellets are made in joining two or three such planks together, with bars of iron to make three feet or three feet and a half broad, to cover those that carry them from the enemies fire: Double Mantellets are made by putting earth between two such rows of planks, and are used in making approaches and batteries near the place, as the others are in making lodgments on the counterescarp; they are covered with letten, and are then made small at bottom and at top, that they may more easily be joined together, to cover the soldiers from the grenades and fire-works of the place. Some are so made as to cover the soldiers from the fire, or front, or in flank.

MATCH, a small rope or twist about three quarters of an inch diameter, twisted hard, which, being lighted at one end, burns leisurely without going out.

MATROSS, are soldiers in the train of artillery.

M A

MAXIMS, in fortification, are certain general rules established by Engineers, founded on reason and experience, which, being exactly observed, a place fortified according as they direct, will be in a good posture of defence. The chiefest maxims are,

1. There ought to be no part in the fortification of a place but what is discovered and flanked by the besieged: Nor if there be any part of a place which is not well flanked, the enemy being thus under cover, will with the more ease attack in that place and carry it.

2. A fortress should command all the country round it, that the besiegers may not cover themselves, nor find places to favour their approaches and attacks, nor to overlook the works of the place, to batter them with more advantage.

3. The works farthest distant from the center of the place must be still lowest, and commanded by those that are nearer; to the end they may be defended by the higher works, and those nearer the place, that so the enemy by being exposed may be obliged to quit them, after they have been possessed of them, because of the fire of the besieged; and likewise, that the enemy by being masters of

M A

of such works may not overlook the works of the place.

4. The flanked Angle or point of the bastion ought to be at least seventy degrees, that it may the better resist the force of the enemy's batteries, in case they designed to beat it down to lodge there.

5. The acute flanked angle near to a right angle is preferable to all other: It is certain, if the flanked angle be a right angle, it has all the strength that can be given it, having solidity enough to withstand the enemies batteries: but an angle near the right makes the tenaille of the place more compact, by the angle of the shoulder shortening and battering the defence, and by its not exposing the face so much to the enemy. So that it follows of consequence that an obtuse angle is very deficient.

6. The shortest faces are the best, because the longer they are the weaker, for the enemy attacks them with a greater front.

7. The flank must have some part under cover, which signifies it must be covered by an orillon, otherwise the defence is presently ruined, and the lodgment no sooner made on the counterscarp, but the place is obliged to capitulate; as has been often seen.

M I

8. There must be an accord between these maxims to render the fortification perfect: For, if the gorge be too large, the face suffers: the more the flank is covered the less it is subject to be ruined, but then the defence is more oblique: In making a second flank, the flanked angle is made too weak, and discovering the face, the defence is more easy, but it is more exposed to the enemies batteries. In a word, there is advantages and disadvantages over all, and the secret consists in judging whether conforming with one maxim be more advantageous than disagreeing with another.

MEASURE-ANGLE, is an instrument of brass for measuring angles, either salient or reentrant, to know exactly the number of degrees and minutes, to lay them out upon paper.

MERLAN, is that part of the parapet which is terminated by two embrasures of a battery, so that its height and thickness is the same with that of the parapet; it serves to cover those on the battery from the enemy, and is better of earth well beat and close than of stone, because these fly about and wound those it should defend.

MILITARY ART, is the true science of war-like motion.

MILI-

M O

MILITARY execution, is the ravaging and destroying of a country for contributions.

MINE, is a kind of lodgment made under ground to place powder in it, which is set on fire in order to blow up the works above it, the difference between mines and counter-mines is, that the first are made by the besiegers, and the latter by the besieged.

MINER, is he that works in the mine, he covers his head with a hood to save his eyes from the earth that falls down.

MINUTE, is the sixtieth part of a degree.

MOAT, ditch, or foss, is a depth or trench round the rampart of a place to defend it and prevent surprises; the brink of the moat next the rampart is called the scarp, and that opposite on the other side is called the counter-scarp, which forms a re-entrant angle before the center of the curtain. A dry moat round a place that is large and has a strong garrison, is preferable to one full of water, because the passage may be disputed inch by inch, and the besiegers when lodged in the moat are continually exposed to the bombs, grenades, and other fire-works which are thrown incessantly over the ramparts on their works.

M O

In the middle of a dry moat is sometimes made another small moat called the cunette, which is generally dug so deep till they find water to fill it. The deepest and broadest fosses are accounted the best, but a deep foss is preferable to a broad one; the ordinary breadth is about twenty fathoms, and the depth about sixteen feet. To drain a foss or moat full of water is, to dig a trench deeper than the level of the water to let it run out; when it is drained, there are hurdles thrown upon the mud and slime, and covered with earth or bundles of rushes to make a sure and firm passage.

MOINEAU, is a French term for a little flat bastion, raised upon a re-entrant angle, before a curtain, which is too long, between two other bastions; it is commonly joined to the curtain, but sometimes separated by a foss, and is then called a detached bastion; they are not raised so high as the works of the place, because they must be exposed to the fire of the besieged: In case the enemy should lodge themselves, their parapet, as well as the parapet of all out-works, ought to be cannon proof, that is to say eighteen foot thick.

MONT-PAG-NOTE, or post of the invulnerable,
is

M O

is an eminence chosen out of cannon-shot of the place besieged.

MORTAR-PIECE, is a short piece of artillery, reinforced, and of a wide caliber, differs from a cannon both in form and use; the cannon serving to throw ball, and the mortars to throw bombs, carcasses, fire-pots, and several other sorts of fire-works.

LAND-MORTARS, are of different sorts; those used in England are, ten, thirteen, fifteen, and eighteen inches diameter; there are smaller mortars of six and eight inches; all but the eighteen inch mortars are mounted on a very thick plank of oak, on which arise two cheeks or brackets on the sides of the mortar, but the eighteen inch is mounted on a low Dutch carriage, consisting of two strong planks of wood, bound with thick plates of iron, joined together with transoms of wood: All land mortars may be elevated to any degree of the quadrant; they have no wheels, therefore on a march they are laid upon a block-carriage, made on purpose; they are never carried along with the army, because of their great weight, except upon an occasion of a siege or bombardment; but a sort of small mortars called hobits, mounted in gun-car-

M U

riages, are always part of the field artillery.

MOTION, of an army, is the several marches and counter-marches it makes, or changing of its post for an advantageous encampment, either with a design to engage the enemy, or shun fighting.

MOTION, of a bomb or ball, is the progress it makes in the air, after it is delivered, and is of three sorts; the violent motion is the first explosion, when the powder has worked its effect upon the ball, so far as the bomb or ball may be supposed to go, in a right line; the mixed motion is when the weight of the ball begins to overcome the force, which was given by the powder, and the natural motion is when the ball or bomb is falling.

MOULDINGS, of a gun or mortar, are all the eminent parts, as squares or rounds, which serve generally for ornaments, such as the breech moulding: The rings of a gun are likewise mouldings.

TO MOUNT GUARD, is to go upon duty. **To mount a breach**, is to run up to attack.

TO MOUNT THE TRENCHES, is to go upon guard in the trenches.

MUSQUET, is the most commodious and useful fire-arms used in the army; they carry a ball at the rate of twenty

N A

twenty-nine to two pound weight of lead.

MUSQUETOON, or blunderbuss.

MUSQUETEER, is a foot-soldier, armed with firelock, bayonet, and sword.

MUSTER, is when a commissary musters the troops, to see if they are complete, what number is sick, present, absent, or wanting, &c.

MUSTER-ROLLS, are the rolls or lists of the troop or company, which are made out, the commissary keeps one, the commanding officer of the troop or company another, and the third is sent to the commissary general's office.

MUZZEL of a gun or mortar, is the extremity of the cylinder, where the powder and ball is put in; the metal which surrounds the extremity of the cylinder, is likewise called the Muzzel.

N

TO NAIL cannon, or to spike them, is to drive an iron spike by main force into the vent or touch-hole, which renders the cannon unserviceable, till the spike be either got out, or a new vent drilled; in all sorties or sallies of a place besieged, nothing is so glorious of the besiegers as to nail the cannon, nor so advantageous, for it takes

O F

the enemy some time to repair it.

NAVE of the wheel, is a short thick piece in the center of the wheel, which receives the end of the axle-tree, and in which the ends of the spokes are fixed; it is bound at each end with hoops of iron, called the Navebands: It has likewise in each end of the hole, through which the end of the axle-tree goes, a ring of iron, called the wisher, which saves the hole of the Nave from wearing too big.

NECK of a gun, is that part betwixt the muzzle, mouldings, and the cornishings. Neck of the casceibel is the part betwixt the breech mouldings, and the cascabel.

O

OBLIQUE-DEFENCE, is that which is under too great an angle, as is generally the defence of a second flank, which can never be so good as a defence in front, nor is it approved by engineers.

OBLIQUE fire from a corps, is when they throw their whole fire to the right, or to the left, without changing the front of the battalion.

OCTOGON, is an eight sided figure of fortification.

OFFICER in the army, is a person, having a commission in the army; those ha-

G

ving

O F

ving commissions from the king, are called commissioned officers. Such as have no commission, but only warrants from their colonels, are called warrant officers.

Those that have no commissions nor warrants, are called non-commissioned officers, such as serjeant-major, quarter-master-serjeant, serjeants, and corporals, and can be reduced by the colonel of a corps, without a court-martial, but it is seldom done.

AN OFFICER, ought to be indued with many good qualifications, as presence of mind, judgment to execute what he is commanded, to the best advantage, conception to apprehend easily what he is to do, health to enable him to endure the fatigues of war, secrecy in all affairs of consequence with which he is entrusted, conduct to gain the esteem of his brother officers, and ever to have a spirit above doing a low action, though preferment or profit was the motive.

GENERAL-OFFICERS, their province is vastly extensive, comprehending the art of subsisting an army, of conducting it, of preserving it in such a state, as never to be obliged to engage contrary to his expectations, of choosing his posts, of forming his

O P

troops in a thousand dispositions, and of seizing the advantage of that favourable minute which happens in all battles, and which is capable of determining of success, all these are circumstances of importance, and at the same time as various as the situation, and the accidents which produce them; in order to discover these advantages on a day of action, it is necessary that he should be disengaged from all other kind of business. The adjutant-general, quarter-master general, &c. with aid-de-camps, are all to be immediately about him.

FIELD-OFFICERS, are those who have the command of a corps, as colonel, lieutenant-colonel, major, the two last often have the appellation of lieutenant-colonel, or major-commandant, if they have the sole command of a corps.

SUBALTERN-OFFICERS, are lieutenants, cornets, and ensigns.

ONELEAGON, an eleven sided one.

TO OPEN trenches, is the first breaking of ground by the besiegers, in order to carry on their approaches towards a place: The difference between opening and carrying on the trenches, is, that the first is only the beginning of the
the

O R

the trench, which is always turned towards the besiegers. It is begun by a small foss, which the pioneers make in the night time on their knees, generally a musquet shot from the place, or half a cannon shot, and sometimes without the reach of cannon-ball, especially if there be no hollow or rising grounds to favour them, or if the garrison be strong, and their artillery well served. This small foss is afterwards enlarged by the next pioneers which come behind them, who dig it deeper by degrees, till it be about four yards broad, and four or five foot deep, especially if they be near the place; to the end, the earth which is taken out of it, may be thrown before them, to form a parapet, to cover them from the fire of the besieged; the place where the trenches are opened, is called the end of the trench.

OPEN, is a word of command, as open your files, or open your ranks.

ORDER, is a word of command, as order your firelocks, open or marching order, and close order.

ORDER OF BATTLE, is the dispositions of battalions, and squadrons of an army, in one or more lines, according to the nature of the ground, either to engage an enemy, or be reviewed.

O R

ORDERS, are the notice given every day or night, by the General to the Lieutenant-general of the day, who conveys them to the Major-general, (we had no Brigadier-generals serving the last war, except in America, and on expeditions) and he to the brigade-majors, who gives them to the adjutants, and they to the serjeants, that the army may know when to march, what detachments, convoys, parties are to be sent, when they are to forage or graze, &c. Orders in general, signifying all that is commanded by a superior officer.

ORDNANCE, all sorts of guns, mortars, firelocks, carabines, pistols, bayonets, espontoons, swords, &c. all sorts of arms, or stores belonging either to offence, or defence.

ORGNES, are thick long pieces of wood, pointed and shod with iron, clear one of another, hanging each by a particular rope or cord, over the gate-way of a strong place, perpendicular, to be let fall in case of an emergency.

ORILLON, is a part of a bastion near the shoulder, which serves to cover the retired flank from being seen obliquely: Orgnes, many harquebusses linked together, or divers musket-barrels laid

O R

in a row, so that they may be discharged, either all at once, or separately; also long and thick pieces of wood, with iron plates at the end, hung over a gate, to stop it up instead of a port-cullice.

ORILLON, is a mass of earth, faced with stone, built on the shoulder of a caze-ment bastion, to cover the cannon of the retired flank, and hinder its being dismounted by the enemies cannon; they are sometimes round and sometimes square: Some maintain their ground to the best, because they are not so easily beat down by the cannon of the besieged, for their roundness hinders the ball very much from its effect; others like the square orillons better, because they are less charge, and can contain more men to fire directly on the face of the opposite bastion, than the round can do. Orillon is likewise called the shoulder and the epaulinent.

ORTHOGRAPHY, or profile, is the representation of a work, shewing its breadth, thickness, height, and depth, so as it would appear, if cut perpendicularly on the horizontal line, from the uppermost to the lowest of its parts; as ichnography supposes an edifice or work, cut horizontally; so orthography supposes it cut vertically, and never

O U

shews the length or any of its parts as a plan does, but then a plan shews nothing of the height or depth of a work.

OVAL, is a plain figure bounded by its own circumference, within which no point can be taken, from which all right lines drawn to the circumference, can be equal.

OUT-WORKS, which are likewise advanced works; detached and exterior works, are works of several sorts, which cover the body of the place, as ravelins, half-moons, tenailles, hornworks, crown-works, counter-guards, envelopes, swallows, tails, lunetts, &c. these serve not only to cover the place, but likewise to keep an enemy at distance, and to hinder his getting any advantage of hollow or rising grounds, that may happen near the counterscarp of the place; for these cavities and eminences may serve for lodgments to the besiegers, and facilitate the carrying on their approaches, and raising their batteries against the town: When out-works are for some reasons, placed one before another; you will find a ravelin before a curtain, a horn-work before the ravelin, and a small ravelin before the curtain of the horn-work,

P A

work, then the nearest to the body of the place must be the highest, though lower than the works of the place, that they may command gradually, those which are without them, that the enemy may be obliged to dislodge, in case they had possession of them, as likewise, least the enemy being masters of them, should the easier cover themselves.

P

PALISADES, are a kind of stakes, made of strong split wood, of about nine feet long, three feet deep in the ground, in rows about six inches asunder; they are placed in the covert-way, at three feet from, and parallel to the parapet or side of the glacis, to secure it from being surprized.

TURNING PALISADES, is an invention of Coehorne's. To preserve the palisades of the parapet of the redans, from the besiegers shot, he orders them so, that as many of them as stand in a rods length, turn up and down like a trap, with all the facility imaginable. They are a good defence, because they are not in sight of the besiegers, but just when they bring on their attack; and yet are always ready to do the proper service of the palisades; they are likewise frugal, because

P A

they may be preserved in the magazines, and need not be left on the parapet; besides there may be square palisades kept ready to supply the place of such as may be broke, by the besiegers cannon.

PARALLELS at a siege, signify the trenches or lines made, parallel to the defence of the place besieged: They are likewise called lines of communication and boyau's.

PARALLELS, or places of arms, are deep trenches, fifteen or eighteen feet wide, joyning the several attacks together; they serve to place the guard of the trenches in, to be at hand to support the workmen when attacked: There are generally three in an attack; the first is about three hundred toises from the covert-way, the second one hundred and sixty, and the third nearer on the glacis.

PARADE, is the place where troops assemble together, to go upon guard, or any other duty: In a garrison, where there are two, three, or more regiments, each have their regimental parade, where they assemble upon all occasions, especially upon any alarm. In a camp, all parties, convoys, or detachments, that are to go abroad, have a parading place appointed, at the head of some regiment.

PARAPET, is an elevation of earth, designed for covering

P A

ing the soldiers from the enemy's cannon, or small shot, wherefore its thickness is from eighteen to twenty foot, it is six foot high on the inside, and four or five on the side next the country ; it is raised on the rampart, and has a slope called the superior talas, and sometimes the glacis of the parapet, on which the soldiers lay their musquets for to fire over.

This pent or slope, makes it easy for the musqueteers to fire into the ditch, or at least on the counterscarp. To fire, razing the glacis of the parapet, is called firing - in-barbe. The exterior talus of the parapet, is the slope facing the country. The height of the parapet being six foot on the inside it has a banquet or two for the soldiers who defend it, to mount upon, that they may discover the country the better ; as likewise the foss and counterscarp, to fire as they find occasion.

PARAPET of the covert-way or coredor, is what covers that way, from the sight of the enemy, which renders it the most dangerous place for the besiegers, because of the neighbourhood of the faces, flanks, and curtains of the place ; it is the same with glacis, which signifies that the whole mass of earth that serves to cover the

P A

coredor ; and goes sloping towards the country.

PARK of artillery is the place appointed for the encampment of an artillery, which is generally the rear of both lines.

PARK of artillery, at a siege, is a post fortified out of cannon shot of the place besieged, where are kept all the arms and utensils necessary for a siege ; as bombs, petards, carcasses, hand-grenades, powder, ball, &c. with all sorts of instruments for removing the earth, as spades, shovels, pick-axes, bills, hoes, and wheel-barrows, with a great many things more, too tedious to be related here. Great precaution is to be had about the park of artillery, for fear of fire.

PARK of provisions, is the place where the sutlers pitch their tents, and sell provisions to the soldiers, which is in the rear of each corps. But I think the place where the bread waggons are drawn up, and where the soldiers receive their ammunition bread, being the store of the army, is most properly the park of provisions.

PARLEY. See Chamade.

PARTISAN, is a person who is very dextrous in commanding a party ; and knowing the country very well, employ'd in surprizing the enemy's

P A

enemy's convoys, or in getting intelligence.

PARTIZAN party, is a small body of infantry given to a partizan, to make an incursion upon the enemy; to lurk about their camp, to disturb their foragers, and to intercept their convoys.

PARTUISAN is a weapon, not unlike a halbert.

PARTY, is a small number of men, of horse or foot, sent into an enemy's country, to pillage or take prisoners, or to oblige the country to come under contribution, which is to pay a certain sum of money to redeem themselves from plunder; Parties are often sent out to view the ways and roads, and to get intelligence, to look for forage, or to amuse the enemy, upon a march, they are frequently sent upon the flanks of an army, or regiment, to discover the enemy if near, and to prevent a surprise or ambuscade.

PATEE, a small work not unlike a horse-shoe, that is to say, an elevation of earth, of an irregular form; but for the most part, oval, having a parapet, it is generally raised in marshy grounds, to cover the gate of a place, it has only afore-right defence, and has nothing to flank it.

PAT-ROLLING, is a night watch, consisting of a serjeant or corporal, with four

P E

or six private men, who are sent from the guard or piquet pat-rolling, to prevent disorder, and to make prisoners all soldiers out of their tents, quarters or barracks, without leave.

PAY, is the allowance which a soldier receives for his subsistence; and as the price of provisions, have of late, so very much encreased, it is almost an impossibility for a soldier to subsist.

PAY-MASTER, is he who is intrusted with the paying of a regiment.

PENTAGON, is a figure bounded by five sides or polygons, which form so many angles, capable of being fortified with the like number of bastions.

PERPENDICULAR, is a straight line raised upright, upon another straight line, without leaning to one side or to the other; but making the angles on both sides equal.

PETARD, is a kind of brass pot fixed upon a strong square plank, which has an iron hook to fix it against a gate or palisades; this pot is filled with powder, which when fixed, breaks every thing about it; and thereby makes an opening to enter the place.

PETARDEER, is he who loads, fixes, and fires the petard.

PICK-

P I

PICKET, is a small pointed staff, shod with iron, which serves to mark out the angles of a fortification, and the principal parts when the engineer is tracing a plan upon the ground with a line, there are likewise, small pointed stakes, which serve to drive thro' fascines or gazzons, to keep them fast, when the earth is bad, or the work raised in haste.

PICKETS, is likewise the stakes which the troopers drive before their tents, about two yards distance: From one to another of these pickets is stretched a rope, called the picket-rope, to which they tie their horses.

PICKET, is likewise a stake of about nine or ten inches high, fixed in the ground, and standing upright; this is at the head of each regiment of horse, to punish for offences that do not deserve death, by putting the criminal with his foot upon it, and tying up his hand to a ring above his head, so that he neither stands nor hangs; nor can he shift his foot, nor change feet to ease himself.

PICQUET (guard) mounts at retreat beating, it consists of one captain, two subalterns, two serjeants, two corporals, two drummers, and two fifers, with fifty pri-

P I

vate men. If the whole corps is not together, it consists of a lesser number.

PIECE of ordnance, includes all sorts of great guns and mortars. Battering-pieces are the large guns used at sieges for making the breaches, such as the twenty four pounder and culverine; the one carrying twenty four, and the other eighteen pound ball. Field pieces are twelve pounders and Demi-culverines, six pounders, sakers, minions, and three pounders, which march with the army, and encamp always behind the second line; but in day of battle in the front. A soldier's firelock is likewise called his piece.

PIKES were formerly carried by officers of the infantry, and by men called pikemen, to keep off the horse. But they are now intirely out of use.

PILE or Pyramid, of bombs or balls, which is the way of disposing them in magazines, is the piling them up regularly, as may be seen in the magazines.

PIONEERS, are soldiers armed with firelock, bayonet, sword, saw and hatchet, wear a leather apron and caps; they are employed in cutting down trees, making the roads and ways for the army to march.

PISTOL,

P L

PISTOL, is a fire arm used by the horse and dragoon, each man has a pair.

PLACE is generally used in fortification instead of a fortified town, and it is often used as when we say it is a strong place.

PLACE of arms in a town, is a space left near the centre of the place, where generally a guard is placed, in places regularly fortified, the place of arms ought to be in the centre, and of a figure like that of a polygon.

PLACE of arms of an attack, or of a trench, is a foss, with a parapet, or an epaulment to cover a body of horse or foot, where they may be ready to withstand the sallies of the besieged; the places most convenient for making places of arms, are such as can easily succour one another, and are out of sight of the defences of the place besieged, as hollows or hollow ways, especially if they cross one another, for their depth serves as a parapet to cover the infantry; if they have not that natural depth, they may supply that defect with gabions, sand bags, or whatever can hinder the besiegers from seeing into it. If there be a foss made round it, it is called a redoubt. In carrying on the trenches, there must be such redoubts raised at convenient distances, to lodge

P L

the infantry, which have the guard of the trenches.

PLACE of arms of a camp, are the bell tents at the head of each company, where they lodge their arms.

PLACE of arms, of the covert-way, is a part of it opposite to the re-entring angle of the counter-scarp, projecting outwards in an angle.

PLACE of arms, is also the place for assembling of troops in a garrison.

PLAN, is a term in geometry, is a superficies, whose parts are allequally disposed betwixt its extremities, so that one part is neither higher nor lower than another. Horizontal plan, is when it is parallel to the horizon, and it is a vertical plan, when it is perpendicular to the horizon.

PLAN, ground-plot, or ichnography is fortification, is the representation of the first of fundamental tract of a work, shewing the length of its lines, the quantity of its angles, the breadth of the ditches, thickness of the ramparts and parapets; and the distance of one part from another. So that a plan represents a work, such as it would appear, if it were cut equal with the level of the horizon, or cut off at the foundation, but it marks neither the heights nor the depths of the several parts of

P L

the works, which is properly profile, and which expresses only the heights, breadths, and depths, without taking notice of the lengths. As architects, before they lay the foundation of their edifice ; make their design upon paper, by which means they find out their faults : So an engineer before tracing his work on the ground, should make plans of his designs upon paper, to the end he may do nothing without serious deliberation. Plans are very useful ; for generals or governors, in either attacking or defending a place, in chusing a camp, determining attacks, conducting the approaches or in examining the strength and weakness of a place, especially such plans as represent a place, with the country about it, shewing the rivers, fountains, marshes, ditches, vallies, mountains, woods, houses, churches, and other particulars, which happen about a place.

PLANKS or madriers, are pieces of oak, very thick and broad.

PLATES, prise plates, are two plates of iron on the cheeks of a gun-carriage, from the cope square to the centre through which the prise-bolts go, and on which the hand-spikes rest, when it poises up the breech of the piece, breast plates are the

R E

two plates on the face of the carriage, one on each cheek, train plates are the two plates on the cheeks at the train of the carriage, dulidge-plates, are the six plates on the wheel of a gun carriage, where the fellows are joined together, and serve to strengthen the dulidges.

PLAT-FORM, is a floor made of strong planks, laid upon joints, on a battery, to placethe guns or mortars upon, in order to prevent the wheels or mortar beds from sinking in the ground.

PLATOONS, is a small number of soldiers who fire together ; such as the grana-dier company, divided into four platoons to cover the angles of the square, &c.

POINT mathematick, is what hath no parts, which is to say, neither length, breadth, nor thickness, and which consequently cannot be expressed nor conceived.

POLYGON, is a figure of more than four sides, and is either regular or irregular, exterior, or interior.

PONIARD, a sort of a short sword.

REGULAR POLYGON, is whose angles and sides are equal ; it has an angle of the centre, and another angle of the polygon, the centre of a regular polygon, is the centre of a circle, which circumscribes the polygon, that is,

P O

is, whose circumference passes through all the angles of the figure.

IRREGULAR POLYGON, is whose sides and angles are unequal.

EXTERIOR POLYGON, is lines drawn, touching the points of the flanked angles, when a place is fortified inwards.

INTERIOR POLYGON, is to fortify outwards, which makes the angles of the Gorge; so that the whole bastion is without the polygon.

PORT CULLICE, is a falling gate or door, hung over the gates of fortified places, and let down to keep out the enemy.

PONTONS, a floating bridge of great boats with boards laid over them, and rails on the sides, for passing an army over a river.

PORT FIRE, is a composition of meal powder, sulphur and salt-peter, drove into a case of paper, but not very hard: It is about nine or ten inches long; and is used to fire guns or mortars instead of a match, and put in a linstock.

POST, is any sort of ground, fortified or not, where a body of men can fortify themselves, or be in a condition of fighting an enemy. To relieve a post, is to go upon guard in a post; to abandon

P O

or quit a post; to gain or take a post, sword in hand, &c.

POST OF HONOUR, the advance-guard is a post of honour; The right of the two lines, is the post of honour, and is always given to the eldest regiments (horse and dragoons, either on horseback or on foot, take rank of the infantry) the left is the next post, and is given to the next eldest, and so on; the centre of the line is the post of the least honour, and is given to the youngest corps.

ADVANCE POST, is a spot of ground seized by a party to cover them, and to secure the posts behind them.

POSTERN, (now called fally port) is a small door in the flank of a bastion, or other part of a garrison to march in and out unperceived by an enemy; either to relieve the works, or to make sallies.

POUCH, is a square case or bag of leather, with a flap over it, hanging to the two ends of the cross-belt, in which the soldier carries his cartridges, and the grenadiers hand-grenades.

POWDER, is a composition of sulphur, salt-petre and charcoal, the sulphur and charcoal take fire, and the salt-petre makes the crack.

POUNDER, as a twenty-four pounder, is a gun carrying a ball of twenty four pounds weight.

Q U

PROVISIONS, is what a General or commanding officer ought to be very careful of, never suffering his army to be in want of subsistence, else they must needs perish: A governor of a garrison ought to be well provided with provisions of all sorts, such as wheat, rye, peas, beans, barley, beef, mutton, veal, bacon, cheese, butter, salt, pepper, onions, nutmegs, beer, wine, brandy, and many other things which are absolutely necessary in a garrison.

PROVOST-MARSHAL of an army, is one appointed to secure deserters and all other criminals; he is to go often round the army to hinder the soldiers from pillaging; he indites offenders and executes the sentence which is pronounced; he likewise regulates the weights and measures of the army, &c.

PROFILE, engineers to represent the heights, depths, and thickness of a work, with the depth and breadth of the fosses, &c. By profile or orthography, the work is supposed to be cut perpendicularly from top to bottom.

Q

QUADRANT, or quarter of an circle, is an instrument of brass or wood used by gun-

Q U

ners in pointing their guns to an object, and by bombardiers in elevating their mortars: It is made of two pieces of wood joined at right angles, one of which is longer than the other, that it may enter the muzzle of the piece; they are joined by a quarter of a circle, which, divided into ninety degrees, the center of which is where the two pieces join, from whence there hangs a thread with a plumb, which makes the different elevations of pieces, and the greatness of the angles; the way of using it is by putting the longest side into the muzzle of the piece; the plumb falls perpendicularly, and marks the angle on the quadrant; when the gun or mortar is elevated to the degree desired, it is kept there by coins of wood put under the breech of a gun, or between the bracket bolts of a mortar.

QUADRAT, to quadrat a piece, is to see whether it is duly placed in its carriage, and that the wheels be of an equal height.

QUARTER, or quarters has several significations in martial affairs.

QUARTER, signifies the sparing of mens lives and giving good treatment to a vanquished army; it is so said, the conquerors offered good quarters, the enemy asked quarter

Q U

quarter, we gave no quarter.

QUARTER, in general is the ground in which a body of troops encamp, and signifies likewise the troops encamped: As to beat up the enemies quarters, is to drive them from the ground or encampment; therefore it ought to be in the most convenient place, as well for the nature of the ground, as for the advantage of intrenching, and the conveniency of forage and water.

QUARTER of an assembly, is the place where the troops meet for to march in a body, and is the same as a place of rendezvous.

QUARTER, at a siege is the encampment upon one of the most principal passages round about a place besieged to prevent relief and convoys: When it is commanded by the general, it is called the head quarters of the army; When the camp is marked out about a place besieged, then the quarters are said to be disposed: When great detachments are made from a quarter for convoys, &c. such a quarter is said to be weakened.

HEAD-QUARTERS, is the place where the general of an army has his quarters; it is generally near the center of the army. The quarters of the Generals of horse is in

Q U

the villages that happen behind the right and left wings; the Generals of foot are often in the same village with the General.

QUARTER intrenched, is a place fortified with a ditch and parapet to secure a body of troops.

WINTER-QUARTERS, is sometimes taken for the space of time included between the leaving the camp and taking the field; but it is more properly the places where the troops are lodged during the winter. According as the troops are a long or short time in garrison, the Winter-quarters are said to be short or long.

QUARTERS of refreshment, is the place where the troops that have been much fatigued are sent to refresh themselves.

QUARTER-MASTER of horse, (except in the blews) is a warrant-officer appointed by the Colonel, he takes up the ground for the troop and divides it; in giving so much for each tent; and is constantly in the stables among the horses.

QUARTER-MASTER of foot, takes care of the encamping the regiment and attends the Quarter-Master-General upon a march, to know where the ground is for the regiment to encamp, which he divides among the compa-

Q U

companies; he is also to take care of the ammunition and stores of the regiment, and to attend on all days that coals, forage, &c. is delivered for the regiment, to prevent frauds being committed by carriers or any idle persons usually attending at such times.

QUARTER-MASTER-GENERAL, is a considerable post, and ought to be a judicious officer, and of experience, and to understand geography, since he marks the marches and encampment of an army; he is supposed to know the country well, all the rivers, plains, woods, marshes, mountains, passages, defiles, &c. even to the smallest brook; he receives his orders from the general, and appoints a place for the Quarter-Master to meet him, with whom he marches to the next camp; and having reviewed the ground, he marks out to the Quarter-Masters the ground allotted each corps for their camp; he pitches upon the head quarters, and appoints the villages for the general officers of the army; he appoints a place for the encampment of the train of artillery; he sometimes carries the army a foraging, and plants the covering parties for their security at all the passes round them, and disposes of the troops for the winter-quarters of the army.

R A

QUARTER, wheeling of a body of men, is turning the front where the flank was.

QUIT your arms, is a word of command in the foot, when they ground their arms and are ordered to the right about, at which they march clear of their arms and disperse; but upon the beat of drum or being ordered to stand to their arms, they run to their arms.

R

RABINETT, a small eminence between a falconette and a base.

TO RAISE A SIEGE, is to give over the attack of a place, and to quit the works thrown up against it, and the posts taken about it. As all enterprises do not always succeed, so sometimes an army is forced to raise a siege, either from distempers in the camp or the unsuitness of the season; for the rains, snows, winds, &c. and very severe weather kill men; besides, the besiegers may be strongly intrenched, and receive supplies of men and provisions; if there be no ground to fear a sally from the place, then the siege may be raised in the day time, by sending first the sick and wounded, the baggage, the sutlers, and all the instruments which have been used in the siege; the
artil-

R A

artillery and ammunition must have a strong rear-guard and face the besiegers, in case they should offer to charge the rear; but if there be any fear of an enemy in front, this order must be altered according to prudence, safety, and as the nature of the country will allow.

TO RAISE A PLAN, is the measuring with cords and geometrical instruments the length of the lines and the capacity of the angles, that by knowing the length, breadth, and thickness of all the different parts of fortification, it may be represented in small upon paper, so as to know the advantages and disadvantages of it.

RAMMER of a gun, is a piece of wood fitted to the diameter of the bore, stuck upon a long staff, and is used in driving home the charge and wadding.

RAMMER of a firelock, is a piece of iron fitted to the barrel, to ram down the charge.

RAMPART, is an elevation of earth raised along the faces of any work of ten or fifteen feet high, to cover the inner part of that work against the fire of an enemy.

RAMS-HORNS, are a kind of low work made in the ditch of a circular arch; they serve instead of tenailles.

R A

RANK, is the order or streight line, made by the soldiers of a battalion or squadron, drawn up side by side: This order was established for the marches, and for regulating the different bodies of troops and officers which compose an army or battalion, doubling of the ranks, is the putting two ranks into one. Closing the ranks, is to put the ranks only at two feet asunder.

RATION, is a proportion of bread or forage, distributed to the army. A ration of forage, is eighteen pounds of hay, six pounds of oats, and six of straw, sometimes it differs.

RAVELINS, are works raised on the counterscarp, before the curtain of a place, and serve to cover the gates of a town, and the bridges; they consist of two faces, forming a salient angle, and are defended by the faces of the neighbouring bastions, the half moons which cover the points of the bastions have their defence from the ravelins, they are most in use of all out-works; they ought to be lower than the works of the place, that they may be under the fire of the besieged, in case the enemy should endeavour themselves. Their parapets as those of all other out-works, ought to be cannon proof.

REAR

R E

REAR LINE of an army, or second line, is about four or five hundred yards distance from the first line, which is likewise call'd the front line; and these two lines run parallel, and have sometimes a third, which is called a reserve.

REAR of an army, or of a battalion, signifies generally either the hindmost part of the army, or battalion, or ground behind it.

REAR-GUARD, is that part of the army which marches after the main body; for the march of an army is always composed of an advance and rear-guard, the rear-guard is to see that every thing comes safe up, and to prevent the enemy from surprising the rear of the army.

REAR HALF-FILES, is when a battalion is told off front, rear, and when formed six deep (which is now seldom practised); the three hindermost men are called Rear Half-Files.

REAR-RANK, is the last Rank of a Battalion or company, &c.

REAR-RANKS, are the center and Rear Ranks.

REAR-RANKS, when closed to the front-rank, are at two feet distance each rank from the other.

RECOIL, or reverse of a gun, is its running back when fired; which is occasioned by

R E

the struggling of the powder in the chamber, and its seeking every way to fly out; guns whose bents are a little forward in the chace, recoil most. To lessen the Recoil of a gun the Platforms are generally made sloping towards the embrasures of the battery.

RECRUITS, are new raised men to supply the places of such as have lost their lives in the service, or are rendered unserviceable by age or wounds.

RECRUIT-HORSES, are the horses bought up for completing the regiments of cavalry.

REDANS, or indented works, are lines or faces forming salient and re-entrant angles flanking one another, and are generally used on the side of a river which runs through a garrison town; they were used before bastions were.

REDOUBTS, are square works of stone, raised without the glacis of a place, about musquet-shot from the town, with a foss round them, having loop-holes for the musqueteers to fire through: Sometimes they are earth, having only a defence in front surrounded with a parapet and foss, both the one and the other serve for detached guards to interrupt the enemies works; they are some-

R E

sometimes made of the angles of the trenches, for covering the workmen against the sallies of the garrison; the length of their sides may be from ten to twenty fathom, their parapet having two or three banquets must be nine or ten feet thick, and their foss the same both in breadth and depth; they contain a body of men for the guard of the trenches, and are likewise called places of arms.

REDOUBT, castle, or Donjon, is a place more particularly intrenched and separated from the rest by a foss, there is generally in each of them a high tower, from whence the country round the place may be discovered.

REGIMENT, battalion, or corps, are the same thing, only with this difference, some Regiments have more battalions than one.

REGULAR ATTACKS, are such as are made in form, that is by regular approaches.

REINFORCED-RING of a gun, is that next the trunions, between them and the vent, the reinforced part of a gun, is from the base-ring to the Reinforced-Ring, being much the thicker of Metal than any other part of the piece, because of the great force of the powder.

REINFORCEMENT to an army, is an addition of fresh

R E

troops to strengthen an army, and to enable them to go on an enterprize.

RELIEVE, to relieve the guard, is to put fresh men upon the guard; to relieve the trenches, is to relieve the guard of the trenches, by sending off those that have been there upon duty before.

RENDEZVOUS, is the place appointed by the general, where all the troops which compose the army are to meet at the day appointed.

REMOUNT, to remount the cavalry, is to get fresh young horses in the room of those which have been killed, disabled, or unfit for service.

RESERVE, is a body of troops sometimes drawn out of the army, and encamped by themselves in a line behind the lines.

RESERVE-GUARD, is the same as the picket-guard, only with this difference, it mounts at troop beating and the other at retreat beating.

RETIRADE, is a Trench with a parapet, but Retirade or Coupure is most ordinarily taken for a retrenchment formed by the two faces of the re-entering angle in a body of a place, after the first defence is ruined, and the besieged obliged to abandon the head of the work without quitting it entirely; therefore while some are making head to the enemy

R E

my, others ought to be busy in making the Retirade, which is only a simple barricade or retrenchment, thrown up in haste, with a sort of a foss before it; it depends upon the knowledge of an engineer to direct, and the honour of the soldiers to work at such a time, since they do it for the defence of their liberty.

The Retirade ought to be raised as high as possible, and some fourneau's or fougades made under it, to blow up the enemies lodgments.

RETREAT. See drum.

REDUCE a place, is to oblige the governor or commandant to surrender it to the besiegers, by capitulation.

RETRENCHMENT, is any work raised to cover a post, and fortify it against an enemy, such as fascines loaded with earth, gabions, barrels of earth, sand bags, and generally all things that can cover the men, and give a stop to the enemy, but it is more particularly applicable to a foss, bordered with a parapet; and a post fortified thus, is called post retrenched, or strong post. Retrenchments are either general or particular.

GENERAL RETRENCHMENTS, are new fortifications, made in a place besieged, for to cover themselves when the enemy becomes masters of a lodgment on the

R E

fortification, that they may be in a condition of disputing the ground inch by inch, and of putting a stop to the enemies progress, in expectation of relief; as if the besiegers attack a tenaille of the place, which they judge the weakest, either by its being ill flanked, or being commanded by some neighbouring ground, then the besieged make a great retrenchment, inclosing all that part which they judge in most danger. These ought to be fortified with bastions and demi-bastions, with a good foss, and ought to be higher than the works of the place, that they may command the old works, and put the besiegers to a great trouble in covering themselves; they ought likewise to be countermined.

RETRENCHMENTS particular, are such as are made in the bastions, when the enemy are masters of the breach, they can never be made but in full bastions, for in empty or hollow bastions, there can be made only retirades; these particular retrenchments are made several ways, according to the time they have to cover themselves; sometimes they are made before hand, which is certainly the best; as Count Pagan, who makes a double parapet in all his bastions, and a retrenchment made before hand, requires

no

R E

no more men for its defence, than if it were not made, because they never defend it till the principal work be lost: The parapet of such retrenchments ought to be five or six feet thick, and five foot high, with a large and deep sals, from whence ought to run out small fougades, and counter mines.

RETURNS of a trench, are the turnings and windings which form the lines of the trench, and are as near as they can be made parallel to the place attacked, to shun being enfiladed: These returns, when followed, make a long way from the end of the trench to the head, which going the strait way, is very short, but then the men are exposed; yet upon a salley, the best men never consider the danger; but getting over the trench with such as will follow them, take the shortest way to repulse the enemy, and cut off their retreat, if possible.

REVILLE. See drum.

REVERSE, signifies on the back or behind; so we say, Reverse view, a Reverse commanding ground, a Reverse battery, &c.

REVIEW, is the drawing out of the regiments, more or less, to be reviewed by a general officer, who makes an exact return of their appointments, and the condi-

R I

tion they are in, as also of their firings and manœuvres, &c. and orders such men to be discharged, as are unfit for service, and reviews the recruits, who have been enlisted since the last review.

REDOUBT, is a kind of work placed beyond the glacis, of various forms.

REDOUBT, is also the name of a small work, made in a ravelin of the same form.

REDOUBT, is likewise a square work, without any bastions, placed at some distance from a fortification, to guard a pass, or to prevent an enemy from approaching that way.

REVETEMENT, is a strong wall, built on the outside of the rampart and parapet, to support the earth, and prevent its rolling into the ditch.

RIDEAU, is a rising ground or eminence, commanding a plain, which is sometimes near parallel to the works of a place: It is a great disadvantage to have Rideaus near a fortification, especially when they fire from far, and terminate on the counter-scarp; for they not only command the place, but likewise facilitate the enemies approaches.

RIOCHET, when guns are loaded with small charges, and are elevated from ten to twelve degrees, so as to fire over the parapet, and the shot

R O

rolls along the opposite rampart; it is called Riochet firing, and the batteries, are called Riochet batteries.

RHILAND-ROD, is a measure of two fathom, or twelve foot, used by the Dutch engineers.

RHOMB, is a four sided figure, whose sides are equal, but the angles unequal.

RHOMBOIDE, is a four sided figure, whose angles and opposite sides are equal, but all its four sides are not equal.

ROLL, muster-roll, is a roll of the officers, non-commissioned officers, and private men of each company, accounting for every individual, either on furlow, party, command, guard, detachment, or sick, &c.

TO ROLL in duty, is when officers of the same rank take their turns upon duty, as captains with captains, and subalterns with subalterns, and command according to the seniority of their commissions.

ROLLERS, are round pieces of wood, of about nine inches diameter, and four feet long, which serve in moving mortars, from one place to another, when it is near, by raising the fore-part of the bed so high, that one of these rollers may be laid under it, then pushing the bed forward, and laying another in its way, and another before

R O

that, and so on: Thus the mortar is with little trouble brought to another place.

ROPE for gin, rope for draught ropes, &c.

ROUND, is commanded by an officer, that goes round the ramparts of a garrison, to see that the guards and centries be watchful and alert upon their duty: When the Round comes near a centry, they challenge, and being answered Rounds, the centry says, Pass Rounds, and rests his firelock; when the Round is near the guard, the centry challenges, who comes there, being answered, Round; he says, stand Round; serjeant turn out the guard, (the guard being turned out, and the officer at the head of it) the serjeant with four men advances towards the Round, and challenges, within six paces of the serjeant who escorted the Round, the serjeant of the escort is to answer Round, advance serjeant with the parole, and then orders his men to rest their firelocks, the serjeant of the escort advances alone, and gives the serjeant of the guard the parole, and while he is giving it, the serjeant of the guard holds the spear of his halbert at the others breast; he then orders the serjeant to return to his escort, and leaving the men he brought with him to keep the

S A

the round from advancing, goes to his officer, and gives him the parole he received from the serjeant, the officer finding the parole right, orders his serjeant to return to his men, and then says, advance round, and orders the guard to rest their firelocks, the serjeant orders his advanced men to wheel back from the centre, and form a lane, through which the Round pass, and goes up to the officer, and gives him the parole, (the Grand Round receives the parole from the officer).

ROUTE, an order to direct troops to march, road they are to take, and an authority to the magistrate to quarter troops.

TO ROUTE, to defeat, or put an army to flight.

ROYAL REGIMENTS, are such, who are entitled to wear blue, or faced with blue.

TO RUN the gauntlet, is a punishment for offenders; the regiment is drawn out, and make a line, each soldier having a switch in his hand, the criminals back and shoulders are naked, and he runs along, every soldier has a stroke at him, the drums beat at each end of the lane; this of late is not practised.

S

SAFE-GUARD, is a protection granted by a prince or his general, to some of the

S A

enemies lands, to preserve them from being plundered; it signifies likewise, a trooper, who stays at the entry of a place protected, to hinder soldiers, which straggle off from the army, from committing any disorder.

To force a safe-guard is death, by the articles of war, if upon service.

SAKER, is a piece of ordnance, carrying a ball of five pound and a quarter weight; the diameter of the bore is three inches and nine sixteenths, the length of the gun about eight or nine foot: It is a very good field piece; and is always part of the marching artillery.

SALLY, is when a part of the garrison goes out privately, and falls suddenly on the besiegers in their trenches, endeavouring to drive them out, and destroy their works.

SALIENT-ANGLE, is that whose points turn from the centre of the place.

TO SALUTE, is the firing of the cannon round the place, in the field when the officers salute a General with fuzes or espontoons. The officers that carry the colours, salute, bringing them down, near the ground.

SAND-BAGS, are sacks of two foot high, and ten inches diameter, filled with earth, and tied very fast.

SAP, is a trench, or an approach made under cover of

S A

of ten or twelve feet broad, when the besiegers come near the place, and their fire grows so dangerous, as not to be approached uncovered.

SASH, are in general made of crimson silk; though of late some of the light dragoons have them intermixed with gold and silver: The first intention of them were, in case an officer received so desperate a wound, as to render him incapable of remaining at his post, he might be put into his Sash, and carried off by the assistance of two men.

SERJEANTS SASH, are of very strong worsted, made on purpose for them.

SAUCISSE, is a long train of powder, sewed up in a roll of pitched cloth, of about two inches diameter: The use of it is to fire mines or caissons; the length of it must reach from the mine to the place where the engineer is to fire it, to spring the mine.

SAUCISSON, is a long pipe or bag, made of cloth or leather, of about an inch and a half diameter, filled with powder, going from the chamber of a mine to the entrance of the gallery; it serves to give fire to the mine.

SAUCISSON, is likewise a fascine, much longer than the common ones; they serve

S E

to raise batteries, and to repair breaches.

SCALADE, or *escalade*, is a furious attack, upon a wall or rampart, carried on with ladders, to insult by open force.

SCALE, is a right line divided into equal parts, representing miles, fathoms, paces, inches, &c. It is used in making plans upon paper, in giving each line its true length.

SCARP or *escarp*, is the interior talus or slope of the ditch, next the places, at the foot of the rampart or *lizerie*.

SCHENOGRAPHY, which is likewise called *profile* or *view*, is the natural representation of a place, such as it appears to us, when we look upon it from without, considering its situation, the form of its walls, the number and figure of its steeples, and the tops of its buildings, both publick and private.

To **SCOUR** a line, is to flank it, so as to see directly along it, that a musquet ball entering at one end, may fire to the other, leaving no place of security.

SENIORITY, is the difference of time, between the raising of two battalions, whereby the one is said to be senior to the other: All battalions take place according to seniority; the difference of

S H

of time between the date of two commissions, makes the one senior to the other, and all officers of the same rank, roll by the seniority of their commissions; if two are signed of one day, you must refer to the date of your former commission.

SERGEANTS, are non-commissioned officers, and ought to be sober, active, and vigilant, to read and write, because they have several returns to make out, and are to attend morning and evening roll-calls, and every day to bring the orders to his officers.

SECOND DITCH, is that which is made on the outside of the glacis, when the ground is low, and water to be had.

SECOND COVERT-WAY, is that which is made beyond the second ditch.

SHOT, all sorts of ball, either for cannon, or for musquets, carabines, and pistols.

CHAIN-SHOT, is two whole or half bullets joined together, either by a bar or chain of iron, which allows them some liberty asunder, so that they cut and destroy what ever happens in their way.

SHOVEL, serves to throw up the earth, which the pick-ax and mattock raise: It is made of a shaft of about three foot and a half long; the head of it is of iron, of

S I

about fifteen inches deep, and eight broad.

SHOULDER of a bastion, is where the face and the flank meet.

SIDES of horn-works, tenailles, crown-works, &c. are those parts of the ramparts which reach from the border of the foss of the place, to the head of the works, which in horn-works, and tenailles, are parallel; sometimes these sides are no longer than the reach of a musquet shot, and are then defended by the faces of the place, but when they are longer, they have either flanks made in the long sides, which are then said to have shoulders, or else they are indented, or made with redans, or with traverses, or cross intrenchments in the ditch.

SIEGE, to besiege a place, is to surround it with an army, and approach it, by passages made in the ground, so as to be covered against the fire of the place.

When an army can approach so near the place, as the covert-way, without breaking ground, under favour of some hollow roads, rising grounds, or cavities, and there begin their work, it is called accelerating the siege. And when they can approach the town, so near as to take it, without making any

S I

any considerable works ; the siege is called an attack.

TO MAKE OR FORM A SIEGE, there must be an army sufficient to furnish five or six reliefs for the trenches, pioneers, guards, convoys, escorts, &c. and an artillery, with magazines, furnished with a sufficient quantity of warlike stores and provisions of all sorts ; and an infirmary with physicians, surgeons, &c. and medicines of all sorts.

TO RAISE A SIEGE, is to give over attacking a place, in abandoning the works, and levelling the works and posts which they are in possession of, before the place.

TO TURN A SIEGE, into a blockade, is to give over the attacks, and to possess themselves of all the avenues leading to the place, to hinder any succours or convoys getting into it, with a design to take it by famine.

SILLON, is a work raised in the middle of a foss, to defend it when it is too wide : It has no particular form, sometimes being made with little bastions, half-moons, and redans, which are lower than the works of the place, but higher than the covert-way ; the word sillon, is now almost out of use, being now called envelope.

SIXAIN, an antient order of battle for six battalions,

S P

which supposing them all in a line, is formed thus : The second and fifth battalions advance, and make the van ; the first and sixth, fall to the rear, leaving the third and fourth, to form the body ; each battalion ought to have a squadron on its right, and another on its left.

SKIRMISH, is a sudden encounter between two small bodies of men.

SOLDIER, is he, who is enlisted in the service, and receives pay, those of the foot belong to the infantry, and serve on foot. Those of the cavalry, generally serve on horseback.

SPADE, is an instrument, for digging up the ground ; the head of it is all of iron, the upper part being flat for the pioneers, camp-colourmen, &c. To set his foot on, to force it into the ground.

TO SPIN HAY, is to twist it up in ropes very hard for an expedition, each trooper carrying as much as he can behind him.

SPOKES of a wheel of a cannon, are those short pieces of wood, being twelve in number ; which by having one end fixed in the fellows, and the other in the nave ; keep the nave in the centre, and make the wheel.

SPUNGE of a gun, is a long staff, put into a roll of wood

S Q

wood, which is covered over with sheep skin, the wool outwards, to sponge and clean the gun; as soon as the gun has fired, a matross is ready with the sponge, while another claps his finger upon the vent, to stop the air, and stifle what fire may remain in the chamber.

SQUADRON, is a small body of horse, composed of three troops.

SQUARE, is a figure composed of four equal sides, and four right angles.

LONG SQUARE, is a figure composed of four sides, whereof the two opposite are equal, and all the angles right angles.

OBLONG SQUARE, is a figure composed of four, the front and rear faces, are of a small extent, and the angles sometimes covered by the granadiers; when that is not the case, the granadiers are divided into two divisions, and form the front and rear face of the square.

SQUARE, battalion of men, is that which is composed of an equal number of men in rank or file, or when the number of men in each file, is equal to the number of men in each rank; square battalion of ground, is when the ground of the flanks is of the same extent, as the ground of the front and rear.

S U

HOLLOW SQUARE, is a body of foot, drawn up with a space in the middle (for the colonel, lieutenant Colonel, major, adjutant colours, pioneers, grenadiers, musick and drummers) to oppose either cavalry, or infantry.

STANDARD, is a piece of silk or Damask, about a foot and a half square; on which is embroidered, a device or cypher, it is fixed on a long staff, eight or nine foot long, and carried at the head of the squadron.

STRAW, STUBBLE, the stalks of corn, which is put into the tents, for the soldiers to sleep upon.

SUCCOUR is the enterprise made to relieve a place. That is, raise the siege, and force the enemy from it.

STAR-REDOUBTS, are now out of use.

STORM. See assault.

STRAIKS, are strong plates of iron, six in number, fixed with long nails, called straik nails, on the circumference of a common wheel, over the joints of the fellows, both to strengthen the wheel and save the fellows from wearing out, in hard ways or streets.

SUBALTERN. See officer.

SUB-BRIGADIER, is a post
K in

S W

in the troops of guards next under a brigadier.

SUB-LIEUTENANT, is an officer in the fuzileers, where they have no ensigns, and is the youngest lieutenant in the company, receives lieutenant's pay, and takes rank as lieutenant; and carries the colours.

SUB-DIVISION, are the lesser parcels, into which a number of men are divided, being half a grand division.

SUBSISTANCE, is the money paid to the officers and soldiers.

SURFACE, or superficies, is an extent, having length and breadth; but no thickness: It is evident, that the extremities of a surface are lines.

SURFACE, as a term in fortification, is that part of the side which is terminated by the flank prolonged or extended, and the angle of the nearest bastion; the double of this line with the curtain, is equal to the exterior side.

SUTLER, is he who follows the army, to sell all sorts of provisions to the troops. They pitch their tents in the rear of each regiment, and about the general's quarters; their beer, wine, bread, &c. they either buy from the boors, or fetch from the nearest towns.

SWALLOWS-TAIL, is an out-work, differing from a

T A

single tenaille, in that its sides are not parallel, like those of a tenaille; but if prolonged would meet and form an angle on the middle of the curtain; its head or front, is composed of two faces, forming a re-entring angle. This work is extraordinary well flanked, and defended by the works of the place, which discover all the length of its long sides. But their great fault is their not covering sufficiently the flanks of the opposite bastions.

SWORD, they are of various sorts, the small sword, broad sword, cut and thrust sword, and the cuteau (the small sword is the genteelst and best for service) they are carried in a belt, or hung to swivels, and worn on the left side.

SWORD KNOT, those of the cavalry are of buff leather, those of the infantry, the most of them are of crimson and gold.

TAC'TICK, the art of marshalling soldiers.

TAIL of the trenches, or opening of the trenches, is the post where the besiegers begin to break ground, to cover themselves from the fire of the place, in advancing the lines of approach.

TALUS, or epatement, is the slope given to the rampart

T A

part or wall, that it may stand the faster, and is more or less, according as the earth is looser or more binding, all ramparts ought to have slope or talus on each side, that is, they ought to be broader at the basis, than at the top; the one is called the exterior talus, the other the interior talus, and there is likewise a superior talus.

EXTERIOR TALUS, is the slope given to the work, on the side towards the country, and ought to be as small as possible, that the enemy may not find it easy to be mounted, either by escalade or otherwise. But if the earth be not good, the talus must be large, that it may keep it up the better, in such a case it were good to support the earth with a wall, which the French call chemise, when it is not thick, and otherwise revêtement, which signifies cloathing or fencing, to make the earth last longer, and to save the making too large a talus, this wall, ought to have a small talus of a fifth or sixth part of its height, and for a reinforcement, it is generally supported on the inside, by counter forts, or a sort of buttresses.

INTERIOR TALUS, is the slope of the inside of the work next the town, which is much larger than that of the outside, and has at the angles of the gorge, and

T A

sometimes in the middle of the curtain, ramps or sloping roads to mount upon the terre-plain of the rampart, the interior talus of the parapet, ought to be very small, that the men may with more ease fire over it.

SUPERIOR TALUS, of the parapet, is the slope on the top of the parapet. This slope allows the soldiers to defend the covert-way with small-shot, which they could not do were it level.

TARPAULINS, are pitched cloths, to throw over stores in open boats, or upon batteries or in magazines.

TAPTBO. See drum.

TEMOINS, is a French term for the pieces of earth left standing, as marks or witnesses in the fosses of places they are emptying, to the end they may know exactly, how many cubical fathoms or feet of earth has been carried away, thereby to pay the workmen, who are sure to leave some of the highest spots of ground for temoins, to have more depth to measure. But the engineers are generally careful to mark out indifferent places, some high, some low, to measure as exact as they can.

TALAUD or slope, is made to the works of a fortification, both on the outside and inside, to prevent the earth from rolling down.

T E

TENAILLES, are low works made in the ditch before the curtains, where there are three sorts, the first are the faces of the bastions, produced, till they meet much lower; the second have faces and flanks, and a curtain: and the third have only faces and flanks.

TENAILLONS are works made on each side of the ravelin, much like the lunettes; they differ, in that one of the faces of a tanaillon, is in the direction of the face of the ravelin; where that of the lunette is perpendicular to it.

TENT, is a sort of a pavilion of strong ticking, which is pitched upon poles, with cords and pegs, and pulled down when the army moves: It serves to keep an officer under cover night and day.

TERRE-PLAIN of a rampart, is the horizontal superficies of the rampart between the interior talus and the banquette, 'tis on the terre-plain, that the defendants go and come: It is likewise the passage of the rounds. Trees on the terre-plain of a rampart, serve to bind it, but in a siege they are convenient; for the noise made by the wind amongst the leaves, hinders the besieged from hearing the workmen in the approaches.

TO TERTIATE a piece, is to examine it, whether it has

T O

the due thickness of metal in every place, and whether it be true bored.

TOISE is a measure by the French engineers in all their fortifications, and is six foot; a square toise is thirty six square feet: And a cubical toise is two hundred and sixteen cubical feet.

TOMPION, is a stopper of wood or cork, which is used in loading a mortar, It is exactly fitted for the mouth of the chamber, and is drove hard in, after the powder, and the bomb is placed above it; it serves by confining the powder, to make it burst out with the more violence. Tompion is likewise a stopper of wood, for the mouth of the mortar or gun, to keep out the rain.

TOUCH-HOLE, or vent, is the small hole at the end of the cylinder of a gun or musquet, by which the fire is conveyed to the powder in the chamber, in a firelock carabine, or pistol, it is called the touch-hole, but in a piece of cannon, it is more properly called the vent.

TOWN OR FORT, major in a garrison, is an officer who is constantly about the governor or officer commanding, and receives his orders, and issues them to the troops in garrison, he is to command, according to the rank he now has, or has had in the army, and if he never had

T R

had any other commission, but that of town or fort major, he is to command as youngest captain.

TOWN OR FORT, adjutant, is an assistant to the fort or town major.

TOWER bastions, small towers made, in the form of bastions, with rooms and cellars underneath, to place men and guns in them.

TRAIL your firelocks, is when the soldiers carry their firelocks in the same position as the officers trailing their esponsontons.

TRAIN-BANDS, are regiments or companies of militia.

TRANSUM is a piece of wood, which goes across betwixt the cheeks of a gun carriage, or of a gin, to keep them fixed together; each transum in a carriage, is strengthened by a bolt of iron.

TRAVERSE, is a parapet, made cross the covert-way, opposite to the salient angles of the works, and near the places of arms, to prevent enfilades; they are eighteen feet thick, and as high as the ridge of the glacis.

There are also Traverses made in the caponiers, but then they are called tambour traverses, and are likewise made within other works, when there are any hills or rising grounds, from which may be seen the inside of these works.

T R

TO TRAVERSE a gun or mortar, is to bring her about with handspikes, to the right or left, till she is pointed exactly at the object.

TRENCH, which is likewise called lines of approach, and lines of attack, is a way hollowed in the earth, in form of a foss, having a parapet towards the place besieged, when the earth can be removed, or else it is an elevation of fascines, gabions, wool-packs, and such other things that can cover the men, and that does not fly in pieces or splinters to hurt them: This is to be done when the ground is rocky, but when the earth is good, the trench is carried on with less trouble, and the engineers are to demand only provision of spades, shovels, and pick-axes, to enlarge the trench to five feet deep, and two fathoms wide. The greatest fault a trench can have, is to be infiladed; to prevent which they are ordinarily carried on with turnings and elbows; as the trenches are never carried on but in the night-time, therefore the ground ought to be viewed and observed very nicely in the day. On the angles or sides of the trench, there ought to be lodgments or epaulments, in form of traverses, the better to hinder the sallies of the garrison, to favour the advancement of the trenches, and to sustain

T R

sustain the workmen. These lodgments are small trenches, fronting the place besieged, and joining the trench at the one end.

The platforms for the batteries are made behind the trenches, the first at a good distance, to be used only against sallies of the garrison; as the approaches advance, the batteries are brought nearer, to ruin the defences of the place, and dismount the artillery of the besieged: The batteries for the breaches are made when the trenches are advanced near the covert way.

If there be two attacks, there must be lines of communication, or boyaus between the two, with places of arms, at convenient distances: The trenches ought to be six or seven feet high, with the parapet, which ought to be five foot thick, and have banquetts for the soldiers to mount upon.

Returns of a trench are the elbows and turnings, which form the lines of approach, and are made as near as can be parallel to the defence of the place, to prevent their being infiladed.

TO MOUNT THE TRENCHES, is to mount guard in the trenches; to relieve the trenches, is to relieve the guards of the trenches; to dismount the trenches, is to come off the guard of the

T R

the trenches; to cleanse or scour the trenches, is to make a vigorous sally upon the guard of the trenches; to force them to give way and quit their ground, to drive away the workmen, break down the parapet, fill up the trench, and to nail their cannon.

COUNTER-TRENCHES, are trenches made against the besiegers, which consequently have their parapet turned against the enemies approaches, and are infiladed from several parts of the place, on purpose to render them useless to the enemy, if they chance to be masters of them; but they ought not to be infiladed, or commanded by any height in the enemies possession.

TRIANGLE, is a figure, comprehended between three sides, and is either rectilineal, or spherical: A rectilineal, or plain triangle, is a figure consisting of three straight sides: A spherical triangle is a figure formed by three arches, of three great circles, cutting one another on the surface of a sphere.

A RECTILINEAL TRIANGLE, considered according to the sides, may be either equilateral isosceles, or scalene, and considered according to its angles, may be either right-angle or oxigon.

EQUILATERAL TRIANGLE, is what has the three sides

T R

sides equal : It is evident the three angles must likewise be equal, each being sixty degrees triangle, isosceles is what hath two sides equal ; whence it follows, that all Equilateral Triangles are isosceles, though all isosceles triangles are not equilateral.

TRIANGLE SCALENE, is what hath three unequal sides.

TRIANGLE RECTANGLE, is what hath one right angle.

TRIANGLE AMBLIGON, is what hath one obtuse angle.

TRIANGLE OXIGON, is whose angles are all acute.

TROOP of horse or dragoons, is a small body of men, mounted on horseback.

TROOPER, is a private man in a troop of horse.

TROOP. See **Drum**.

TRUCKS, are small wheels of one piece of wood, about a foot and a half, or two foot diameter, for the truck-carriages, and sometimes for garrison guns.

TRUMPET, is an instrument of wind-musick, used in publick rejoicings, each troop of horse has a trumpet : it is made of metal, most commonly of brass, but sometimes of silver. The mouth of the trumpet is of silver or brass, and is to take out and in at pleasure. He who blows the trumpet, is called the trumpeter, who ought to be a man fit for fatigue, and vi-

V E

gilant. The first sound of the trumpet before a march, is to boot and saddle, at which the troopers get themselves ready to mount ; this is sounded when the drums beat the general : When the assemble is beginning to beat, the trumpets sound to horse, and they all mount ; the third is to march.

The trumpets likewise sound a charge in day of battle, and the retreat at night, &c.

TRUNIONS of a gun, are the two pieces of metal, sticking out of the sides of a piece, by which it swings in its carriage.

TRUNION-RING, is that ornament or jutting out, a little before the Trunions.

VALIANT (soldier) bold, and daring in action, stout and brave.

VAN, van-guard, is that part of the army which marches in the front.

VEDETTE, is a trooper on horseback as posted, his horses head is towards the place whence any danger is to be feared, and his carbine is advanced, with the butt-end against his right thigh : When the army lies encamped, there are Vedettes posted at all the avenues, and on all the rising grounds, to watch for its security.

VENT,

VENT, or touch-hole. See touch-hole.

To VIEW a place, in order to besiege it, is called to reconnoitre, and is when the General, accompanied by the engineers, rides round the place, observing the situation of it, with the nature of the country about it; as hills, valleys, rivers, marshes, woods, hedges, &c. thereby to judge of the most convenient place for opening the trenches, and carrying on the approaches; to find out proper places for encamping the army, for the lines of circumvallation and countervallation, and for the park of artillery.

To VIEW, or reconnoitre an enemy, is to get as near their camp as possible, to see the nature of the ground, and the avenues to it, to find out the strength and weakness of their encampment, where they may be best attacked; or whether it may be proper to hazard bringing them to action.

Parties of light horse are generally sent out to view the enemies march, to know whither it tends, thereby to guess at their designs, and to regulate the motions of the army accordingly.

To VIEW, or reconnoitre, is likewise when the quarter-master-general, with a strong party of horse, goes to view

the ways for the march of the army, and to find the most convenient place for an encampment, to wit, where there is water and forage, where the army may not be too much exposed to the insults of the enemy, but covered by rivers, marshes, woods, or strong grounds, where they cannot easily be forced.

VICTORIOUS, are those that have got a victory or conquests.

VICTORY, the overthrow, or defeat of an enemy.

VOLLEY, to fire a volley, is when the whole fire together, by one word of command.

VOLUNTEERS, are persons, who of their own accord, either for the service of their prince, or out of the esteem they have for the General, serve in the army, without being engaged to any captain, but upon their own expence, are ready upon all occasions, to gain honour and preferment, by exposing themselves in the service.

UTENSILS, are the necessaries which are to be furnished by a landlord to the soldiers quartered upon him; such as beds, sheets, pots, dishes, spoons, fire, candle, &c. Sometimes the landlord makes an agreement for those

W A

things, and allows money in lieu of them.

UTENSILS, are likewise all sorts of hand tools, used in an army, or at a siege; such as spades, shovels, pick-axes, hatchets, bills, wheel-barrows, &c. or the instruments used about a gun, as the ladle, rammer, sponge, wad-hook, lin-stock, coins, handspikes, priming iron, &c. &c.

W

WAD, is a stopper of hay or straw, or the wadding forced into a gun upon the powder, to keep it close in the chamber; when it is home at the powder, the gunner generally gives it three thumps with the rammer head.

WAD-HOOK or worm, is a small iron turned serpentwise, like a screw, and put upon the end of a long staff, to draw out the wad of a gun, when she is to be unloaded.

WAGGON-MASTER-GENERAL, is he who has the ordering and marching of the baggage of the army: on a day of march he meets the baggage at the place appointed, and marshals it according to the rank of the brigade or regiment each waggon belongs to, and marches it according to the rout given him, which is sometimes in one column,

W H

sometimes in two, sometimes after the artillery, and sometimes the baggage of each column follows their respective column.

WARNING-PIECE, is the gun which fires every evening at sun set, to give notice to the drums and trumpets of the army or garrison, to beat and sound the retreat, and in garrison, to lock the gates, and draw up the bridges.

WARNING-PIECE, is also the gun which fires every morning at break of day, upon which the drums of every guard beat the reveille, and the centries leave off challenging, and in a garrison the gates are opened, and the draw-bridges let down.

WARRANT. See warrant officer.

WAR, a fighting state of hostility, between nations, states, provinces, or parties.

To WAR, to go to war, to fight one against another.

WAY of the round, is a space left for the passage between a rampart and a wall of a fortified garrison.

WEAPONS, all warlike instruments, except fire arms.

WELL, is a depth sunk in the ground by the miner, from whence he runs out branches or galleries, in search of the enemies mine, to disappoint it, or to make a mine.

WHEEL, is a word of command, when a battalion is to

L

alter

W I

alter its position, either one way or the other, or to wheel by wings, grand divisions, sub-divisions, companies, or platoons, &c.

WHEEL-BARROW, is one of the most necessary utensils about fortification, for rolling the earth from one place to another, &c.

WHEELS of a gun-carriage, are two large circles of wood, composed of the fellows, spokes, and the nave, they are joined where their ends meet, by a peg of wood, called the duledge, and the joint is strengthened on the outside of the wheel, by a strong plate of iron, called the duledge plate; the wheels are one on each end of an axle-tree, which keep them at a fixed distance, and upon which the forepart of the carriage is fixed, by strong bands of iron, called the axle-tree bands.

WICKET, is a small door in a gate of a fortified place, at which a man on foot may get in, which is often opened when the gates are ordered to be kept shut.

WINDAGE of a gun, is the difference between the diameter of the bore and the diameter of the ball; for since the balls are rough, if they were not somewhat less than the bore, they might jamm in the piece; so the windage of a demi-culverin is a quarter of an inch.

W O

WINLACE, is a roller of wood, square at each end, through which is either cross holes for handspikes, or staves a-cross, to turn it round; by this means it draws a cord, one end of which is fastened to some weight, which it raises up. They are used in gins.

WINGS of an army. See army.

WINGS of a battalion, are the right and left of the centre of it.

WINTER-QUARTERS, are where the troops are quartered during the winter; it is likewise the time comprehended between the end of the campaign and the beginning of the next.

WORD, in an army or garrison, is a token or mark of distinction, by which spies or treacherous persons are known; it serves likewise to prevent surprizes, it is given out by the General to the lieutenant-general, or major-general of the day, who gives it to the adjutant-general, he to the majors of brigades, they to the adjutants, who give it first to their own field-officers, and afterwards to the non-commissioned officers, who write it in their orderly books, and then carry them to their own officers: In a garrison it is given by the governor to the town or fort major, who sends them to the several guards sealed up,

W O

up, and also gives it to the adjutant at orderly time.

WORDS of command, are terms used by officers, in exercising of battalions or squadrons, or when they are upon action.

WORKS, all the fortifications about a place, are called the works of the place, and more particularly all detached works, are called the out-works.

WORM, is a screw of iron, to be fixed on the end of a rammer, to pull out the wad

Y O

or ball of the firelock, carbine, or pistol; it is the same with the wad-hook, only the one is proper for small fire arms, and the other for cannon.

Y

YOUNGER officer, is he whose commission is of a later date.

YOUNGER regiment, is that which is of a shorter standing, in respect to another.

T H E E N D.

W O

up, and also gives it to the
adjutant at orderly time.
Words of command, are
terms used by officers, in ex-
ercising of battalions or pas-
sions, or when they are
upon action.
Works, all the fortifica-
tions about a place, are called
the works of the place, and
more particularly all detached
works, are called the out-
works.
Work, is a kind of iron,
to be fixed on the end of a
hammer, to pull out the wad

Y O

or half of the musket, can-
not, or pulled, it is the term
with the wad-hook, only
the one is proper for firing
the arms, and the other for
cannon.

Y

YOUNGER officer, is
he whose commission is of a
lower date.
Younger regiment, is
that which is of a shorter
standing in respect to another.

T H E E N D



